Pat 44
3
86.094
Smith

MEMOIRS OF
THE CONNECTICUT ACADEMY
OF ARTS AND SCIENCES

VOLUME VI DECEMBER, 1919

46

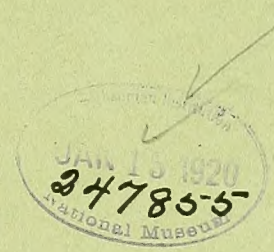
The Sauropod Dinosaur Barosaurus Marsh

Redescription of the Type Specimens in the Peabody Museum Yale University

BY

RICHARD SWANN LULL, Ph.D., Sc.D.

PROFESSOR OF VERTEBRATE PALEONTOLOGY IN YALE UNIVERSITY, AND ASSOCIATE CURATOR IN VERTEBRATE PALEONTOLOGY IN THE PEABODY MUSEUM



NEW HAVEN, CONNECTICUT
PUBLISHED BY THE
CONNECTICUT ACADEMY OF ARTS AND SCIENCES
AND TO BE OBTAINED ALSO FROM THE
YALE UNIVERSITY PRESS

MEMOIRS OF
THE CONNECTICUT ACADEMY
OF ARTS AND SCIENCES

VOLUME VI DECEMBER, 1919

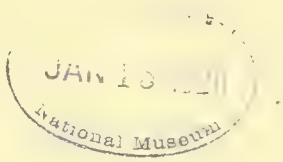
The Sauropod Dinosaur Barosaurus Marsh

Redescription of the Type Specimens in the Peabody Museum
Yale University

BY

RICHARD SWANN LULL, Ph.D., Sc.D.

PROFESSOR OF VERTEBRATE PALEONTOLOGY IN YALE UNIVERSITY, AND ASSOCIATE
CURATOR IN VERTEBRATE PALEONTOLOGY IN THE
PEABODY MUSEUM



NEW HAVEN, CONNECTICUT
PUBLISHED BY THE
CONNECTICUT ACADEMY OF ARTS AND SCIENCES
AND TO BE OBTAINED ALSO FROM THE
YALE UNIVERSITY PRESS

Contributions from the Othniel Charles Marsh Publication Fund,
Peabody Museum, Yale University, New Haven, Conn.

The Tuttle, Morehouse & Taylor Company

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

PAGE

Preface 5
Introduction 7
Original Descriptions 7
Barosaurus lentus Marsh 7
Barosaurus affinis Marsh 8
Locality and Horizon 8
Matrix and Inferred Habitat 8
Material 10
Morphology of *Barosaurus lentus* 11
Axial Skeleton 11
Skull 11
Cervical Vertebræ 11
Cervical XII 11
Cervical XIII 13
Cervical XIV 14
Cervical XV 14
Dorsal Vertebræ 15
Dorsal I 15
Dorsal IV 16
Dorsal V 18
Dorsal VI 19
Dorsal VII 19
Dorsal IX 20
Dorsal X 21
Sacrum 22
Caudal Vertebræ 22
Caudal II 22
Caudal III 23
Caudal IV 24
Caudal V 25
Caudal VI 25
Caudal XIII 25
Caudal XV 27
Caudal XVI 27
Caudal XVII 27
Caudal XIX 28
Caudal XX 28
Caudal ca. XXXII 29
Caudal ? 29

PAGE

Chevron Bones 29
Chevron ca. V 29
Chevron ca. IX 30
Chevron ca. XVI 31
Ribs 33
Sternal 33
Appendicular Skeleton 34
Fore Limb and Girdle 34
Scapula 34
Hind Limb and Girdle 34
Ilium 34
Pubis 34
Ischium 36
Femur 37
Tibia 38
Fibula 38
Barosaurus affinis 38
Metacarpal I 39
Metacarpal II 39
Theropod Dinosaur, Gen. et Sp. Indet. 40
Relationships 40
Comparison with *Diplodocus* 40
Comparison with *Brontosaurus* 41
Comparison with *Brachiosaurus* 41
Comparison with *"Brachiosaurus"* of Tendaguru 41
Conclusions 42

PREFACE

The preparation of a monograph on the sauropod dinosaurs, which was one of the many planned by Professor O. C. Marsh, is now being carried forward by Professor H. F. Osborn. At the latter's request, the great type specimen of *Barosaurus* Marsh in the Yale Museum has been fully prepared for study, in order that an adequate description of this important genus might be embodied in the monograph. This was done during the winter of 1917, and proved to be a very heavy task even for three preparators, but the specimen as thus revealed fully compensates for the labor, since, except for the fragmentary character of the limbs, it proves to be one of the finest dinosaur skeletons in the possession of the Museum. The study of the material was made while the collection was still in the old Peabody Museum building. The vertebræ were of necessity boxed for removal and storage, and have since been utterly inaccessible for further reference, hence it has been impossible either to verify or add to the measurements on the original bones. If errors have crept into the description, they may be in part attributed to this; but it has not been deemed wise to delay publication, perhaps for several more years, until the new building is completed and the collection installed therein.

In the preparation of the memoir I have received very material aid from Mr. O. A. Peterson of the Carnegie Museum, Pittsburgh, who supplied measurements from the type of *Diplodocus carnegiei,* the mounted skeleton of which is there displayed. By the American Museum of Natural History, New York City, I was permitted to study and measure the exhibited partial skeleton of *D. longus* described in 1899 by Professor Osborn. To Miss LeVene, the executive secretary of the Peabody Museum, I am deeply indebted for the preparation of the manuscript and for part of the literary research.

INTRODUCTION

Original Descriptions

Professor Marsh's original description of *Barosaurus* was published in the American Journal of Science for January, 1890, pp. 85-86, Figs. 1 and 2, and reads as follows:

Barosaurus lentus, gen. et sp. nov.

A new genus of the Sauropoda is indicated by various remains of a very large reptile secured by the writer during the past season. The most characteristic portions examined are the caudal vertebræ, which in general form resemble those of *Diplodocus.* They are concave below, as in the caudals of that genus, but the sides of the centra are also deeply excavated.

In the anterior caudals, this excavation extends nearly or quite through the centra, a thin septum usually remaining. In the median caudals, a deep cavity on each side exists, as shown in Figs. 1 and 2'[Fig. 1, A, B] on page 86.

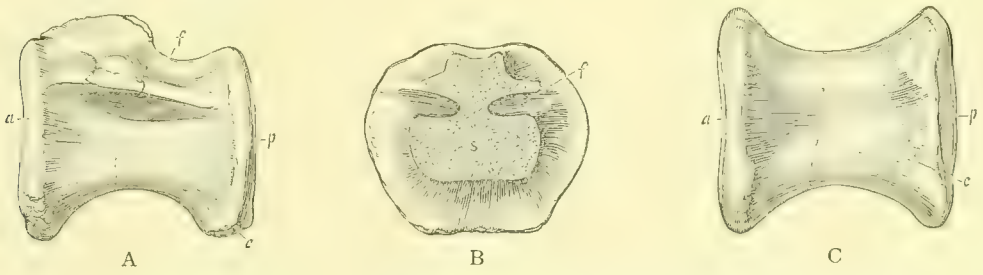


Figure 1.—A, Caudal vertebra of *Barosaurus lentus,* after Marsh. Median vertical section. B, Left lateral aspect of the same bone. C, Ventral aspect. All one-eighth natural size.

On the distal caudals, the lateral cavity has nearly or quite disappeared. All the caudal vertebræ are proportionately shorter than in *Diplodocus,* and their chevrons have no anterior projection, as in that genus.

The remains on which the present description is based are from the Atlantosaurus beds of Dakota, about two hundred miles further north than this well-marked horizon has hitherto been recognized.

A supplementary description by Professor Marsh is found in his *Dinosaurs of North America,* 1896, pp. 174-175, Figs. 24-26:

Barosaurus

Another genus of the Sauropoda is indicated by various remains of a gigantic reptile described in 1890 by the writer. The most characteristic portions examined are the caudal vertebræ, which in general form resemble those of *Diplodocus.* They are concave, below, as in the caudals of that genus, but the sides of the centra are also deeply excavated.

In the anterior caudals this excavation extends nearly or quite through the centra, a thin septum usually remaining. In the median caudals a deep cavity on each side exists, as shown in Figs. 24-26 below [like those of the original description except that a ventral view of the caudal vertebra is shown (Fig. 1, C)].

On page 241 of the same publication the genus *Barosaurus* is placed under the family Atlantosauridæ, which is thus defined:

A pituitary canal; large fossa for nasal gland. Distal end of scapula not expanded. Sacrum hollow; ischia directed downward, with expanded extremities meeting on median line. Anterior caudal vertebræ with lateral cavities; remaining caudals solid.

Genera *Atlantosaurus, Apatosaurus, Barosaurus, Brontosaurus.* Include the largest known land animals. Jurassic, North America.

A second species of *Barosaurus, B. affinis,* was named by Marsh as follows[1]:

These Atlantosaurus beds, though overlooked by many geologists, have a great development around the margin of the Black Hills, especially along the southern and eastern borders. The bones of gigantic dinosaurs mark the outcrop of this horizon at various points. The one best known, the writer explored personally in 1889, near Piedmont, South Dakota, and there obtained remains of an enormous dinosaur, subsequently named *Barosaurus.* During the past season, important parts of the rest of the type skeleton were secured for the Yale Museum, by G. R. Wieland of that University. With these fossils were found remains of a much smaller species, which may be called *Barosaurus affinis.*

As this paper was published the month of Professor Marsh's death, there was left to him no further opportunity for the elaboration of the description of either species, and that task has devolved upon his successors.

Locality and Horizon

The type specimens of *Barosaurus* were found in the eastern portion of the Black Hills, one and one-half miles east of Piedmont. The first specimen was discovered by Mrs. E. R. Ellerman, postmistress of Pottsville, on the land of Mrs. Rachel Hatch, a few rods southwest of the house. Thither Professor Marsh went, and, aided by Mr. J. B. Hatcher, secured the portion of the skeleton upon which he based the description published in 1890. In 1898, Professor Marsh directed G. R. Wieland to collect the remainder of the skeleton. This was done, and a large amount of material secured, including the remains of the smaller animal and a single carnivore tooth found in direct association with the larger specimen. Certain portions of the skeleton had, however, been removed as relics by the curious during the interim, but some of these were recovered by Doctor Wieland.

The formation is Morrison, which is exposed in a narrow outcropping flanking the uplift of the Black Hills. East of Piedmont the thickness is 220 feet,[2] rapidly decreasing to 70 feet in a nearby locality, while near Rapid it is 165 feet in thickness. Mook says further:

The name "Beulah shales" has been applied to the Morrison of the Black Hills region. The formation consists of the usual series of clays and shales, with thinner layers of sandstone and calcareous nodules. The prevailing color is gray, but other colors, such as red, maroon, pink, and purple, sometimes occur. Carbonaceous matter is sometimes present in the upper members.

In a letter to Professor Marsh, dated Piedmont, September 12, 1898, Wieland writes:

The skeleton runs through four vertical feet and the character of the clay changes frequently. Very little of the beautiful blue bone you showed me has been found. It is mostly black.

A diagram of the quarry as drawn by Wieland is here appended (Fig. 2).

Matrix and Inferred Habitat

A sample of the matrix was referred to my late colleague, Professor Barrell, who reported as follows:

[1] Footprints of Jurassic Dinosaurs. Amer. Jour. Sci., 3d ser., Vol. 7, 1899, p. 228.
[2] C. C. Mook. A Study of the Morrison Formation. Ann. New York Acad. Sci., Vol. 27, 1916, p. 100.

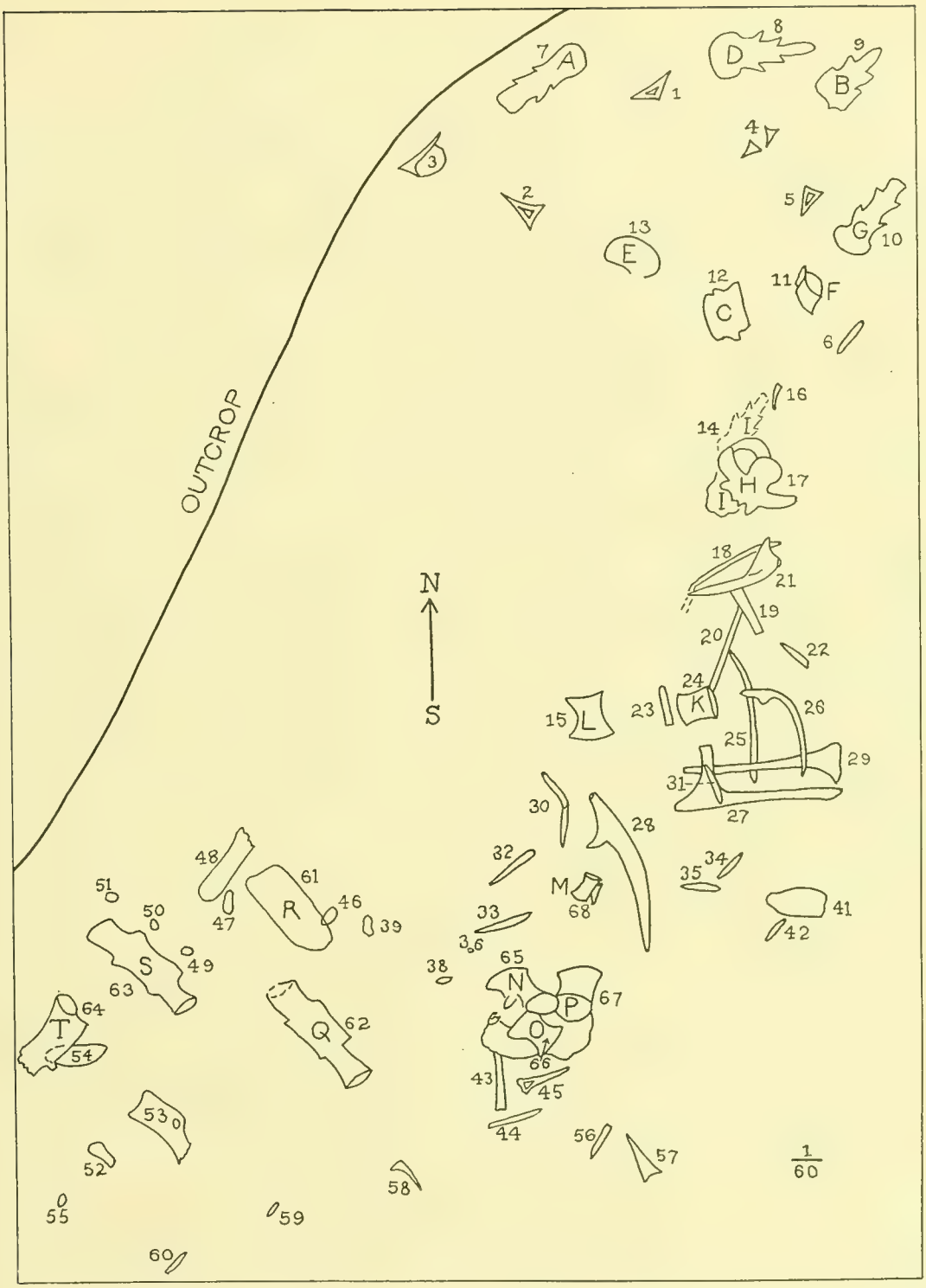


FIGURE 2.—Diagram of *Barosaurus* quarry. From sketch by G. R. Wieland 1898. Line of outcrop added from memory 1918. Scale about 1/60.

1-3, chevrons; 4, chevron(?); 5, chevron; 6, fragment; 7, vertebra A, caudal II; 8, vertebra D, caudal V; 9, vertebra B, caudal; 10, vertebra G, caudal IV; 11, vertebra F, caudal VI; 12, vertebra C, caudal VI; 13, vertebra E, caudal; 14, vertebra I, dorsal X; 15, vertebra L, dorsal V; 16, tooth of carnivorous dinosaur; 17, vertebra H, dorsal IV; 18-23, ribs; 24, vertebra K, caudal III; 25-29, ribs; 30, vertebræ fragments; 31-38, rib and other fragments; 39, small bone; 40, metacarpal from surface; 41, fragment of large bone; 42-44, fragments; 45, chevron; 46-51, fragments; 52, chevron?; 53, pubis; 54, sternal; 55, fragment; 56-57, ribs; 58, cervical rib, 15 in. long; 59-60, fragments; 61, vertebra R, cervical XV; 62, vertebra Q, cervical XIII; 63, vertebra S, cervical XII; 64, vertebra T, cervical XIV; 65, vertebra N, dorsal IX; 66, vertebra O, dorsal VII; 67, vertebra P, dorsal I; 68, vertebra M, caudal ca. XVII.

The rock consists of clay with the very finest silt, the grains of which are probably not more than .01 mm. in diameter. A fine grit was discernible in the clay, and an appreciable content of lime, as shown by a vigorous effervescence with acid. The gray clay shows occasional rusty stains from recent weathering, probably due to the presence of ferrous carbonate.

The inferred habitat was a rather swampy flood-plain, as water and organic matter must have been present to hold the iron in ferrous condition. Black specks which contained no grit seem to indicate plant material. These could not have been bone particles, as the bone is decidedly gritty; on the other hand, the decaying animal carcass may have been the source of the organic matter.

Material

The whole *Barosaurus lentus* individual must have been present originally, but was subject to dismembering and intermingling of the bones, possibly by carnivores, as the presence of the tooth might imply, even though there is no indication of tooth scoring on the *Barosaurus* bones. On the other hand, the confusion of the bones may have been due to the working of the entombing material in time of excessive moisture.

The bones are rarely injured other than by an oblique crushing, and some of the thinner laminæ and processes are delicate indeed. They lay scattered, although several dorsals were together at one end of the quarry, while the cervicals were at the other. It is entirely possible that the bones which are missing may have been lost by subsequent erosion, and that the specimen represents a single complete entombment, with a very slight intermingling of other bones (*Barosaurus affinis,* see below, page 38).

The material consists therefore of three specimens:

Barosaurus lentus Marsh, holotype. Yale Museum catalogue number 429. Of this specimen the following identified elements are present:

Cervicals 12-15	4
Dorsals 1, 4, 5, 7, 9, 10	6
Caudals 2-6, 13, 15-17, 19-20, 23, 25, 28, 32, ca. 42 and 70, also fragments ca. 12, 13	19+
Chevrons 5, 9, 16	3
Many ribs and rib fragments	ca. 10
Sternal, left	1
Scapula, part	1
Sacrum, part of centrum and coalesced neural spines	1
Portions of ilium	1
Pubis, right, part	1
Ischium, left, part	1
Femur fragments	1
Tibia fragments	1
Ends of left fibula	1
	51±

Barosaurus affinis Marsh, holotype. Yale Museum catalogue number 419. Of this species there are present:

Metacarpals	2

Theropod dinosaur, gen. et sp. indet. Yale Museum catalogue number 415.

Tooth	1

MORPHOLOGY OF *BAROSAURUS LENTUS*

Because of the paucity of material representing the other two species, and the fact that they do not surely belong to the genus *Barosaurus,* the type of *Barosaurus lentus* will be the principal subject for discussion.

Axial Skeleton

SKULL

The skull was unrepresented by a single fragment, nor are any of the anterior cervicals present; the presumption is, therefore, that the entire head and neck, except for the posterior portion, was swept away, possibly after entombment, as the cervical vertebræ which are preserved lay near the outcrop (see Fig. 2).

CERVICAL VERTEBRÆ

The four posterior cervicals are present. They are the estimated twelfth to fifteenth, the comparison being made with the mounted specimen of *Diplodocus carnegiei* at the Carnegie Museum at Pittsburgh. These cervicals resemble those of *Diplodocus* more than of any other genus in their general proportions and great length and also in the arrangement of the buttresses and laminæ. The lateral depressions, or pleurocœles, of the centra, while generally fully as deep as in *Diplodocus,* are not relatively so extensive in their antero-posterior dimension. The sequence of the vertebræ has been determined in part by the circumference of the posterior articular face of the centrum, which increases as follows: Cervical XII, 800 mm.; XIII, 840 mm.; XIV, 870 mm.; XV, 970 mm.; anterior face of dorsal I, 970 mm.

Cervical XII (Vertebra S) (Pl. II, Fig. 1).—This great bone has the longest centrum of any which are present, measuring no less than 930 mm. The vertebra is well preserved, although it has probably been subjected to a slight lateral crushing. It is, however, distorted the least of any of the cervicals present, with the exception of the fragmentary fourteenth.

The anterior face of the centrum is hemispherical, though somewhat laterally crushed. The surface of the bone, however, is removed, so that the interior cancellous tissue is exposed. The cancelli are very coarse. Ventrally, the centrum is characterized by a longitudinal groove enclosed by lateral carinæ which anteriorly pass into the capitular articulation for the rib. There is also a slight longitudinal lamina discernible for about one fourth the length of the centrum. The capitular facet is rather massive, and well braced antero-posteriorly.

The right lateral aspect of the bone bears a deep cavity or pleurocœle, the anterior limitation of which commences about the level of the diapophysis. This pleurocœle extends backward for a distance of about 240 mm., but is crossed by an oblique lamina of bone (pleurocentral lamina) running from above downward and backward. This lamina bifurcates at its anterior third and is in the line of the compression thrust from the prezygapophyses. The height of the pleurocœle is about 60 mm., and its greatest depth, at the anterior end, about 50 mm.

The prezygapophysis is preserved but displaced. Were it in its proper position, it would add considerably to the over-all length of the vertebra. The actual articular facet is very short antero-posteriorly, but wide transversely, and is somewhat convex upward in its transverse diameter.

The postzygapophysial facet is similarly short and wide; it is, of course, concave downward and outward (see Pl. II, Fig. 1, P. Z.).

The neural spine in this and the succeeding vertebræ is deeply bifid, with a median nodular excrescence for tendinous attachment at the bottom of the cleft. The spine rises about 110 mm. above the level of the tubercle on either side. The forward margin of the neural spine is continued as a thin ridge which forms a sweeping curve down to the prezygapophysis. The summit is somewhat thickened, and just beneath this thickening lie two pronounced cavities. A well defined posterior oblique lamina rises from the diapophysis and runs upward and backward to the superior limitation of the postzygapophysis. There is a distinct lateral depression just below this oblique lamina at its mid-length. The horizontal lamina is very pronounced, especially toward the diapophysis. It lies about at the level of the upper margin of the centrum.

Comparison with *Diplodocus carnegiei.*[3]—In comparison with the twelfth cervical of *Diplodocus carnegiei,* this bone differs in its much greater size, as shown by the table of measurements below, that of *Barosaurus* being over 50 per cent larger, especially in the central dimensions. The neural spine, however, is relatively somewhat lower. The pleurocœle of the *Barosaurus* cervical is much smaller relatively and is hardly as complicated; there is, however, the same oblique lamina dividing it into two portions, and in each instance this bifurcates anteriorly. One important difference lies in the position of the diapophysis, which in vertebræ XI and XII of *Diplodocus carnegiei* lies far forward, while in *Barosaurus* it lies more than one third of the distance back from the anterior end of the bone. Herein it resembles cervical X of *Diplodocus* much

Measurements of Cervical XII

	Barosaurus lentus mm.	*Diplodocus carnegiei* mm.	*Ratios*
Length over all	1020	650*	1.57
Height over all	560	490†	1.15
Centrum, length	930	(600‡)–627*	1.48
" anterior face, height	216	165‡	1.31
" " " width	220§	210‡	(1.05)
" posterior face, height	273	200‡	1.36
" " " width	220	(228‡)–225*	(0.98)
" " " circumference	ca. 800	700‖	1.14
Pleurocœle, height	60		
" depth	ca. 50		
Index of total length to height	1.98	1.14	
Average ratios: *Barosaurus lentus* and *Diplodocus carnegiei*			1.33

* From Hatcher's measurements.
† From two figures, photograph gives 703.
‡ From O. A. Peterson's measurements.
§ Crushed.
‖ From J. B. Hatcher's figures, all measurements not being given.

[3] J. B. Hatcher, Diplodocus Marsh, its Osteology, Taxonomy, and Probable Habits, with a Restoration of the Skeleton. Mem. Carnegie Mus., Vol. 1, No. 1, 1901, p. 24, Fig. 7.

more than either XI or XII. The position of the diapophysis in *D. carnegiei,* however, is neither constant nor progressive, being so extremely far forward only in cervicals XI, XII, and XIII. In *D. carnegiei* it is the fourteenth cervical that has the longest centrum; in *Barosaurus* it is the twelfth.

Cervical XIII (Vertebra Q) (Pl. II, Fig. 2).—This is a huge bone, with very broad, wing-like expansions which bear the prezygapophyses and extend backward to the diapophyses about three-eighths of the distance from the anterior end of the centrum. These wing-like expansions measure 530 mm. in length, the width over both being about 570 mm. The ventral aspect of the centrum resembles that of cervical XII, except that instead of one median ridge there are two slight ridges which, while widely apart at the posterior end, converge opposite the diapophyses. Posteriorly, these ridges become about 50 mm. deep, and bound laterally the ventral aspect of the bone. The sides of the centra are also crossed by buttress-like horizontal laminæ which serve to strengthen the diapophyses and are continued beyond them into the wing-like expansions above mentioned. The latter are supported from beneath by a number of bracket-like expansions of bone, which give the inferior aspect of these plates an appearance of considerable complexity. The prezygapophyses are also widely expanded, the entire structure being doubtless correlated with considerable lateral movement of the neck in the region of the posterior cervicals.

The pleurocentral cavities, while deep, are less than one-fourth the length of the centrum, whereas in *Diplodocus carnegiei* the pleurocœle of the thirteenth cervical is nearer one-half the central length. In each instance it is crossed obliquely by the pleurocentral lamina, which, as in cervical XII, serves also to resist the thrust of the prezygapophysis.

Compared with *D. carnegiei,* therefore, the present bone is much larger, with proportionately smaller pleurocœles. The rib arises relatively further back and seems to have been somewhat lighter, if one may judge from the rib facets, as the actual rib is not preserved.

The neural spine is deeply bifid as in cervical XII. As the bone is now prepared, only the ventral and left lateral aspects are visible. A somewhat oblique view is shown on Plate II, Fig. 2.

Measurements of Cervical XIII

	Barosaurus lentus	*Diplodocus carnegici*	*Ratios*
Length over all	1005†	655*	1.53
Height over all		550*	
Width across diapophyses	570	390*	1.46
Centrum, length	890	655*	1.36
" anterior face, height		186*	
" " " width	ca. 300‡	230*	1.30
" posterior face, height		220*	
" " " width	ca. 345‡	220*	1.57
" " " circumference	840	707	1.16
Pleurocœle, length	210		
Average ratios: *Barosaurus lentus* and *Diplodocus carnegiei*			1.40

* Peterson's measurements.
† Length increased by crushing?
‡ Measurements from photograph.

Cervical XIV (*Vertebra T*).—This bone is only partly preserved, the fragment consisting of the posterior part of the centrum, bearing the left postzygapophysis and a portion of the right. In this bone the lateral pleurocœle is further reduced and is shallow compared with that of cervical XIII. However, it is not entirely preserved. Its posterior limitation is 340 mm. forward of the hinder margin of the centrum. The lateral extent of the postzygapophysial facet is 195 mm. Ventrally the centrum is limited posteriorly by two rather deep longitudinal keels, as in *D. carnegiei.*

The circumference of the posterior face of the centrum is 870 mm., its horizontal diameter 300 mm., and the vertical one about 220 mm. The face is somewhat distorted, but does not exhibit the crushing shown in the other cervicals, hence these measurements have greater value.

Cervical XV (*Vertebra R*) (Pl. II, Figs. 3, 4).—This is a very well preserved bone, which, however, has suffered a dorso-ventral crushing so that, as in cervical XIII, not only are the ends of the centra apparently too broad for their height, but they appear obliquely sheared, the dorsal margin of the posterior face being at least 100 mm. in advance of the ventral. To what extent the obliquity of the articular faces in these cervicals is actually due to crushing is difficult to conjecture, for in *D. carnegiei* it is very slight, although greatest in cervicals XIV and XV, especially the latter. It may well be that in *Barosaurus* this obliquity was more marked, and correlated with a greater vertical range of movement of the neck (see below, page 15 and Pl. VII, description). The postzygapophyses and the bifid neural spine are missing to the base of the cleft.

The prezygapophyses are borne on very broadly expanded wing-like laminæ which also bear laterally the tubercular facets for the ribs. These laminæ are very thin, except forward where they thicken to bear the weight of the zygapophyses. Elsewhere the laminæ are supported by radial bracket-like buttresses, especially deep ones running from the centrum to the rib facet or diapophysis (see Pl. II, Fig. 4). The latter is again not so massive as in *Diplodocus carnegiei,* but has the same relative position, about mid-length the entire vertebra as it is now preserved.

The relative position of the two rib facets differs in this vertebra from that in any other *Barosaurus* cervicals which are present, as well as from that in the fifteenth cervical of *Diplodocus carnegiei,* in that the capitular facet lies *behind* the tubercular at least 50 mm.; in all the other cervicals mentioned the capitular lies in front. To what extent, if any, this is due to an oblique shearing is not apparent; it seems, however, to be significant and in harmony with the great obliquity of the articular faces of the centrum.

The pleurocœles are neither so deep nor so conspicuous as in the twelfth centrum, where they reach their greatest depth among the preserved cervicals. The posterior limit of the left pleurocœle is about 300 mm. forward of the margin of the posterior face of the centrum.

Oblique laminæ running in the wake of the anterior zygapophyses are very widely developed. These serve posteriorly to buttress the expanded articular face. From this, thin horizontal laminæ run out along the posterior face of the diapophysis and thus form the hinder margin of the expanded, wing-like plates.

Measurements of Cervical XV

	Barosaurus lentus mm.	*Diplodocus carnegiei* mm.	*Ratios*
Length over all	960*	590†	1.62
Height over all		ca. 585†	
Width across diapophyses	760	520†	1.46
Centrum, length	720	590†	1.22
" posterior face, height	200*	233†	0.86
" " " width	365	255†	1.43
" " " circumference	970	759	1.27
Pleurocœle, length	ca. 160		
Prezygapophysis to rib facet	450	352	1.27
Average ratios: *Barosaurus lentus* and *Diplodocus carnegiei*			1.30

* Probably exaggerated by crushing.
† Furnished by Peterson. Other measurements from figures.

DORSAL VERTEBRÆ

Dorsal I (Vertebra P) (Pl. III, Figs. 1-3).—A fairly well preserved bone. Such portions as are lacking on one side, however, are fortunately preserved on the other. As compared with the fifteenth cervical, the first dorsal is much shorter, the centrum of the latter measuring but 470 mm., as against the 720 mm. of the former, nor are the anterior wing-like expansions—horizontal laminæ—of so great antero-posterior extent, although their over-all width is nearly as great. The centrum shows much the same curvature of articular ends as does that of cervical XV, which is also true of their obliquity, especially of the posterior face. This obliquity is markedly greater than in *Diplodocus carnegiei,* and while doubtless due in part to crushing, as in cervical XV, it also seems to indicate a greater vertical flexion than is usual with sauropod dinosaurs. The seventh cervical of the Camelidæ is similarly modified, and also shows, in the llama at least, a marked dorso-ventral flattening of centrum similar to that of the first dorsal of *Barosaurus.* The convexity of the anterior face of the present bone is considerably less than in *Diplodocus,* but herein again the bone may not be quite normal. It may, however, be correlated with less mobility of movement at this point.

The pleurocœles are relatively much larger than in the cervicals, occupying approximately one-half of the centrum length. Their depth is also great, although its precise limit may not be ascertained, as the median separating wall has been destroyed and the two pleurocœles are confluent. Above, the pleurocœle is bounded by a thin, horizontal lamina of bone which serves to buttress both articular faces as they expand, the centrum being markedly constricted in the middle portion.

The prezygapophyses are wide, more like those of the cervicals, while the postzygapophyses are more dorsal-like, although with as yet no trace of the hyposphene-hypantrum articulation characteristic of the later dorsals. Width of the right prezygapophysis, measured on the curve, 230 mm.; of the left, 240 mm., showing the asymmetry characteristic of these forms. Length of the left postzygapophysis, the one preserved, 140 mm. There is the same nodular insertion for a longitudinal tendon lying at the bottom of the cleft of the neural spine as in the cervicals. A continuation of this nodule extends downward on the rear side of the bone as a distinct ridge, the

postspinal lamina, for about 100 mm. There is an equivalent prespinal lamina, much less pronounced, and about 60 mm. long. In the later dorsals these laminæ become highly rugose and of equal dimensions front and rear. They must have formed the insertions of powerful connecting tendons, the principal extension members of the fabric (see Pl. III, Figs. 1 and 2, PR.L. and PO.L.). The first dorsal of *Barosaurus* is thus transitional in character between the typically cervical and dorsal vertebræ.

As compared with the first dorsal of *Diplodocus,* that of *Barosaurus* is characterized by a relatively shorter centrum, with proportionately somewhat larger pleurocœles and more pronounced horizontal laminæ on the centrum. The bone in *Barosaurus* appears less massive, that is, more deeply sculptured and lightened. The position of the rather small capitular rib facet near the lower margin of the centrum is essentially the same. That of the tubercular facet must also have been similar, but in this instance the actual facet is not preserved.

Measurements of Dorsal I

	Barosaurus lentus mm.	*Diplodocus carnegiei* mm.	*Ratios*
Length over all	620	600*	1.03
Height over all	590†	680*–638	0.87
Width across diapophyses		610*	
Centrum, length	470	525*	0.89
" anterior face, height	165	250*	0.66
" " " width	328‡	265*	1.24
" " " circumference	772§	809§	0.95
" posterior face, height	250	250*	1.00
" " " width	350	245*	1.42
" " " circumference	980	780*	1.25
Pleurocœle, length	195		
" height	59		
Width across prezygapophyses	530	440	1.20
Width across postzygapophyses	460	374	1.23
Neural spine, depth of cleft	246		
Average ratios: *Barosaurus lentus* and *Diplodocus carnegiei*			1.06

* Peterson's measurements; others taken from Hatcher's Plate VII.
† Reduced by crushing.
‡ Taken from photograph, not original.
§ Calculated.

Dorsal IV (Vertebra H) (Pl. III, Figs. 4-6).—This bone is well preserved except for the neural spines and the distal ends of the diapophyses, and shows but little crushing. In certain respects it resembles dorsal III of *Diplodocus,* in others dorsal IV. It resembles dorsal III in the position of the capitular rib facet, which is borne on the upper margin of the centrum. This bone also resembles dorsal III in general proportions, but differs mainly in that the postzygapophyses are complicated by the presence of an hyposphene-hypantrum articulation as well. This supplementary articulation first appears in dorsal IV of *D. carnegiei.* The centrum of the bone under consideration is short, with deep but small pleurocœles, their small size being due to their being partly obliterated by the capitular rib facets somewhat as in dorsal III of *Diplodocus.* In dorsal IV of *Diplodocus,* however, the large facet almost completely obliterates the

pleurocœle as seen from the side. In *Brontosaurus* also the hypantrum first appears on the fourth dorsal. The pleurocœle in *Barosaurus* is bounded above by a thin lamina of bone running to the upper margin of the rib facet, whereas in *Diplodocus* this lamina is unrepresented, the bone being thickly rounded where it would lie.

From the anterior aspect (Pl. III, Fig. 4) the bone exhibits an oblique crushing, but is otherwise intact except for a portion of the margin of the articular face. The latter is still decidedly convex. Above the neural canal rises a vertical lamina which supports, bracket-like, a shelf which in turn connects with the two prezygapophyses. From each of these arises a lamina (prezygapophysial lamina) which buttresses the anterior face of the neural spine, but fades out below the level of the crest. The median roughening for tendinous attachment, the prespinal lamina, extends from the neural cleft downward to the connecting shelf, a distance of 150 mm. The width of the spine at the level of the cleft is 190 mm.

The posterior aspect (Pl. III, Fig. 5), as has been said, is the first to show the hypantrum. This conforms with the hyposphene of the next vertebra to be discussed, which can not be forward of the fifth in series. The centrum face is well preserved and is markedly concave. The hypantrum is supported from below by a single bracket-like lamina which arises from the neural canal, where it bifurcates to form an arch over the opening. There are some depressions on the anterior face of the expanded portion of the bone just beneath the zygapophyses, but no distinct buttresses arise, as they would doubtless have impeded the intervertebral motion. The rugose postspinal lamina is of less vertical extent than the prespinal, but is more prominently raised above the level of the bone. Its vertical extent is about 80 mm. The diapophyses are strong and broad and well supported by the diapophysial laminæ.

Measurements of Dorsal IV

	Barosaurus lentus mm.	*Diplodocus carnegiei* mm.	*Ratios*
Length over all	290*	260*	1.11*
Height over all	760†	770§‡	0.99
" to base of cleft	543		
Width across diapophyses		750§	
Centrum, length	260	240§	1.08
" anterior face, height	220	250§	0.88
" " " width	290	278§	1.04
" " " circumference	880		
" posterior face, height	235	275§	0.85
" " " width	330	335‖	0.98
" " " circumference	920		
Neural canal, height	40		
" " width	48		
Width across prezygapophyses	265		
Width across postzygapophyses	300		
Postspinal lamina rugosity, vertical length	80		
Average ratios: *Barosaurus lentus* and *Diplodocus carnegiei*			0.99

* From photograph.
† Estimated.
‡ 718 (Hatcher).
§ Peterson's measurements.
‖ Somewhat abnormal due to crushing (Peterson).

Dorsal V (Vertebra L) (Pl. IV, Figs. 1-3).—This bone is fairly well preserved except for the neural spine and diapophyses. The centrum, as usual, is obliquely crushed, so that the anterior face of it has been shifted to the left. This is the first vertebra to show the hyposphene or anterior accessory articulation, dorsal IV showing but the hypantrum. In dorsal V, the entire articulation is very massive and well buttressed. This vertebra also shows a cleft spine, but the bottom of the cleft is very materially higher than in the fourth. The capitular rib facets are now clear of the centrum, being borne entirely upon the pedicel of the neural arch; they are, however, lower than in the corresponding bone of *Diplodocus*. The two laminæ which support the prezygapophyses (prezygapophysial laminæ) have their origin in the rib facet and transmit a thrust direct from rib to zygapophysis. The centrum is as deeply opisthocœlous as are its predecessors.

Two laminæ, as before, arise from the shelf between the zygapophyses and run upward, diminishing as they go; then, becoming accentuated again as the spine becomes lightened, they exhibit the marked asymmetry to be emphasized in vertebræ VII and IX (see below and Pl. IV, Figs. 1, 3). The tendinous roughenings, the pre- and postspinal laminæ, are not very pronounced, but run up the entire face of the spine to the base of the cleft.

Lateral aspect (Pl. IV, Fig. 2).—The pleurocœles are apparently very deep but are filled with matrix. They are proportionately but slightly smaller than in dorsal V of *Diplodocus*. The capitular facets overhang them slightly and look somewhat downward and backward. The diapophysis is well supported, as the thin anterior and posterior diapophysial laminæ buttress it from below, and it is connected with the prezygapophysis by the horizontal lamina. Of the diapophysial laminæ the anterior one arises just above the rib facet, the posterior one nearer the hinder margin of the centrum, the two converging beneath the diapophysis. Between the anterior diapophysial, the horizontal, and the oblique laminæ of the prezygapophysis there is a very deep depression, extending nearly to the central plane of the bone.

The posterior aspect (Pl. IV, Fig. 3) is very well preserved and has suffered less from crushing than has the anterior face. The centrum shows, in its present condition, less concavity than that of dorsal IV and less than the immediately succeeding ones. Two of the latter have suffered lateral crushing instead of the antero-posterior shearing strain as in the present instance, which probably accounts for their increased curvature.

The neural arch is narrowest across the pedicels, above which it expands very widely to support the diapophyses, the surface of the bone showing but few inequalities. There arises a median buttress, the postzygapophysial lamina, just above the neural canal. This increases in width from nothing to 9.6 mm. as it rises. The average width of the buttress, however, is but 8 mm., except just beneath the hypantrum. The height of the zygapophysis above the centrum is about 240 mm. Greatest width across hypantra, 93.5 mm.; least, 23.5 mm. Greatest width across zygapophyses, 265 mm.

There is a curious asymmetry in the spine as viewed from the rear, in that on the left side there is a large oval depression (Pl. IV, Fig. 3, D) about 60 mm. wide, which is almost entirely lacking on the right. The rugose postspinal lamina is pronounced, and while it rises but little above the general level of the bone, it has a length of 188 mm.

Measurements of Dorsal V

	Barosaurus lentus mm.	*Diplodocus carnegiei* mm.	*Ratios*
Height over all	840†	845*	0.99
Height of neural arch to cleft of spine	473		
Height at postzygapophysis	514	500	1.03
Centrum, length	ca. 310	245*	1.26
" anterior face, height	200‡	280*	0.71
" " " width	320	278*	1.15
" posterior face, height	255	250*	1.02
" " " width	320	295*	1.08
" " " circumference	940	844§	1.11
Pleurocœle, length	60		
" height	ca. 80		
Neural canal, height	43		
" " width	50		
Width across pedicels	200		
Average ratios: *Barosaurus lentus* and *Diplodocus carnegiei*			1.04

* Peterson's measurements.
† Estimated.
‡ Error from crushing and lack of preservation considerable, as opposing face of dorsal IV = 240.
§ Calculated.

Dorsal VI (Pl. VI, Fig. 3).—This vertebra seems to be represented by the summit of the neural spine only, with no identifiable trace of the remainder of the bone in the collection. The bone fragment is very heavy and rugose, and may well have formed the common anchorage for the paired muscles and tendons of the bifid spines in front. This from its appearance is assumed to be the first unpaired spine. In *Brontosaurus,* the first uncleft spine which is broad and heavy like the one under consideration is borne by the sixth dorsal, in *Diplodocus carnegiei* by the seventh, and even there and in the eighth and ninth the summit is slightly cleft. In *D. longus* at the American Museum of Natural History the spine of dorsal VI is the last bifid one, and, as in the Pittsburgh specimen, the succeeding ones are slightly notched and not straight-topped as in *Barosaurus.* In *Brachiosaurus* none of the dorsals shows a bifid spine. In this feature, therefore, the resemblance is with *Brontosaurus* rather than with either *Diplodocus* or *Brachiosaurus.*

Breadth of the neural summit, 190 mm.; its antero-posterior diameter, 92 mm.

The development of the heavily rugose pre- and postspinal laminæ gives this bone fragment a distinct tripartite character, as though it formed not alone the origin of the great paired muscles of the neck, but short and powerful median tendons connecting with the spinal lamina of the preceding and succeeding vertebra.

Dorsal VII (*Vertebra O*).—This bone, while complete as to its dorsal spine, lacks the diapophyses and is otherwise seriously crushed and mutilated. The spine has suffered a curious torsion, but was asymmetrical even in life, as the prezygapophysial lamina on the left side is very much narrower than on the right; their respective widths being 3 mm. and 22.3 mm.

Anterior aspect.—The anterior face of the centrum is badly crushed, so that its original width may not be ascertained. The neural arch has diminished in width, being but 115 mm. across the pedicels as compared with 230 mm. for dorsal V. The pre-

zygapophyses are preserved, although the right one is displaced. They still show the hyposphene articulation, but the entire structure is small and weak compared with that of dorsal V.

Lateral aspect (left).—The centrum has been crushed out to a greater than normal length, measuring about 300 mm. The pleurocœle is well developed, but rather high on the centrum. There is a faint indication of the capitular rib facet on the left prezygapophysis. It is more decided on the right, where a distinct limitation may be seen. The inference is that the rib head was light, the tubercular being the chief articulation—this last, however, can not be verified, as the diapophyses which bore the tubercular facets are missing.

The various lateral laminæ are well developed, the anterior oblique and diapophysial laminæ being the dominant ones, as they overlie the posterior oblique. The last has its origin on the forward end of the centrum and runs directly upward and backward to the postzygapophysis. Where it crosses the pedicel, it divides and aids in reinforcing the diapophysis.

The posterior aspect is so remarkably distorted that a description of it would have but little value.

*Measurements of Dorsal VII**

	Barosaurus lentus mm.
Length over all	290
Height over all	800
Centrum, length	270†
" anterior face, height	245
" posterior face, height	280
" " " width	240†
Height to prezygapophyses	480
Height to postzygapophyses	530

* Dorsal VII of *Diplodocus carnegiei* is a plaster restoration, hence measurements are not given.
† Altered by crushing.

Dorsal IX (*Vertebra N*) (Pl. IV, Figs. 4-6).—This vertebra, as usual, lacks the diapophyses, otherwise it is fairly perfect, although somewhat obliquely crushed. It differs from that just described in having somewhat heavier prezygapophyses, with a distinct capitular rib facet on their outer aspect at the level of the zygapophysial facet. There is the same peculiar asymmetry on the forward face of the spine as in dorsal VII, but reversed. The vertebra is crushed in the reverse way also, which may heighten the apparent asymmetry but can not entirely account for it. The neural spine is very tall, forming 370 mm. of the height of the entire vertebra. Laterally, the latter broadens materially, due to the development of the diapophysial laminæ, although the entire outline is not preserved as shown in the figure (Pl. IV, Fig. 5).

The anterior face of the centrum is rather flat, but the posterior one is deeply concave, due, however, in large part to crushing.

Lateral aspect, right (Pl. IV, Fig. 5).—The pleurocœle is large and high, and is situated well forward, so that the oblique lamina which bounds it forms the upper hinder margin and is very heavy. The zygapophyses are strong and well buttressed and the hypantra are still well developed, though closely approximated. Laminæ, much as in *Diplodocus carnegiei,* arise high up under the diapophyses.

Measurements of Dorsal IX

	Barosaurus lentus mm.	*Diplodocus carnegiei* mm.	*Ratios*
Length over all	255	355*	0.72
Height over all	850	1028*	0.83
Width across diapophyses		475*	
Centrum, length	±212†	245*	0.87
" anterior face, height	260	275*	0.94
" " " width	240+	295*	0.81
" posterior face, height	280	295*	0.95
" " " width	305	310*	0.98
" " " circumference	980	980*	1.00
Neural canal, height	35		
" " width	55		
Width across pedicels	160		
Width across prezygapophyses	445		
Height to prezygapophyses	480		
Width across postzygapophyses	225		
Average ratios: *Barosaurus lentus* and *Diplodocus carnegiei*			0.89

* Peterson's measurements.
† From photograph.

Dorsal X (Vertebra I).—This bone has a well preserved centrum; the posterior portion above the centrum, however, is missing from a point a little above the neural canal, including the postzygapophyses and the entire spine. The prezygapophyses and a small portion of the left diapophysis remain.

Right lateral aspect.—There is a well developed pleurocœle within the limits of the centrum. It is divided by a partition into a deeper forward and a lesser and more shallow hinder portion.

Anterior aspect.—This shows the outline of the centrum not quite complete.

Posterior aspect.—The face of the centrum is but slightly concave.

Measurements of Dorsal X

	Barosaurus lentus mm.	*Diplodocus carnegie* mm.	*Ratios*
Length over all		365*	
Height over all		1070*	
Width across diapophyses		495*	
Centrum, length		290*	
" anterior face, height	265	ca. 305*	0.87
" " " width	260	ca. 335*	0.78
" posterior face, height	280	312*	0.90
" " " width	290	325*	0.89
Pleurocœle, length	95		
" height	80		
Neural canal, height	52		
" " width	58		
Width across pedicels	230		
Width across prezygapophyses	240		
Distance between prezygapophyses	30		
Average ratios: *Barosaurus lentus* and *Diplodocus carnegiei*			0.86

* Peterson's measurements.

SACRUM

This element is represented by a portion of the fourth(?) centrum and the coalesced summits of the neural spines. The central fragment is extremely massive, with no adaptation for lightening the weight appreciable in the portion preserved. Measurements of the centrum are impracticable.

The coalesced neural spines are sheared off on the apparent left side so that their buttresses are lacking. On the other side, however, there are three such buttresses which are in part free from the mass of the bone, like the flying buttresses of Gothic architecture. The entire summit is quite rugose, the rugosity extending down on the buttresses for a distance of about 100 mm.

The antero-posterior diameter of the mass as preserved is 240 mm.; the preserved height 390 mm., with no trace of zygapophyses at the level of fracture.

There is an additional rugose nodular piece of bone which fits fairly well into the somewhat cleft anterior end of the coalesced spinal summits and seems to represent such a nodule as that figured by Osborn[4] in the sacrum of *Diplodocus longus* at the American Museum, as well as in the restoration of *D. carnegiei.*

The equivalent measurements of the coalesced neural spines of *Barosaurus* and the two *Diplodocus* specimens are:

	Barosaurus lentus mm.	*Diplodocus longus* mm.	*D. carnegiei* mm.
Antero-posterior diameter	240	113.6	156
Height from zygapophysis	390+	340	450

The much greater first dimension in *Barosaurus* seems to point to need for a firmer anchorage for the extension members of the entire vertebral fabric, correlated probably with the greater weight of the cervical region. (See Pl. VII.)

CAUDAL VERTEBRÆ

Caudal II (Vertebra A).—This bone has a fine centrum showing little apparent distortion. But little of the neural arch is present and the wing-like diapophyses are gone. This vertebra is procœlous, but the curvatures are not great. Height of the neural canal, 36 mm.; its width, 44 mm. The lateral aspect shows deep pleurocœles, that of the right side having a length of 72 mm. to a depth of 173 mm. The neural arch has not the proportionate antero-posterior diameter seen in the dorsals. The least diameter across the pedicels is 69 mm.

Posterior aspect.—The right postzygapophysis is preserved, and corresponds in size and curvature to the equivalent prezygapophysis of the vertebra next to be described. The zygapophysis is supported by the usual postzygapophysial lamina rising above the neural canal. The latter, however, is distorted by crushing. Its height is 46 mm.

[4] H. F. Osborn, A Skeleton of Diplodocus. Mem. Amer. Mus. Nat. Hist., Vol. I, Pt. V, 1899, Fig. 7.

Measurements of Caudal II

	Barosaurus lentus mm.
Centrum, length	172
" anterior face, height	280
" " " width	385
" " " circumference	1010
" posterior face, height	245
" " " width	315
Pleurocœle, length	72
" depth	173
Neural canal, height	36
" " width	44
Width across pedicels (maximum)	128
Height to prezygapophyses	435
Height to postzygapophyses	410

Caudal III (*Vertebra K*) (Pl. V, Figs. 1-3).—This bone is very finely preserved even to the diapophyses, the more perfect right one being supplemented completely by the left.

The anterior face of the procœlous centrum is deeply concave, the ratio of depth to width of the curve being about 1 : 4. This may be very slightly exaggerated by crushing. The neural arch is strong. Heavy buttresses, prezygapophysial laminæ, support the zygapophyses, reinforced by lighter oblique ones, which originate above the neural canal, where they arise as the keystone of the arch which overhangs the aperture of the canal. The prezygapophyses are well developed and face inward and upward at an angle of about 45 degrees. Above them rises the neural spine, somewhat asymmetrical as in the posterior dorsals, especially as to the position of the rugose prespinal lamina. The diapophyses have a ventral, more or less horizontal portion, upon which there arises at right angles a thin, expanded, vertical plate; this in turn is bounded on its outer margin by the rugose diapophysial lamina, which is expanded antero-posteriorly. A strong oblique buttress arising from the pedicel runs across the anterior face of the otherwise thin diapophysial plate, and abuts against the inner side of the lamina in its upper portion. Width across zygapophyses, 180 mm. Vertical extent of right diapophysial lamina, 280 mm.

Lateral aspect (right) (Pl. V, Fig. 2).—The centrum has a very deep pleurocœle, partially occluded by matrix. The pleurocœle lies in the upper half of the centrum. The large diapophysis overhangs the side of the centrum, and in front of the diapophysial plate there is another pleurocœle-like depression impressed into the pedicel as well as the upper portion of the centrum. This is also occluded by matrix, so that its depth may not be learned, but its height is 90 mm. and the antero-posterior diameter 67 mm. The neural spine is inclined slightly backward, so that it overlies the rear half of the centrum. The spine is reinforced by thin laminæ of bone. The diapophysial lamina rises vertically from the diapophysis, and another, almost horizontal one originates about the same place and runs to the postzygapophyses. There is a heavy rugosity on the upper half on the lateral aspect of the spine, which is deeply channeled to reduce weight.

The posterior aspect is not so well preserved, as distortion is in greater evidence than in front. The width across the pedicels is 125 mm.; of the neural canal, 45 mm.; its height, 45 mm. (Compare table below.)

Measurements of Caudal III

	Barosaurus lentus mm.	*Diplodocus carnegiei* mm.	*Ratios*
Length over all	236	278*	0.85
Height over all	705	920†	0.77
Width across diapophyses	560	670†	0.84
Centrum, anterior face, height	242	324*	0.75
" " " width	345	‡	
" " " circumference	965	‡	
" posterior face, height	190	275†	0.69
" " " width	340	335†	1.01
Pleurocœle, length	ca. 100		
" height	60		
Neural canal, height at anterior face	30		
" " width " "	43		
Width across pedicels " "	220		
Width across postzygapophyses	930		
Neural spine, width (least)	72.8		
" " width of summit	110		
Diapophysial lamina rugosity, length	280		
" " " width	ca. 70		
Postspinal lamina rugosity, vertical length	360		
Average ratios: *Barosaurus lentus* and *Diplodocus carnegiei*			0.82

* Calculated from photograph.

† Peterson's measurements.

‡ Bone coössified with II in *D. carnegiei,* hence no measurement.

The postzygapophyses are supported by a median bracket-like buttress which arises above the neural canal and bifurcates, one branch going to each zygapophysis. The latter face downward and outward at an angle of 45 degrees, so that their faces are at right angles to each other. The left facet is nearly flat, while the right curves through 90 degrees of arc. From the postzygapophyses, strong but thin buttresses arise to reinforce the lateral margins of the neural spine (postzygapophysial laminæ). There are also broad, horizontal ridges from the inner face of the postzygapophyses which converge upon the spine. (See Pl. V, Fig. 3.)

The centrum of the specimen of *Diplodocus longus* in the American Museum of Natural History is more nearly circular, those of *D. carnegiei* and *Barosaurus* agreeing in proportions, hence probably more nearly normal. The main distinction of the *Barosaurus* caudal III, aside from its smaller size, seems to be the non-cleft spinous process, which is slightly bifid in both species of *Diplodocus.*

Caudal IV (Vertebra G).—This bone is well preserved, save that the diapophyses are lacking with the exception of the upper portion of the right.

Anterior face.—The centrum seems larger than that of caudal III and the prezygapophyses are heavy and wider apart. It is probable, however, that crushing has somewhat exaggerated this. The concavity of the anterior face of the centrum is also greater than in III. There is little to distinguish this bone from its predecessor.

Lateral aspect.—The spine in its present condition slants somewhat more than in caudal III. The pleurocœle is large, and very deep, and lies in the upper half of the centrum.

Rear aspect.—Centrum somewhat crushed. Width of neural canal at posterior end, 50 mm.; its height, 50 mm.

Measurements of Caudal IV

	Barosaurus lentus mm.	*Diplodocus carnegiei* mm.	*Ratios*
Length over all		275*	
Height over all	650	865*	0.75
Width across diapophyses		585*	
Centrum, length	208	215*	0.97
" anterior face, height	245	298*	0.82
" " " width	370	335*	1.10
" " " circumference	1012		
" posterior face, height	220	272*	0.81
" " " width	333	328*	1.01
Pleurocœle, length	99		
" height	68		
Neural canal, height at anterior face	46–50		
" " width " "	45–50		
Width across prezygapophyses	ca. 230		
Width across postzygapophyses	225		
Neural spine, width of summit	108		
Postspinal lamina rugosity, vertical length	345		
Average ratios: *Barosaurus lentus* and *Diplodocus carnegiei*			0.91

* Peterson's measurements.

Caudal V (Vertebra D).—The centrum and right diapophysis are preserved intact. The remainder, above the neural canal, is missing, except that a portion of the disconnected spine is preserved.

Anterior aspect.—Vertical height of diapophysial lamina, 230 mm. Height of spine above the prezygapophyses, estimated at 320 mm.

Measurements of Caudal V

	Barosaurus lentus mm.	*Diplodocus carnegiei* mm.	*Ratios*
Length over all		265*	
Height over all		835*	
Width across diapophyses	595†	544*	1.09
Centrum, length	219	200*	1.09
" anterior face, height	253	290*	0.87
" " " width	355	335*	1.06
" posterior face, height	216	263*	0.82
" " " width	318	320*	0.99
Neural canal, height	46		
" " width	40		
Average ratios: *Barosaurus lentus* and *Diplodocus carnegiei*			0.99

* Peterson's measurements.
† Estimated.

Caudal VI.—This bone seems to be represented by vertebræ F and C. Of the former only a portion of the centrum with the neural arch and spine is present, and of the latter a supplementary part of the centrum. They show no remarkable characteristics which would tend to differentiate them from caudal V. Another fragment of a centrum is also present which was evidently adjacent to the others in the living animal.

Caudal XIII.—From caudal VI to the estimated thirteenth none are preserved entire, although certain fragments of centra may pertain to intervening bones. The thirteenth,

however, is nearly perfect, except for the rarely preserved diapophyses, of which only a portion of the left is present. This *Barosaurus* caudal differs from that of *Diplodocus,* moreover, in that the diapophyses arise lower down on the vertebra, being almost entirely below a line drawn from the upper limitations of the faces of the centra, whereas in both *D. carnegiei* and *D. longus* of the American Museum the diapophysis arises above a line thus drawn. In *D. longus* the entire diapophyses are visible when viewed on a level from in front, in *Barosaurus* they are hidden by the expanded faces of the centrum. The centrum is deeply constricted in the middle, with a concave anterior face and a flattened posterior one. Laterally it bears deep pleurocœles which are relatively long and low. In the present instance, the median partition between the pleurocœles is broken through, but in the succeeding caudal it is about 20 mm. thick, which must have been approximately true of the present bone. There is on the under face of the centrum the longitudinal hollowing so characteristic of *Diplodocus.* In fact, in Marsh's description of that genus (1878, p. 414) he says: "It may be distinguished from the genera already known by the caudal vertebræ, which are elongated, deeply excavated below, and have double chevrons, with both anterior and posterior rami"—a definition which would apply equally well to *Barosaurus.* The median hollow is accentuated as one goes further back in the caudal series. The neural arch is strong; the spine, slanting backward at an angle of 45 degrees, is expanded and rugose at the summit. The width of the summit is 96 mm., and the antero-posterior diameter 126 mm. Beneath the expanded portion the transverse diameter is 42.5 mm. Prominent but thin buttresses, the prezygapophysial laminæ, run up the front of the spine, the prespinal lamina being confined between them except toward the summit, where it expands to meet the terminal rugosity. The prezygapophyses are well developed, jutting about 65 mm. in front of the centrum. The articular face looks upward and inward at an angle of 45 degrees and is comparatively flat. The postzygapophyses underlie the spinous process and do not extend beyond the limits of the centrum. Their articular faces are somewhat curved and look downward and outward. Both pre- and postzygapophyses are well buttressed from the pedicels by the zygapophysial laminæ.

The centrum is procœlous, the curvature of the anterior face being such that the ratio of the depth of the concavity to its width is as 1 : 8. There are well marked chevron facets at the posterior end of the centrum, which seem to imply a backwardly directed chevron similar in angulation to the spine.

In *Diplodocus longus* the spine is much more erect than in *Barosaurus* nor is the summit expanded as in the latter genus.

Measurements of Caudal XIII	*Barosaurus lentus* mm.
Height over all	445
Centrum, length	245
" anterior face, height	215
" " " width	252
" posterior face, height	216
" " " width	220
Pleurocœle, length	100
" height	35
Neural spine, width of summit	96

Caudal XV (Pl. V, Figs. 4, 5).—This bone shows but little distinction from caudal XIII, and is about as perfect in its degree of preservation.

Measurements of Caudal XV

	Barosaurus lentus mm.
Length over all	340
Height over all	420
Centrum, length	245
" anterior face, height	217
" " " width	247
" posterior face, height	200
" " " width	240
Pleurocœle, length	135
" height	35
Neural canal, height (anterior end)	31.5
" " width " "	42
Neural spine, width of summit	84.4
" " length " "	112.5

Caudal XVI.—Centrum only preserved. The longitudinal cavity beneath the centrum is becoming more pronounced, while the curvature of the anterior face is less, its depth being to the width as 1 : 15. The pleurocœle is still distinct and has the form of quite a deep conical depression. The posterior face of the centrum is somewhat concave.

Measurements of Caudal XVI

	Barosaurus lentus mm.
Centrum, length	255
" anterior face, height	205
" " " width	220
" posterior face, height	195
" " " width	235
Pleurocœle, length	150

Caudal XVII (Pl. V, Fig. 6).—This is a splendidly preserved bone except for the diapophyses. Of the centrum, neither face is much curved, but the anterior aspect is slightly more concave. The pleurocœle is still well developed and the inferior concavity of the centrum is becoming pronounced. Well developed chevron facets are present, of which the posterior are still the more prominent.

Both anterior and posterior zygapophyses overhang the centrum, the former to a greater extent than the latter. The neural arch is low, the spine, however, rising well over the after end of the centrum, and jutting about 50 mm. beyond it posteriorly. The summit of the spine differs decidedly from that of caudal XV, as it is not so highly rugose, and the curve of the summit is semicylindrical, with the long axis antero-posterior. The summit slopes downward gently toward the rear. The insertions for the longitudinal interspinose ligaments on front and rear face are still well developed and rugose. Laminæ from the prezygapophyses run almost horizontally backward, gradually rising to reinforce the spine.

Caudal XVIII seems to be missing from the series, the discrepancy in proportions between the one just described and the next preserved being too great to admit of their being contiguous.

Measurements of Caudal XVII

	Barosaurus lentus mm.	*Diplodocus carnegiei* mm.	*Ratios*
Length over all	355	345*	1.03
Height over all	350	530*	0.66
Width across diapophyses	?	200*	
Centrum, length	270	277*	0.97
" anterior face, height	187	204*	0.92
" " " width	220	200*	1.10
" posterior face, height	180	204*	0.88
" " " width	210	195*	1.08
" " " circumference		ca. 670*	
" mid length, width	130		
Pleurocœle, length	170		
Neural canal, height	27		
" " width	30		
Average ratios: *Barosaurus lentus* and *Diplodocus carnegiei*			0.95

* Peterson's measurements.

Caudal XIX.—This is a very well preserved bone, characterized by a total absence of diapophyses, which in *Diplodocus longus* cease at the twenty-second caudal, and by the reduction in depth of the pleurocœles. The bone is both proportionately and actually longer than the four preceding vertebræ, but the neural arch has been crushed downward so that the normal height of the spine has been somewhat reduced. Possibly this as well as the peculiar appearance of the postzygapophyses is due in part to antemortem causes. Both zygapophyses overhang the vertebral centrum. Of the latter, the anterior face is somewhat concave, which is also true, although in less degree, of the posterior one. The ventral groove is likewise increasing in depth. The chevron facets are well developed and coequal.

Measurements of Caudal XIX

	Barosaurus lentus mm.	*Diplodocus carnegiei* mm.	*Ratios*
Length over all	355	360*	0.99
Height over all	290	490*	0.59
Width across diapophyses		145*	
Centrum, length	285	278*	1.02
" anterior face, height	170	210*	0.81
" " " width	215	193*	1.12
" posterior face, height	155	195*	0.79
" " " width	200	190*	1.05
" " " circumference		650*	
" mid length, width	126		
Average ratios: *Barosaurus lentus* and *Diplodocus carnegiei*			0.91

* Peterson's measurements.

Caudal XX.—This bone has been badly crushed, so that the anterior part is telescoped back upon the posterior, thus reducing very considerably the original length of the bone. There is little or no trace of pleurocœles nor is the hollow beneath the bone as pronounced as in XIX. The neural spine is lighter and the summit is distinctly smaller, which may indicate an original position still further back in the caudal series.

But few dimensions have value owing to the distortion of the bone.

Measurements of Caudal XX

	Barosaurus lentus mm.
Height over all	310
Centrum, posterior face, height	142
" " " width	183
" mid length, width	116

There are portions of centra which represent at least five more caudal vertebræ, one of which was anterior to the fourteenth and four posterior to the twentieth. In addition, there are two small distal bones, one of which is nearly perfect.

Caudal ca. XXXII (Pl. VI, Fig. 4).—The centrum of this bone is complete, as is the neural arch; the zygapophyses alone are lacking. The centrum is rather slender, with widely expanded ends, the posterior one of which is convex and oblique and possibly abnormal. The anterior face is somewhat concave. There is no trace of the inferior depression in the centrum nor of spinous process, although the latter may have been present above the missing postzygapophyses.

Measurements of Caudal ca. XXXII

	Barosaurus lentus mm.
Length over all	97
Height over all	52.5
Centrum, anterior face, height	37.8
" " " width	47
" posterior face, height	42.5
" " " width	37.5

Caudal ? .—A portion of the centrum of a distal caudal is preserved. It resembles those of the slender "whiplash" terminus of the tail of *Diplodocus,* as there is no trace whatever of the neural arch. The fragment seems to pertain to the posterior half of the original bone, as the articular face is convex.

Measurements of Caudal ?

	Barosaurus lentus mm.
Length as preserved	5.5
Articular face, height	21.7
" " width	22.7
Centrum, height	17.3
" width	11.6

CHEVRON BONES

Of the bones which constitute the hæmal arch of the tail, the chevrons, three characteristic ones are present, illustrating two distinct types.

Chevron ca. V (Pl. VI, Fig. 5; Text Fig. 3).—One of these chevrons is from the anterior part of the tail. In size it compares with the fifth in the American Museum specimen of *Diplodocus longus,*[5] and agrees therewith in curvature, although somewhat more tapering. The base is broad, complete, and the two sides are connected by a

[5] Osborn, op. cit., Fig. 12.

transverse bar of bone. The hæmal canal is triangular and extends a little more than one-sixth the length of the bone. The bone is laterally compressed, dagger-like, with rather acute front and rear margins, especially in the distal third of the front and half of the rear edge. The articular facet is continued down the posterior side as though there had been considerable backward inclination of the bone.

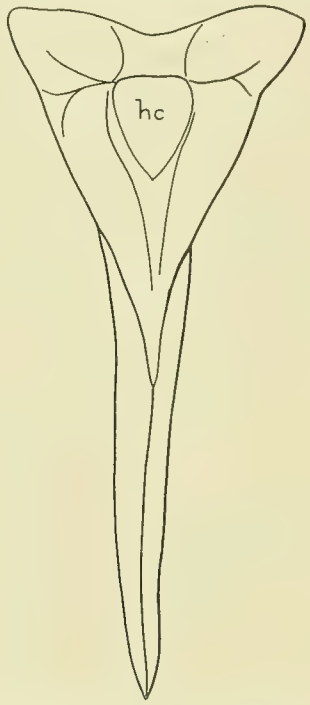


FIGURE 3.—Chevron V, rear aspect. One-fourth natural size. Note the slight asymmetry. hc, hæmal canal.

Measurements of Chevron ca. V

	Barosaurus lentus mm.
Length	348
Width of base	155.7
Width of mid length	36
Antero-posterior diameter of blade	63
Hæmal canal, height	55
" " width	39

Chevron ca. IX (Pl. VI, Fig. 6; Text Fig. 4).—A second chevron is present which can not have been far from the ninth. The bearing surface is nearly as broad as before, the hæmal canal larger, but the blade of the chevron is materially shorter. The last seems to be pathologic, as there is a foramen (see Pl. VI, Fig. 6, f) passing through the blade below and at right angles to the hæmal canal. This aperture is a longitudinal slit-like perforation with rounded margins, penetrating not the main mass of the bone but the two ridges which continue downward on either side of the hæmal canal on the posterior margin of the bone. This ridge is broken away on the left side of the bone, but is complete on the right. Whether there were two foramina, or

whether the two ridges had coalesced to form a single roofing is not quite clear. The latter, however, I believe to have been the case. Viewed from either side, the perforations are quite symmetrical. I have no idea as to the cause of this seemingly unique phenomenon. The entire bone, viewed from either front or rear, is curiously asymmetrical, as were the vertebræ. (See Text Fig. 4.)

Measurements of Chevron ca. IX

	Barosaurus lentus mm.
Length	243
Width of base	136.7
Antero-posterior diameter of blade	55.5
Hæmal canal, height	67
" " width	44

Chevron ca. XVI (Pl. VI, Fig. 7; Text Fig. 5).—A third chevron is present, admirably preserved except for the extreme anterior point. This bone is elongated in its antero-posterior diameter and hence presents a very different appearance from those

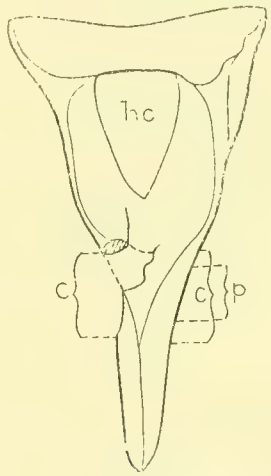


FIGURE 4.—Chevron ca. IX, rear aspect. One-fourth natural size. Note the decided asymmetry. hc, hæmal canal; c, crease; p, perforation, see text.

which have been described. It differs in shape, moreover, from any of those preserved with the American Museum specimen (*vide supra,* preface) in that the ascending portion is proportionately somewhat heavier than the fore and aft extensions.

The base is heavy, with large facets, of which the lesser forward area is perhaps three-fifths as great as the posterior.

The bone shows little asymmetry as contrasted with that just described (compare Pl. VI, Figs. 6 and 7). The margin of the posterior extension rises in a gentle curve into that of the base; the anterior margin, on the other hand, is much more abruptly curved, as the figure shows. Ventrally, there is an elongated, alveolus-like depression (Text Fig. 5 B, a), forerunner of the median opening which, in the more posterior chevrons of *Diplodocus,*[6] separates the bone into a pair of slender rods. This alveolus-like

[6] Osborn, op. cit., p. 209.

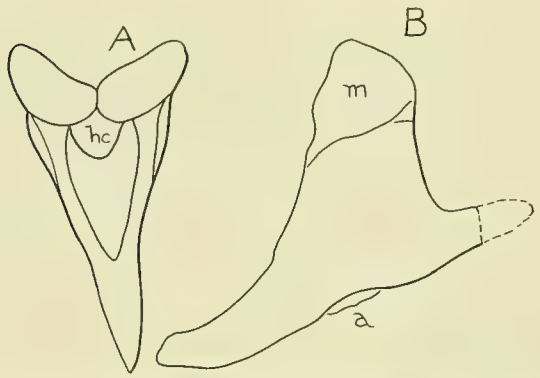


FIGURE 5.—Chevron ca. XVI. A, rear, B, right lateral aspect. One-fourth natural size. hc, hæmal canal; m, muscle area; a, alveolus.

depression seems to be in no way homologous with the perforation mentioned in chevron IX.

There is on either side a distinct muscle area (Text Fig. 5 B, m) on the proximal portion of the chevron, bounded by a pronounced horizontal ridge. This is not apparent on either of the two chevrons which have been described. The chevron of *Diplodocus longus* type (Yale Mus. No. 1920), which is shown on Plate VI, Fig. 8, represents but one half of the bone under consideration, as the cleavage into two elements is here complete. There is, however, a facet at the posterior end only for contact with the other element of the pair (see also Text Fig. 6).

Measurements of Chevron ca. XVI

	Barosaurus lentus mm.
Perpendicular length	120
Width of base	93
Horizontal length as preserved	181.5
Hæmal canal, height	14
" " width	25
Alveolus, antero-posterior diameter	20
" transverse diameter	5
" depth	18

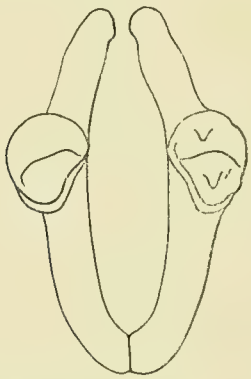


FIGURE 6.—Chevrons of *Diplodocus longus*, inferior aspect, after Marsh. One-fourth natural size. Compare Figure 4.

RIBS

A number of ribs, both cervical and dorsal, are present. They are large, but in their present condition show little distinction from those of *Diplodocus* or *Brontosaurus*. None of the dorsal ribs is sufficiently complete to indicate the size of the chest cavity, which would be a point of considerable interest.

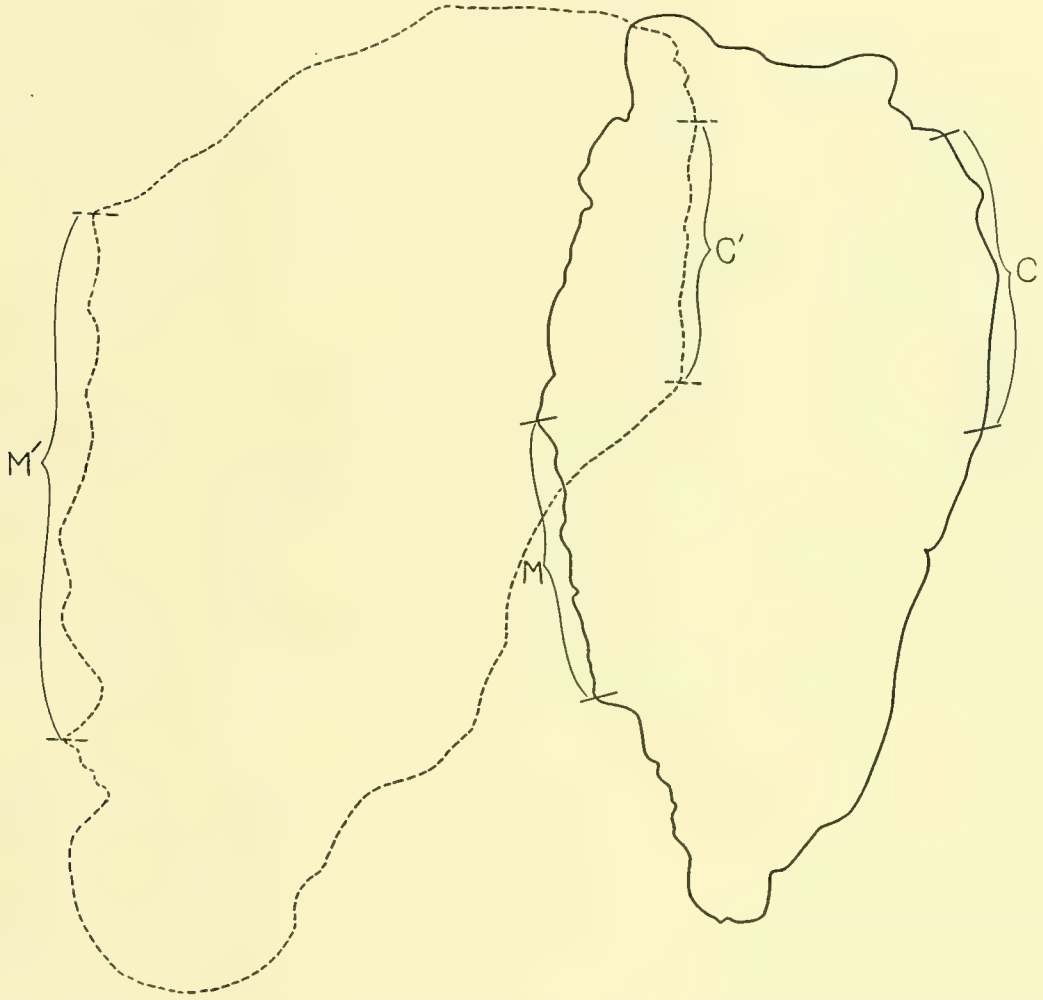


FIGURE 7.—Sternals of *Barosaurus* and *Diplodocus carnegiei*. One-fourth natural size. Entire outline, *Barosaurus;* dotted outline, *Diplodocus,* drawn from the photograph by Hatcher 1901, Figure 12. C, C', coracoid articulation; M, M', median articulation.

STERNAL

This bone (Pl. VI, Fig. 1; Text Fig. 7) is in splendid condition except that its posterior end is somewhat eroded. It is an oval plate, one surface of which, the visceral, is concave, the other convex. The margin is somewhat irregular, but two articular areas are distinctly visible, one for its fellow on the inner margin, the other on the exterior border near the anterior end for the coracoid. The latter particularly

shows an increased thickness and rugosity, as though continued somewhat in cartilage. Areas for muscle attachment are also visible around the margin, especially toward the posterior end on the outer side. The general thickness of the bone is more or less uniform, rarely exceeding 19 mm. at mid length to 12 mm. toward the anterior end. The knob-like posterior end, on the other hand, is 68 mm. thick. The outline drawn to scale with that of *Diplodocus carnegiei* is here shown (Text Fig. 7).[7] Were the posterior portion of the *Barosaurus* sternal intact, its length would more nearly equal that of *D. carnegiei.*

Measurements of the Sternal

	Barosaurus lentus mm.	*Diplodocus carnegiei**	*Ratios*
Antero-posterior diameter	485†	540	0.90
Greatest transverse diameter	250	310	0.80
Length, median articulation	150	280	0.70
Length, coracoid articulation	160	140	1.14
Index, length to breadth	1.92 : 1	1.74 : 1	

* From Holland's figure.
† As preserved.

Appendicular Skeleton

fore limb and girdle

The only portion of the fore limb or its girdle present is a fragment which has been identified as of a scapula, largely through a process of elimination, as the outline is only in very small part preserved.

Scapula (see Pl. VII).—This bone consists of a portion 810 mm. long by 22.5 mm. wide. But two portions of the outline remain, one somewhat irregular at the distal end, and a small portion of the almost straight lateral border. The bone is fairly massive, thinning toward the margin, but in no way remarkable, judging from the very inadequate portion preserved.

hind limb and girdle

The hinder extremities are represented by a number of elements, none of which unfortunately is complete.

Ilium (see Pl. VII).—Of the ilium there are present a number of marginal fragments, including a portion of the acetabulum and the pubic peduncle. Further description, however, is of little value.

Pubis (Pl. VI, Fig. 2; Text Fig. 8).—A right pubis is present, excellently preserved except for its distal end, of which a considerable portion is missing. A portion of the proximal end is also eroded away, but this is relatively inconsiderable. A scale drawing has been made superposed upon that of *Diplodocus carnegiei* enlarged from Hatcher's figure (op. cit. Pl. I, Fig. 1). The pubis of *Barosaurus* was the larger, although the preserved portion is actually the shorter of the two. The ratio of shaft widths, about the only absolute measurement, is essentially that of the femora and tibiæ, about 1.70, actually 1.69. Were the same ratio maintained in the relative lengths, that of *Barosaurus*

[7] W. J. Holland, The Osteology of Diplodocus Marsh. Mem. Carnegie Mus., Vol. 2, No. 6, 1906, Figs. 25, 26.

would be 1,385 mm. A conservative estimate of at least a metre seems safe. (See also Pl. VII.)

Compared with the pubis of *Apatosaurus,* that of *Barosaurus* is much lighter; it is in every way, except for its greater size, much more like that of *Diplodocus.* The proximal end is heavy, the pubic foramen oval, of good size, and running obliquely

FIGURE 8.—Pubis of *Barosaurus* and *Diplodocus carnegiei,* superimposed. One-sixth natural size. Entire outline, *Barosaurus;* dotted outline, *Diplodocus,* from a photograph by Hatcher 1901, Plate X, Figure I. A, A', ischiatic articulation.

through the bone not far from its present posterior border. Below this thin, incomplete margin, there is a rugose articular surface which formed the ischiatic articulation. Externally, the bone has a fine curve, with a completely preserved rounded margin, which, except for the rugosity mentioned above, is thicker than that on the inner side of the bone. The visceral aspect is concave, the external one generally convex, as in the sternal.

Measurements of the Pubis

	Barosaurus lentus mm.	*Diplodocus carnegiei* mm.	*Ratios*
Length ..... preserved	665	820	1.69
Length ..... estimated	1385		
Length, iliac articulation		240	
Length, ischiatic articulation	290	180	1.61
Width, proximal end (present)	390	365	(1.07)–
Width, shaft	177	105	1.69
Width, distal end .....estimated ca.	400	240	1.69
Average ratios: *Barosaurus lentus* and *Diplodocus carnegiei*			1.67

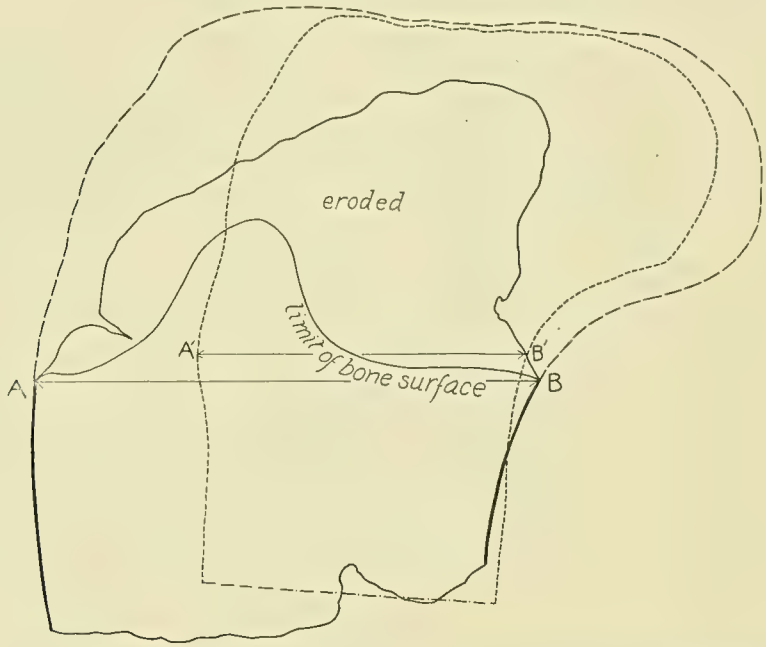


FIGURE 9.—Femur of *Barosaurus* and *Diplodocus carnegiei*, proximal ends superimposed. One-sixth natural size. Entire outline, *Barosaurus*, the summit of which is eroded away, dashes indicating the probable outline; dotted line, *Diplodocus*, from a photograph by Hatcher 1901, Plate XI, Figure 3. A B, A′ B′, dimensions recorded in text, page 37.

Ischium (see Pl. VII).—What appears to be the proximal end of the left ischium is present. The acetabular surface is complete, slightly roughened, and thin-edged, very much as in *Diplodocus*. The *Barosaurus* ischium is larger, but a ratio between the bones is impossible to ascertain, except that the chordal distance across the acetabular surface is about 280 mm. to 250 mm. for *D. carnegiei*, a ratio of 1.12 : 1.

If one may judge of the direction of the grain of the bone, the ischium of *Barosaurus* does not seem to have had so slender a shaft as in *Diplodocus*, but this is highly conjectural. There is also a small portion of what seems to be the distal part of the ischium present, if the identity of the bone be correctly determined. It resembles that of *Apatosaurus* more than *Diplodocus*, in being more squarely truncated distally, and in having a rather prominent ridge on the outer face.

Femur (Pl. VII; Text Fig. 9).—A number of fragments of a femur are present. Of these, three have been assembled to form the proximal end. This gives a clue to the enormous proportions of the bone, which are about one and three-quarters those of *Diplodocus* as estimated from Hatcher's figures (op. cit., Figs. 15-17). The same relative dimensions are true also of the distal end of the tibia, which is likewise preserved. A sketch of the relative proportions is here shown (Text Fig. 9). The measurements as thus indicated follow:

Measurements of the Femur

	Barosaurus lentus mm.	*Diplodocus carnegiei* mm.	*Ratios*
Diameter at AB, transverse	395	230	1.72
Diameter at AB, thickness	170*	137.5	1.23+
Circumference at AB	950		
Length	(?2525.8)	1468.5	(1.72)
Average ratios: *Barosaurus lentus* and *Diplodocus carnegiei*			1.47

* Crushed.

FIGURE 10.—Tibia of *Barosaurus* and *Diplodocus carnegiei,* distal ends superimposed. One-sixth natural size. Solid line, *Barosaurus;* dotted line, *Diplodocus,* from the photograph by Hatcher 1901, Plate XI, Figure 1. A, astragalar facet.

This immense length, 8 feet 2½ inches, is manifestly improbable, but is about what the length would be were the known ratios with *Diplodocus* carried out. The near approximation of lengths of the dorsal and caudal vertebræ in the two genera would lead one to infer a similar correspondence in the femoral length, despite the greatly enlarged cervicals in *Barosaurus,* the latter implying possibly elongated fore limbs as in *Brachiosaurus,* not hind limbs as well.

The distal end of a femur, probably the left, is also present. Although only its anterior face is preserved intact, the inner condyle is indicated and also the beginning of the outer. The proportions which may thus be ascertained would make it about 350 mm. across as compared with about 250 for *D. carnegiei,* giving a ratio of about 1.40, less than that of the proximal end. These measurements are, however, inaccurate

owing to the faulty preservation of the *Barosaurus* bone. A number of good-sized fragments of the femoral shaft are present, but from lack of contacts they give no clue to the length of the bone.

Tibia (Text Fig. 10).—The distal end of the right tibia is present, as are other fragments doubtless referable thereunto but not recognizable. The articular end is very rugose and deeply concave in the astragalar facet. The articular extremity is widely expanded, as compared with the shaft, although this appearance is heightened by the corrosion of the inner (median) side above the articular facet. What appears to be part of the proximal end of the tibia is also present, but affords no significant measurements. Those of the distal end follow:

Measurements of the Tibia

	Barosaurus lentus mm.	*Diplodocus carnegiei* mm.	*Ratios*
Distal end, transverse diameter	380	212	1.787
" " antero-posterior diameter	220		
" " circumference	980		
Length	(?1680.7)	940.5	1.787

Here again the tibial ratio is so very great that were it carried out in the length, that of *Barosaurus* would be about 5 feet 6 inches, or 13 feet 8½ inches for the femur and tibia alone, exclusive of the foot.

Fibula.—The two ends of the fibula are also present, and again the intervening bone is not preserved. The proximal portion has a very distinct muscle insertion on its anterior face.

The distal end of the fibula is but a fragment, and is highly rugose on its articular end, as is the tibia. Available measurements are of little value, but indicate a ratio with those of *Diplodocus* approximating those of femur and tibia.

BAROSAURUS AFFINIS

Of the material found in the *Barosaurus* quarry, there are but three fossils, two foot bones and one tooth, which do not seem to pertain to the type specimen of *B. lentus*. It will be remembered that all of Marsh's description of the second species was contained in the single sentence, "With these fossils were found remains of a much smaller species which may be called *Barosaurus affinis*." There is absolutely no indication of what these remains were, nor are any of the bones labeled or otherwise distinguished as of another species. The tooth, which is that of a carnivorous dinosaur, can not belong to the species of sauropod under discussion, and this leaves only the two foot bones as possibly those to which Professor Marsh referred.

These, which are metacarpals I and II of the left manus, are of the approximate size of those of *Morosaurus grandis* Marsh, type specimen No. 1905, Yale Museum. They are, on the other hand, much smaller than the equivalent bones of *Diplodocus longus* type, as the ratios in the table of measurements show. From these ratios it

seems conclusive that they could not have belonged to the type of *Barosaurus lentus,* whose measurements, as we have seen, are rarely smaller than those of *Diplodocus,* and in the forward part of the skeleton as preserved largely exceed it. *D. longus* and *D. carnegiei* are approximately of a size, nor is it clear that they are specifically distinct.

Metacarpal I (Pl. VI, Fig. 9).—This bone is absolutely perfect, and while slightly fissured, has been naturally cemented so that no repair was necessary. In form it resembles that of *Morosaurus lentus* very closely, the likeness being much greater than to *Diplodocus longus.* The main distinction from *Morosaurus* lies in the outer and distal aspects, the latter being wider transversely and of less antero-posterior extent, while the outer posterior angle is prolonged outward. The articular face in *Morosaurus* therefore is roughly rectangular, although with an inwardly curved posterior border, while in *Barosaurus* the outer and inner sides form an angle of nearly 45 degrees with each other. This of course renders the form of the outer surface somewhat different as well.

Metacarpal II (Pl. VI, Fig. 10).—This is only partly preserved, as the distal half is gone. In size it once more approximates that of *Morosaurus lentus,* but differs in that the proximal articular face is more rugose, as though it bore a relatively somewhat thicker articular cartilage. The surface of the bone in *Barosaurus* is almost convoluted, in *Morosaurus* pitted. There is a similar distinction in the equivalent surfaces of metacarpal I, but it is somewhat less marked in the former. In *Barosaurus* the shaft is much more irregular in section, with one acute angle, while in *Morosaurus* it is again roughly rectangular.

Measurements of the Metacarpals

	Barosaurus affinis mm.	*Morosaurus lentus* mm.	*Diplodocus longus* mm.
Metacarpal I			
Length	138	137	209*
Proximal face, transverse diameter	86	92	146
" " anterior-posterior diameter	105	106†	148
Distal face, transverse diameter	120	105	152
" " anterior-posterior diameter	69	76	105
Width of shaft (least)	80	79	108
Metacarpal II			
Length		179	
Proximal face, transverse diameter	97	96	
" " anterior-posterior diameter	98	112	

* From Marsh's figure.

† Slightly restored.

THEROPOD DINOSAUR GEN. ET SP. INDET.

A single tooth of a carnivorous dinosaur (Yale Museum Cat. No. 415) was present in the quarry in association with the *Barosaurus* skeleton (see Fig. 2, 16). It is lightly constructed, sharply curved, and a portion of the hollow base filled with matrix is preserved. Serrations on the anterior convex border can hardly be seen with the naked eye but are nevertheless discernible for nearly half the preserved length from the tip. On the after concave border they are more pronounced but still minute, and extend for the entire present length of the tooth.

While this tooth has not with certainty been identified, it is comparable in size and curvature to certain ones in the after portion of the maxillary of the *Allosaurus fragilis* skull preserved in the American Museum of Natural History, but this is rather slender evidence upon which to base an identification of so generalized a tooth. The dimensions are:

	mm.
Total length preserved	26
Antero-posterior diameter at base	10.7
Transverse diameter at base	4.7

RELATIONSHIPS

Comparison with Diplodocus.—It is evident that *Barosaurus lentus* represents a highly specialized sauropod dinosaur, ponderous of limb, the relative proportions of which unfortunately can not be ascertained from the single known specimen. The preserved elements compare most nearly with those of *Diplodocus,* but differ remarkably in certain proportions. These resemblances may have been in part convergent and merely similar mechanical adjustments of bony tissue to meet similarly disposed strains and stresses, and as such imply no close relationship. Among the points of agreement are the general proportions of the vertebræ, although as one goes toward the tail the relative height of the neural spines grows less in *Barosaurus.* Pleurocœles are similar in disposition and their proportions are somewhat alike. The caudals of both *Barosaurus* and *Diplodocus* are also alike in having a concavity in the ventral surface of the centrum. There is also a general similarity of the chevrons and of the arrangement of the laminæ of the vertebra throughout the series. Indeed, two of the distinctive features of *Diplodocus* as set forth in Marsh's original description are the presence of the excavation on the ventral surface of the caudal centra and the two-branched character of the chevrons, upon which the name *Diplodocus* (διπλόος, double, + δοκός, rafter) is founded and which Marsh says distinguishes the vertebral column from that of all other Sauropoda. These do not, however, serve to distinguish *Diplodocus* from *Barosaurus.* The third point, the elongated caudals in the former, is a distinction.

The main general differences between *Barosaurus* and *Diplodocus* may be summarized as follows: Details of the lamina of the vertebra, simple character of the

neural spines of the after dorsals in *Barosaurus,* and position of the capitular facet on the dorsal vertebra, which rises more rapidly in *Diplodocus.* The other marked distinctions are those of proportions, for while the dorsal series of vertebræ as a whole approximate in length in the two animals, that of *Barosaurus* being only slightly the longer, the cervicals in the latter are vastly greater and the caudals markedly less. The relatively lower height of the spines of the after vertebræ is correlated with the more abbreviated tail. The weight of the hind limbs is more like that of *Brontosaurus* than of *Diplodocus carnegiei.* Of their length and the character of the fore limbs we have no data. The obliquity of the centrum faces of the posterior cervicals and first dorsal of *Barosaurus* seems to imply a different carriage of neck, probably giraffe-like as in the Tendaguru *"Brachiosaurus"* as restored by Matthew. If so, it would perhaps also imply elongated fore limbs like those of *Brachiosaurus.*

Comparison with Brontosaurus.—With *Brontosaurus,* the general mechanical resemblances also hold; this applies to the character of the neural spines, but the huge proportions of the cervicals in *Barosaurus* are a distinction, as is also the more *Diplodocus*-like character of the caudals.

Comparison with Brachiosaurus.—Compared with the American *Brachiosaurus* of Riggs[8] and the smaller related form, *Haplocanthosaurus* Hatcher,[9] I find no points of resemblance in any known element. The following characters are given by Riggs for the family Brachiosauridæ, especially *Brachiosaurus* itself: (1) Humerus as long as femur. In *Barosaurus* the humerus is unknown. (2) Neural spines of vertebræ simple. In *Brachiosaurus* those of more than half of the dorsal series are deeply bifid. (3) In *Brachiosaurus* the zygapophyses reach extreme reduction and the hyposphene-hypantrum articulation reaches extreme development. In *Barosaurus* the zygapophyses are well developed and also the latter articulation, but there is nothing extreme about it. (4) Riggs also emphasizes the low, broad structure of the vertebral pedicels. This perhaps may also be said of *Barosaurus* to a certain extent. (5) The dorsal pleurocœles in *Brachiosaurus* are much longer than high, the length being between two and two and a half times the height, whereas in *Barosaurus* they are as high as or higher than long. (6) The laminæ are not so pronounced in *Brachiosaurus* as in *Barosaurus,* and the neural spines of the dorsal vertebræ and probably of the sacrum are relatively lower in *Brachiosaurus.*

Altogether, I see no indication of relationship with the Brachiosauridæ.

Comparison with "Brachiosaurus" of Tendaguru.—The description of the Tendaguru species, *"Brachiosaurus" brancai,* which we possess is unfortunately very meagre.[10] The figured cervical (Fig. 1), which is spoken of as lying in the "second quarter," that is, between the sixth and ninth, is quite similar to those of *Barosaurus* in many details, the principal distinction being the overhanging prezygapophyses which increase the over-all length markedly beyond that of a *Barosaurus* cervical, the centrum of which

[8] E. S. Riggs, *Brachiosaurus altithorax,* the largest known Dinosaur. Amer. Jour. Sci., 4th ser., Vol. 15, 1903. pp. 299-306, 7 figs.

[9] J. B. Hatcher, Osteology of *Haplocanthosaurus.* Mem. Carnegie Mus., Vol. 2, 1903, pp. 1-72, 6 pls., 28 figs.

[10] W. Janensch, Uebersicht ueber der Wirbeltierfauna der Tendaguru-Schichten. Archiv f. Biontologie, Berlin, III. Bd., 1. Heft, 1. Teil, 1914, pp. 82-83, 86-98, Figs. 1-6.

may actually have been longer. The *"Brachiosaurus"* bone in question naturally most nearly resembles cervical XII, that is, the anterior one of *Barosaurus* which is preserved, and doubtless had we the identical element, the resemblance would be yet closer. From cervical XII it differs in the relatively slenderer centrum and longer pleurocœle, but the other differences, except the overhanging prezygapophyses, are largely those of detail, as the main laminæ and other structural features are not unlike.

Conclusions.—Unless the German author, Janensch, actually made a comparison of the dorsals of the Tendaguru genus with those of the American *Brachiosaurus* and found sufficient agreement, I see no reason for including the African form in this genus merely on the ground of the elongated fore limbs, as we have no reason to know that *Brachiosaurus* had huge cervical vertebræ. Certainly those of the related *Haplocanthosaurus* were not, but on the contrary were relatively short. The unpaired neural spine is characteristic of the Brachiosauridæ, but not of *Brontosaurus, Morosaurus, Diplodocus, Barosaurus,* nor so far as I know of the African genus. Whether *Barosaurus* possessed an elongated fore limb we do not know, but there is certainly no evidence against it. Hence from the evidence before me, the huge cervicals of the African form, which resemble so much those of *Barosaurus* rather than the known cervicals of the Brachiosauridæ, specifically *Haplocanthosaurus*. seem to show that the comparison lies with *Barosaurus* rather than with *Brachiosaurus,* especially as there is no present evidence to the contrary. Further evidence from Berlin, if such were available, might serve, in the light of the present study of *Barosaurus,* to clarify the relationships.

The comparison with other Sauropoda may be expressed in tabular form as follows:

	Cervicals	Anterior dorsal spines	Tail	Fore limbs
Barosaurus	Huge	Paired	Moderately short	Unknown Great size inferred
Brachiosaurus	Unknown	Unpaired	Unknown, except two anterior vertebræ	As long as hind limbs
Haplocanthosaurus (Least specialized)	Short	Unpaired, short and simple throughout column	Very short	Unknown
Brontosaurus	Moderate	Paired	Very long	Smaller than hind
Diplodocus	Moderate	Paired	Very long	Smaller than hind
Tendaguru genus	Huge	Unknown[11]	Very short	As long as hind limbs

[11] One dorsal only was in part prepared for study in 1914. This has an unpaired spine, but as its position in the series is unknown, no significance can be attached to the character of the spine, since the spines are unpaired in the posterior dorsals of all Sauropoda.

PLATE I. Photograph of excavation for *Barosaurus lentus* Marsh at Piedmont, South Dakota, October 2, 1895. Looking southeast to east. Showing group of vertebræ N, O, P, and Q, with cervical T marked by large pick, and point of further excavation by small hand pick. Photograph by G. R. Wieland, *American Fossil Cycads,* Plate L, photograph 2. Courtesy of Doctor Wieland.

PLATE II. Cervical vertebræ of *Barosaurus*.

Figure 1. Cervical XII (Vertebra S), right lateral aspect. One-tenth natural size.

Figure 2. Cervical XIII (Vertebra Q), oblique ventral aspect. One-tenth natural size.

Figure 3. Cervical XV (Vertebra R), dorsal aspect. One-tenth natural size.

Figure 4. Cervical XV (Vertebra R), ventral aspect. About one-eighth natural size.

Key drawing: A, anterior, P, posterior face of centrum. CAP.FAC., capitular rib facet; DIAP., diapophysis; HOR.LAM., horizontal lamina; N.SP., neural spine; P.L., pleurocœle; PC.L., pleurocœle lamina; P.Z., postzygapophysis; POST.OB., posterior oblique lamina; PR.Z., prezygapophysis; TUB.FAC., tubercular facet; W.E., wing-like expansion.

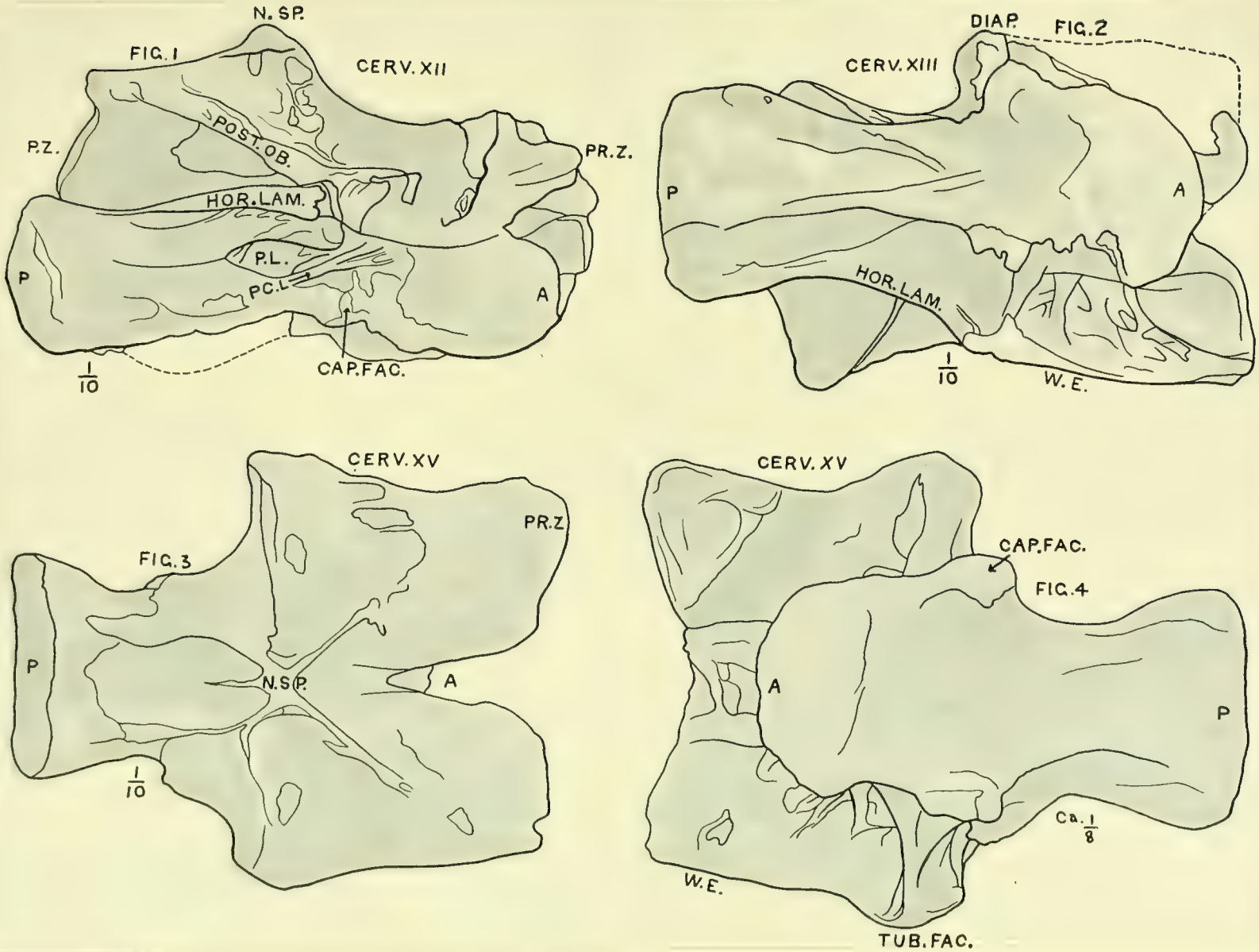


FIG. 1
N. SP.
CERV. XII
POST. OB.
P.Z.
PR.Z.
HOR. LAM.
P.L.
P
PC.L.
A
1/10
CAP. FAC.
FIG. 2
DIAP.
CERV. XIII
P
A
HOR. LAM.
1/10
W. E.
CERV. XV
PR.Z.
FIG. 3
P
N.S.P.
A
1/10
CERV. XV
CAP. FAC.
FIG. 4
A
P
Ca. 1/8
W. E.
TUB. FAC.

FIG. 1
CERV. XII
CAPIT.
M. SP.
FIG. 2
CERV. XIII
M. E.
FIG. 3
CERV. XV
FIG. 4
CAPIT.
TUB. FAC.

PLATE III. Dorsal vertebræ of *Barosaurus*. One-eighth natural size.

Figure 1. Dorsal I (Vertebra P), anterior aspect.

Figure 2. Dorsal I (Vertebra P), posterior aspect.

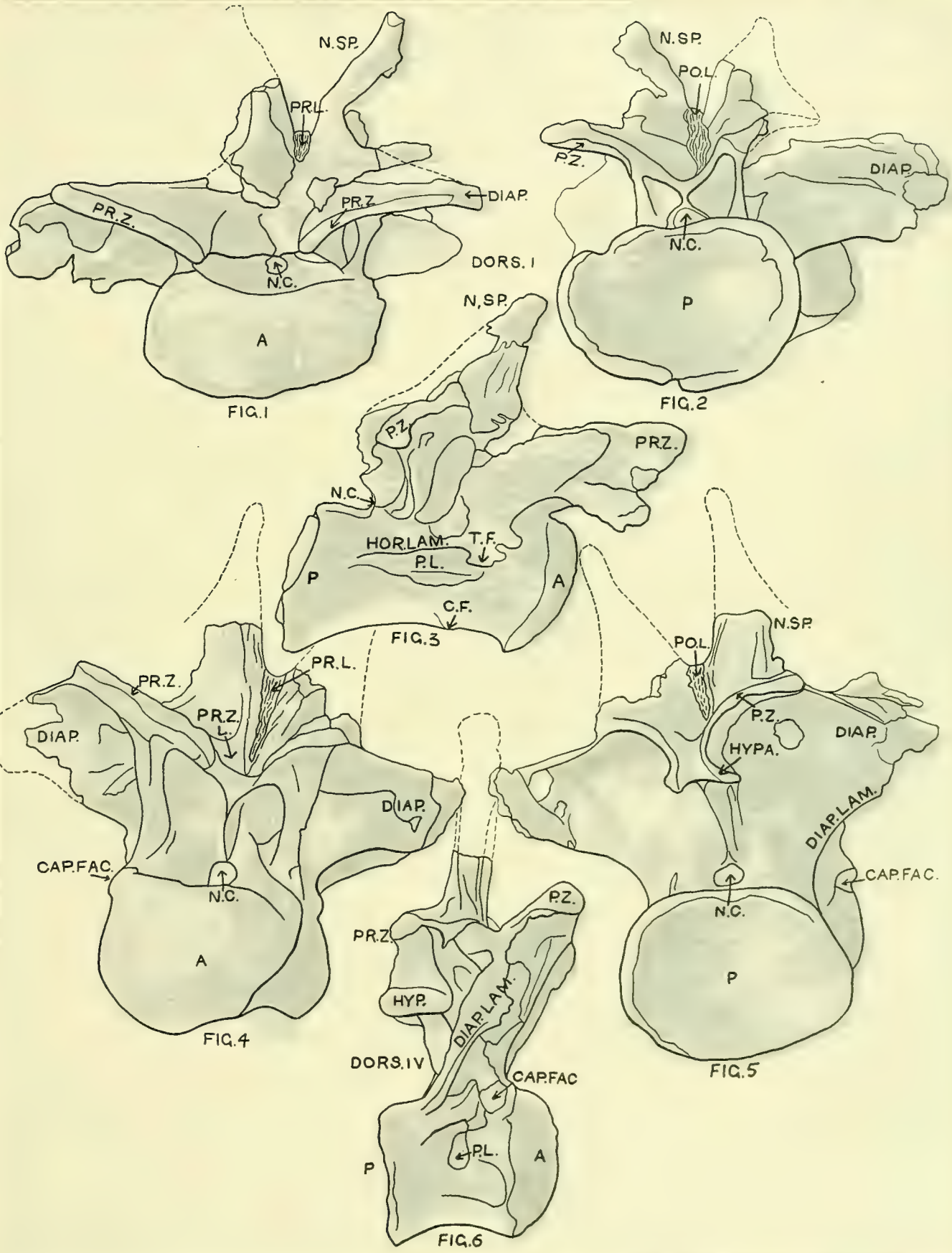
Figure 3. Dorsal I (Vertebra P), right lateral aspect.

Figure 4. Dorsal IV (Vertebra H), anterior aspect.

Figure 5. Dorsal IV (Vertebra H), posterior aspect.

Figure 6. Dorsal IV (Vertebra H), right lateral aspect.

Key drawing: A, anterior, P, posterior face of centrum. C.F. or CAP.FAC., capitular rib facet; DIAP., diapophysis; DIAP.LAM., diapophysial lamina; HOR.LAM., horizontal lamina; HYPA., hypantrum; N.C., neural canal; N.SP., neural spine; P.Z., postzygapophysis; P.L., pleurocœle; PO.L., postspinal lamina; PR.L., prespinal lamina; PR.Z., prezygapophysis; PR.Z.L., prezygapophysial lamina; T.F., tubercular rib facet.


N.SP.
PR.L.
PR.Z.
DIAP.
PR.Z.
N.C.
DORS. I
A
FIG. 1
N.SP.
PO.L.
P.Z.
DIAP.
N.C.
P
FIG. 2
N.SP.
P.Z.
PR.Z.
N.C.
HOR.LAM.
T.F.
P.L.
P
A
C.F.
FIG. 3
PR.Z.
PR.L.
PR.Z.
L.
DIAP.
DIAP.
CAP.FAC.
N.C.
A
FIG. 4
PO.L.
N.SP.
P.Z.
DIAP.
HYPA.
DIAP.LAM.
CAP.FAC.
N.C.
P
FIG. 5
P.Z.
PR.Z.
HYP.
DIAP.LAM.
DORS. IV
CAP.FAC
P.L.
P
A
FIG. 6

N.SP.
PRL.
DIAP.
PR.2.
N.C.
A
FIG.1
N.SP.
POL.
DIAP.
PR.2.
N.C.
P
FIG.2
DORS.
N.SP.
PR.2.
N.C.
HORIZAM.
T.F.
PL.
A
P
C.F.
FIG.3
N.SP.
POL.
P.2.
DIAP.
HYPA.
DIAPHRAM.
CAPFAC.
N.C.
P
FIG.5
PR.L.
PR.2.
PR.2.
DIAP.
CLIAP.
CAPFAC.
N.C.
A
FIG.4
P.2.
PR.2.
HYP.
DIAPHRAM.
DORS.IV
CAPFAC.
A
PL.
P
FIG.6

PLATE IV. Dorsal vertebræ of *Barosaurus*. About one-eighth natural size.

Figure 1. Dorsal V (Vertebra L), anterior aspect.

Figure 2. Dorsal V (Vertebra L), right lateral aspect.

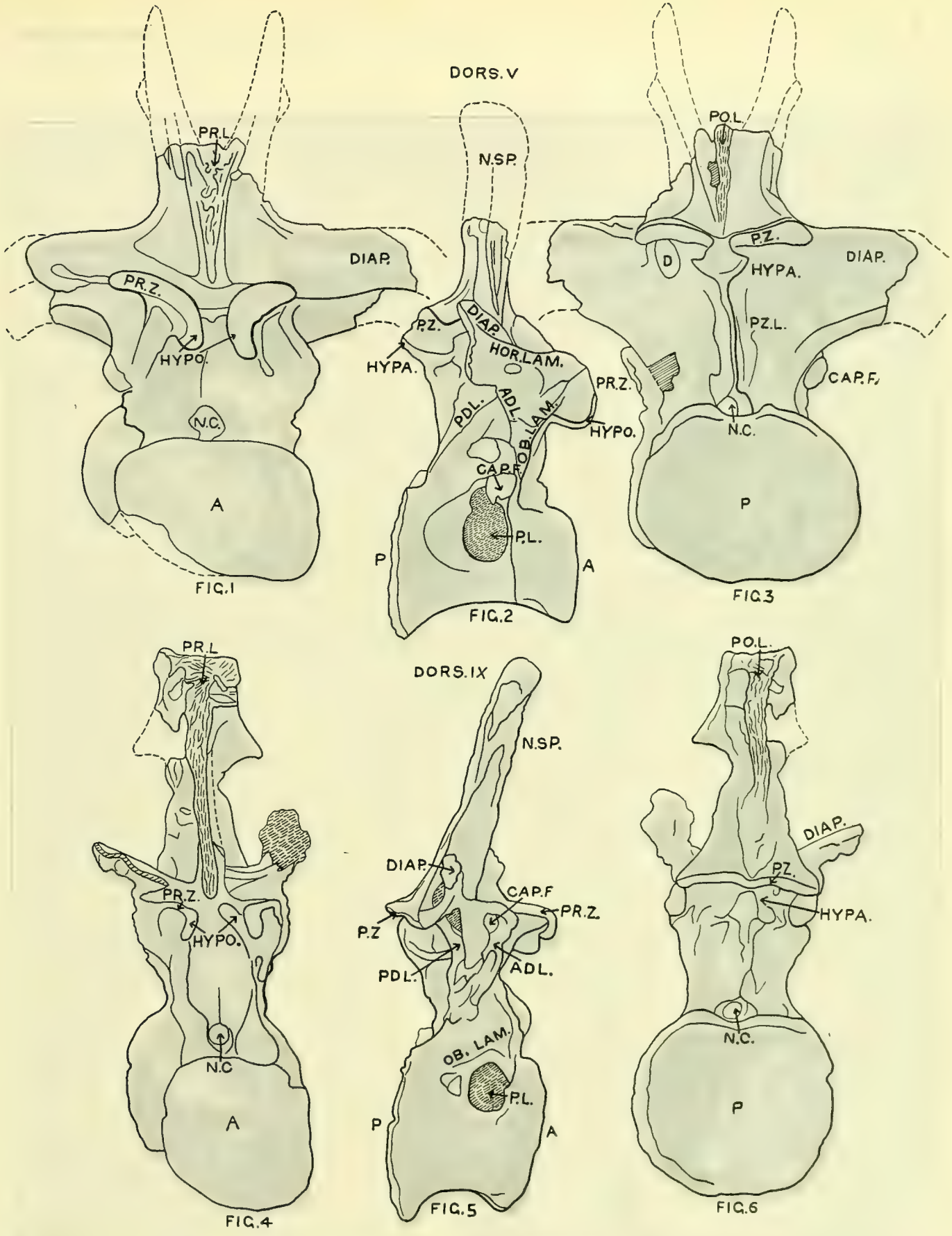
Figure 3. Dorsal V (Vertebra L), posterior aspect.

Figure 4. Dorsal IX (Vertebra N), anterior aspect.

Figure 5. Dorsal IX (Vertebra N), right lateral aspect.

Figure 6. Dorsal IX (Vertebra N), posterior aspect.

Key drawing: A, anterior, P, posterior face of centrum. ADL., anterior diapophysial lamina; D., depression; HYPO., hyposphene; OB.LAM., oblique lamina; PDL., posterior diapophysial lamina; PZ.L., postzygapophysial lamina; other lettering as in Plate III.


PR.L.
DIAP.
PR.Z.
HYPO.
N.C.
A
FIG.1
DORS.V
N.SP.
P.Z.
DIAP.
HYPA.
HOR.LAM.
PR.Z.
PDL.
ADL.
OB.LAM.
HYPO.
CAP.F.
P.L.
P
A
FIG.2
PO.L.
P.Z.
DIAP.
D
HYPA.
PZ.L.
CAP.F.
N.C.
P
FIG.3
PR.L.
PR.Z.
HYPO.
N.C
A
FIG.4
DORS.IX
N.SP.
DIAP.
CAP.F
PR.Z.
P.Z
PDL.
ADL.
OB. LAM.
P.L.
P
A
FIG.5
PO.L.
DIAP.
PZ.
HYPA.
N.C.
P
FIG.6

DORS. V
N.SP.
PRZ.
DIAP.
HYPO.
N.C.
A
FIG. 1
POL.
PZ.
DIAP.
HYPA.
PZ.L.
CAP.F.
N.C.
P
FIG. 3
DIAP.
PZ.
HOR. LAM.
HYPA.
PR.Z.
OBL.
OB. LAM.
PDL.
HYPO.
CAP.F.
PL.
A
P
FIG. 2
DORS. IX
N.SP.
DIAP.
CAP.F.
PR.Z.
PZ.
ADL.
PDL.
OB. LAM.
PL.
A
P
FIG. 5
PRZ.
PZ.
HYPO.
N.C.
A
FIG. 4
POL.
DIAP.
PZ.
HYPA.
N.C.
P
FIG. 6

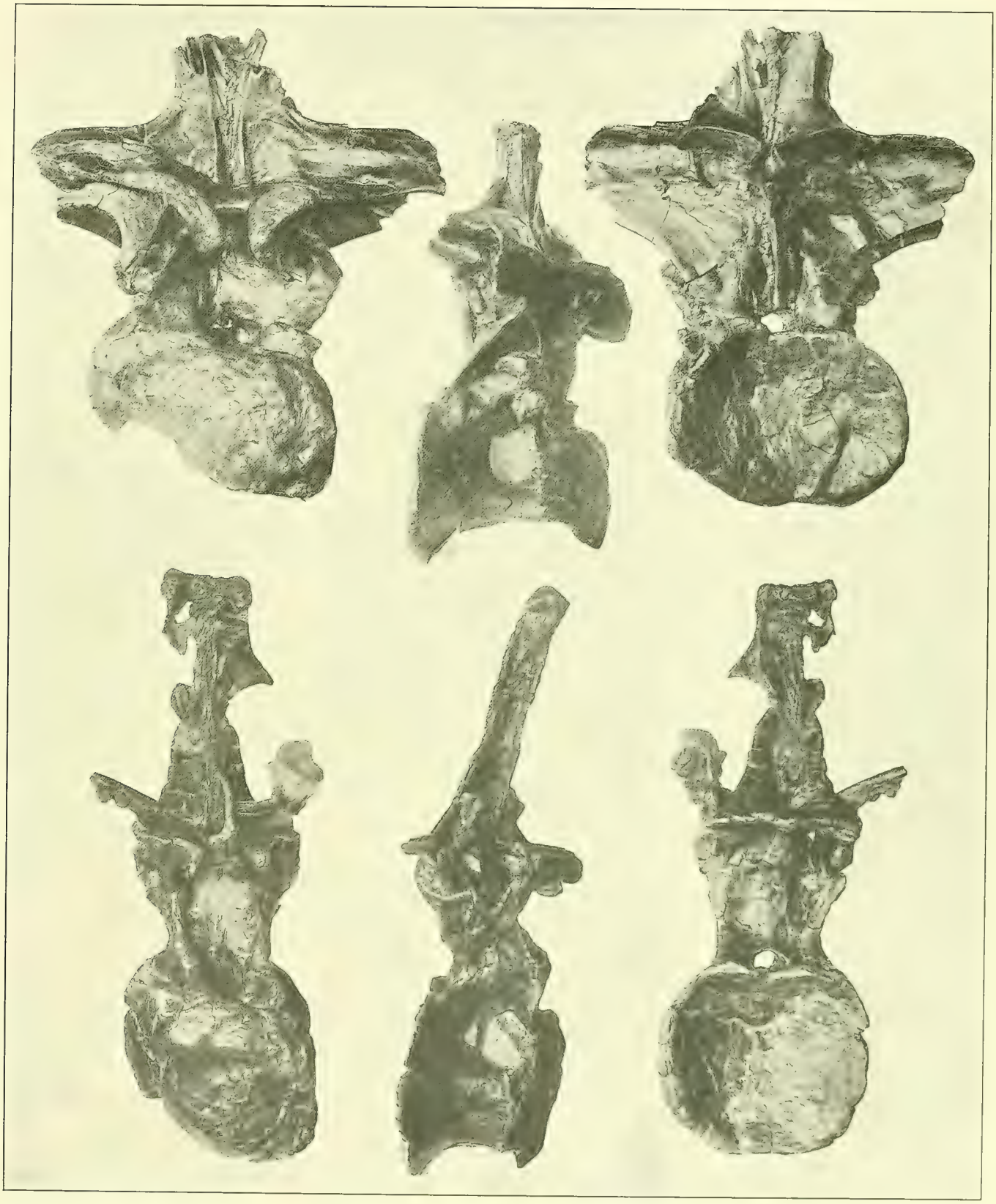


PLATE V. Caudal vertebræ of *Barosaurus*. About one-eighth natural size.

Figure 1. Caudal III (Vertebra K), anterior aspect.

Figure 2. Caudal III (Vertebra K), right lateral aspect.

Figure 3. Caudal III (Vertebra K), posterior aspect.

Figure 4. Caudal XV, left lateral aspect.

Figure 5. Caudal XV, anterior aspect.

Figure 6. Caudal XVII, left lateral aspect.

Key drawing: A, anterior, P, posterior face of centrum. DIAP., diapophysis; D.L., diapophysial lamina; N.C., neural canal; N.SP., neural spine; PO.Z., postzygapophysis; P.L., pleurocœle; PO.L., postspinal lamina; PR.L., prespinal lamina; PR.Z., prezygapophysis; PR.Z.L., prezygapophysial lamina.

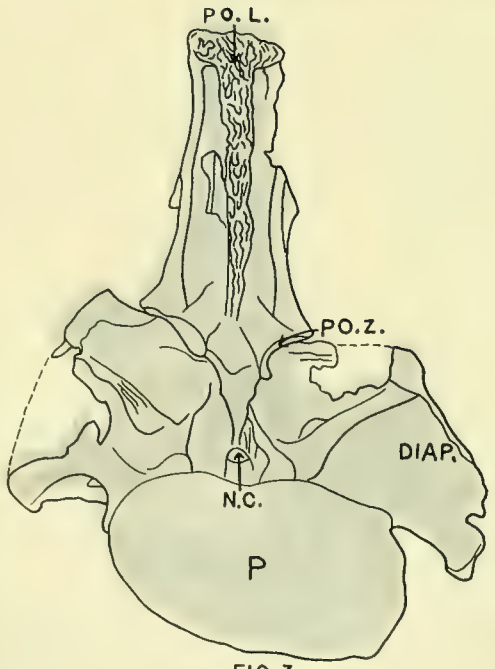


FIG. 3

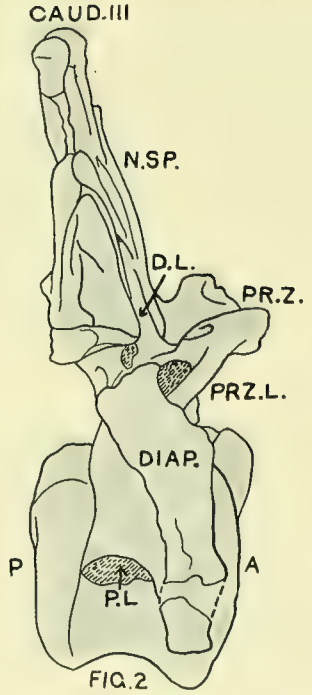


FIG. 2

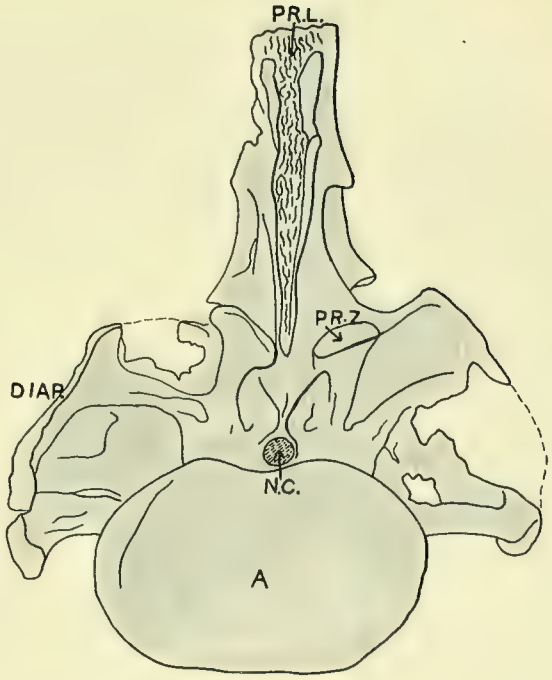


FIG. 1

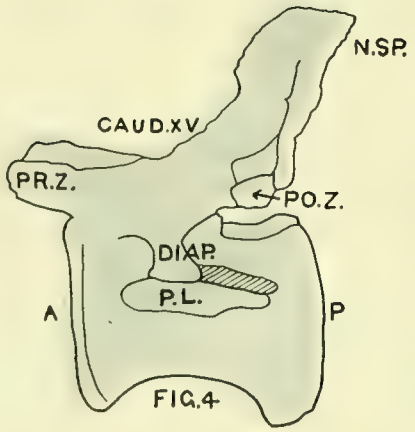


FIG. 4

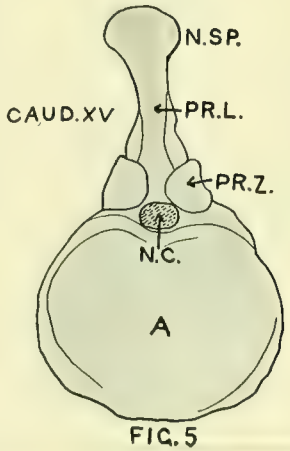


FIG. 5

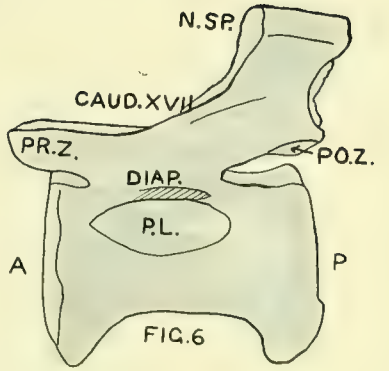


FIG. 6

FIG. 1

FIG. 2

FIG. 3

FIG. 4

FIG. 5

FIG. 6

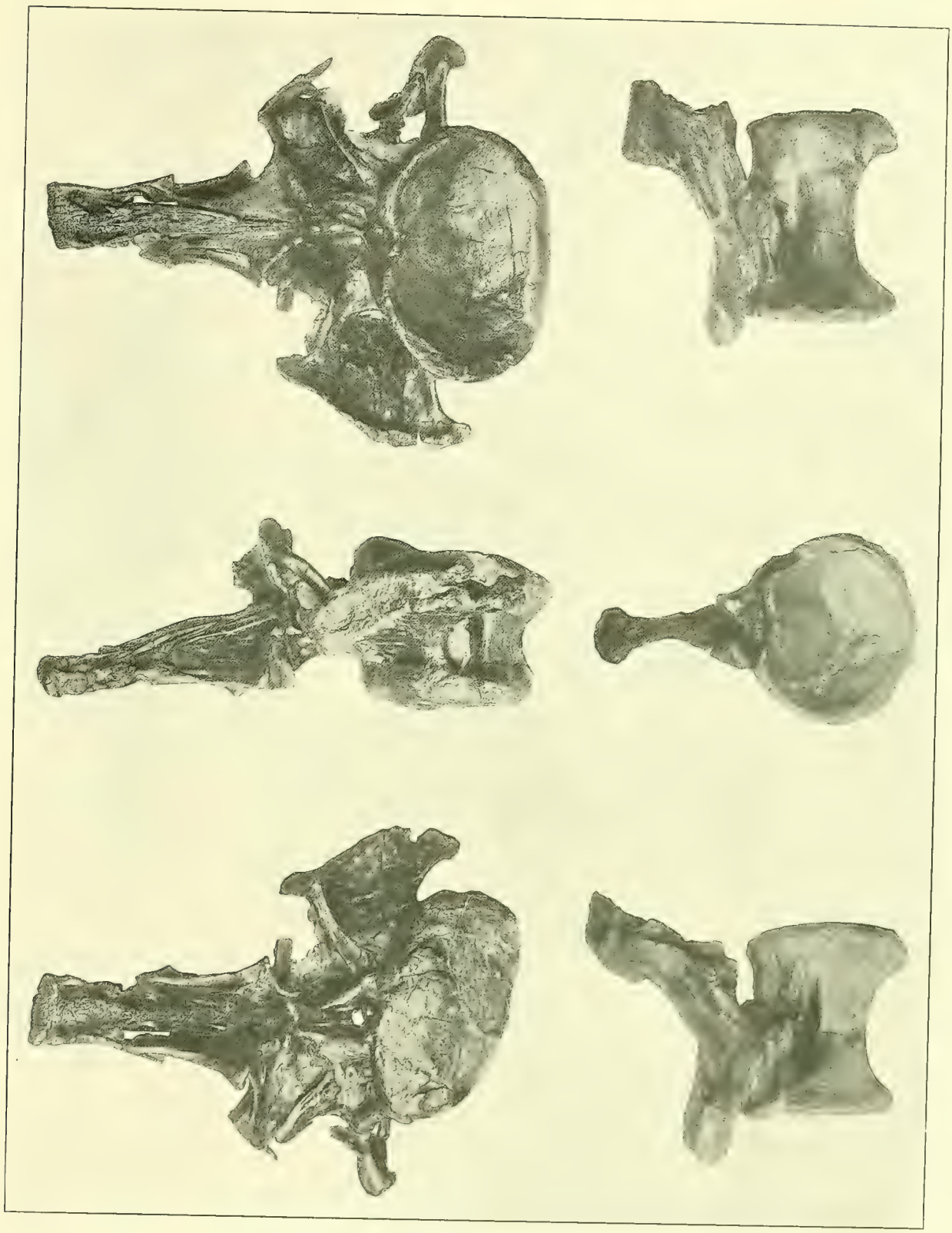


PLATE VI.

Figure 1. Sternal of *Barosaurus,* outer aspect. One-fourth natural size.

Figure 2. Pubis of *Barosaurus.* One-eighth natural size.

Figure 3. Summit of neural spine, dorsal VI, anterior aspect. About one-sixth natural size.

Figure 4. Caudal ca. XXXII. One-sixth natural size.

Figure 5. Chevron ca. V, right lateral aspect. About one-sixth natural size.

Figure 6. Chevron ca. IX, right lateral aspect. About one-sixth natural size. f, facet.

Figure 7. Chevron ca. XVI, right lateral aspect. About one-sixth natural size.

Figure 8. Chevron of *Diplodocus longus* type, right lateral aspect. About one-eighth natural size.

Figures 9-10. Metacarpals of *Barosaurus affinis* type. About one-sixth natural size.

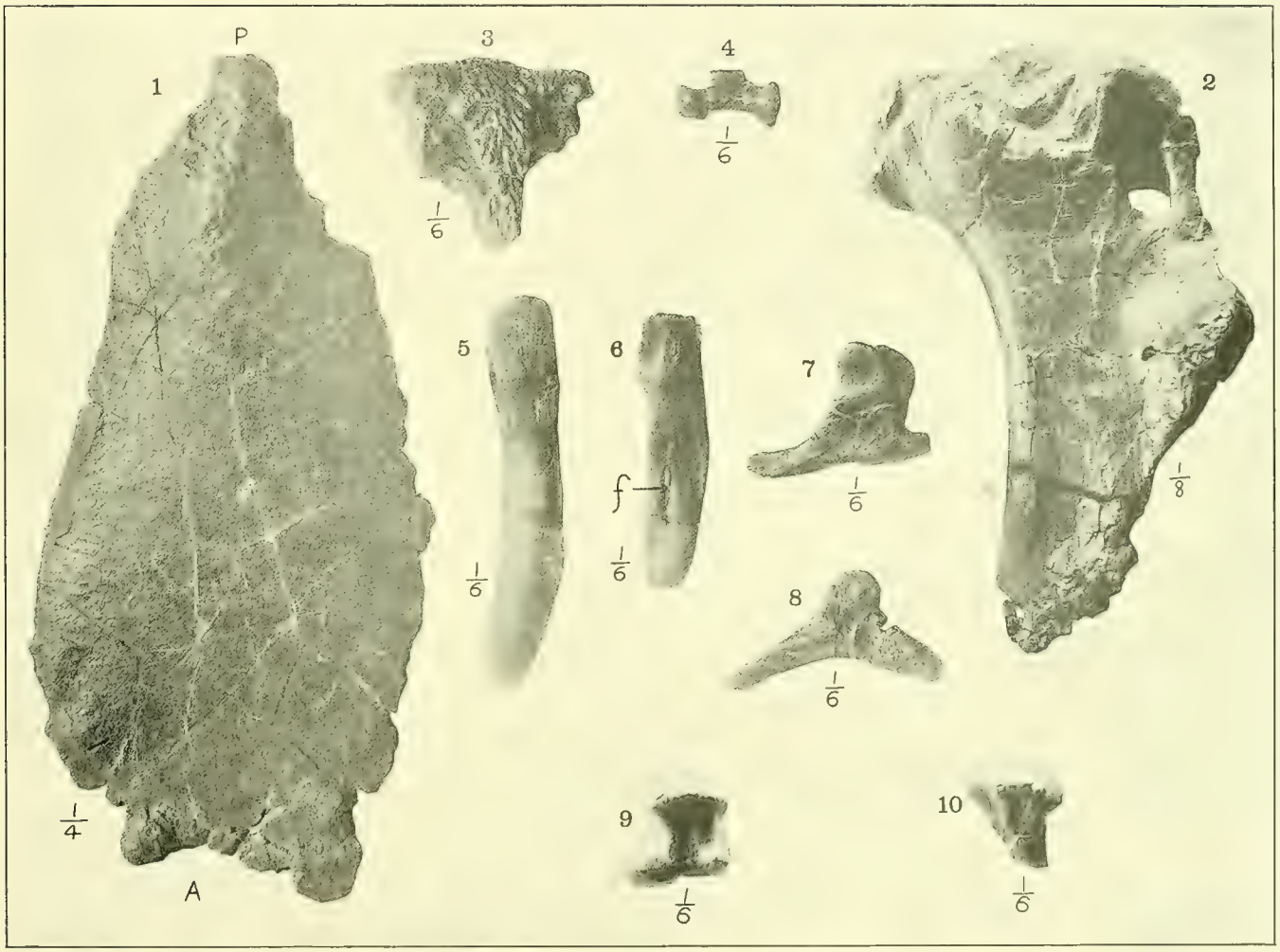
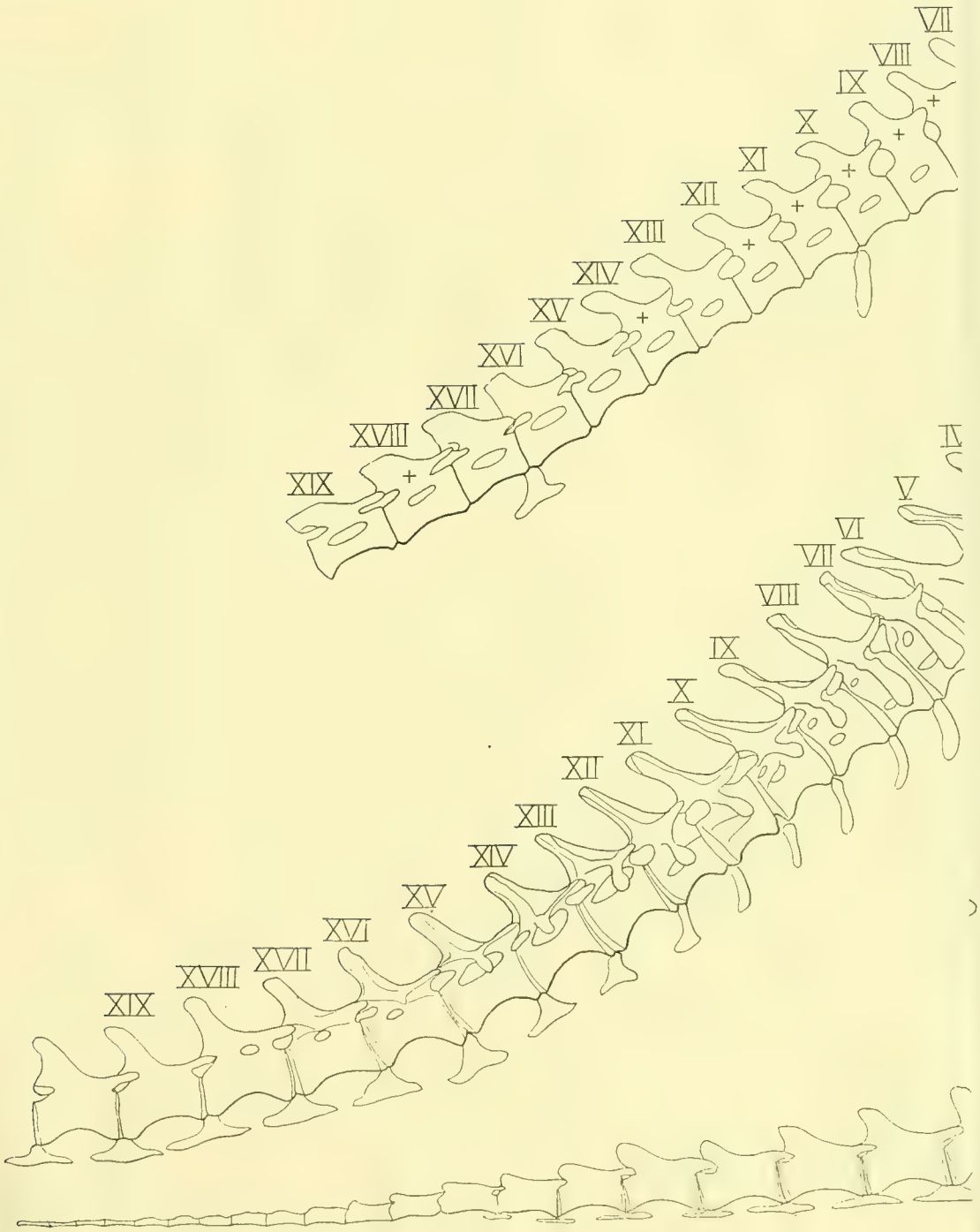
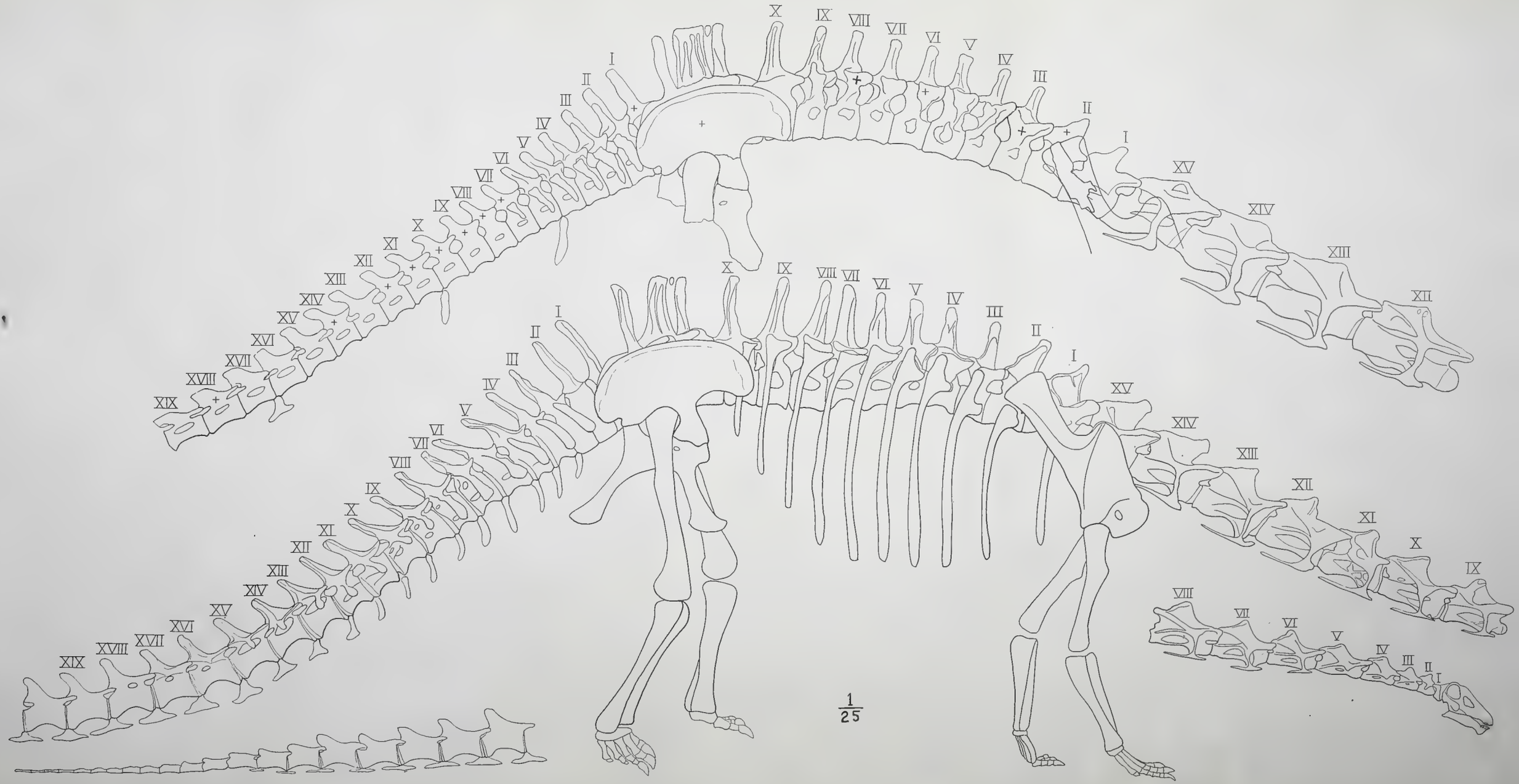

P
1
1/4
A
3
1/6
4
1/6
2
1/8
5
1/6
6
f
1/6
7
1/6
8
1/6
9
1/6
10
1/6

PLATE VII. Vertebral column of *Barosaurus lentus* compared with that of *Diplodocus carnegiei,* the latter after Hatcher 1901, Plate XIII. About one twenty-fifth natural size. The scapula of *Barosaurus* is slightly in advance of that of *Diplodocus.* The dorsal series of *Barosaurus* is slightly longer, the caudals much shorter, and with lower spines, while the four cervicals preserved are nearly equivalent in length to six of the posterior neck bones of *Diplodocus.* Of the femur, pubis, and ischium of *Barosaurus,* the portions preserved are indicated with their much greater relative bulk. Of the ilium, but the pubic peduncle and portions of the rim are recognizable; its size and shape therefore are conjectural. The preserved portion of the right scapula is indicated. No single rib is preserved in its entire length, so the volume of the torso could not be estimated. It is probable that the neck may have had an upward flexure, especially between cervical XV and the first dorsal and between the first and second dorsals, as its habitual posture. This is not, however, indicated as it would make the relative comparison with *Diplodocus* less emphatic.


VII
VIII
IX
X
XI
XII
XIII
XIV
XV
XVI
XVII
XVIII
XIX
IV
V
VI
VII
VIII
IX
X
XI
XII
XIII
XIV
XV
XVI
XVII
XVIII
XIX


1/25

MEMOIRS OF THE CONNECTICUT ACADEMY OF ARTS AND SCIENCES.

I, 1810-15, Out of print.

II, 1910, Osteology of Pteranodon, by G. F. Eaton, ... $3.50

III, 1911, Chiriquian Antiquities, by G. G. MacCurdy, ... 7.50

IV, 1915, Craniometry of the Indians of Southern New England, by M. V. Knight, 2.00

V, 1916, The Collection of Osteological Material from Machu Picchu, by G. F. Eaton, 5.00

VI, 1919, The Sauropod Dinosaur Barosaurus Marsh, by R. S. Lull, ... 2.50

MEMOIRS OF
THE CONNECTICUT ACADEMY
OF ARTS AND SCIENCES

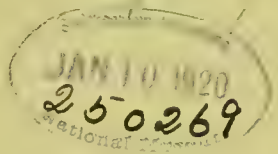
VOLUME VII · DECEMBER, 1920

The Appendages, Anatomy, and Relationships of Trilobites

BY

PERCY E. RAYMOND, Ph.D.

ASSOCIATE PROFESSOR OF PALAEONTOLOGY, AND CURATOR OF INVERTEBRATE PALAEONTOLOGY IN THE MUSEUM OF COMPARATIVE ZOOLOGY, HARVARD UNIVERSITY



NEW HAVEN, CONNECTICUT
PUBLISHED BY THE
CONNECTICUT ACADEMY OF ARTS AND SCIENCES
AND TO BE OBTAINED ALSO FROM THE
YALE UNIVERSITY PRESS

MEMOIRS OF
THE CONNECTICUT ACADEMY
OF ARTS AND SCIENCES

VOLUME VII

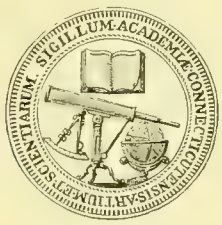
DECEMBER, 1920

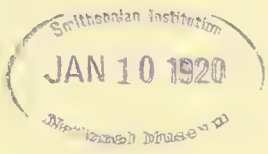
The Appendages, Anatomy, and Relationships of Trilobites

BY

PERCY E. RAYMOND, Ph.D.

ASSOCIATE PROFESSOR OF PALAEONTOLOGY, AND CURATOR OF INVERTEBRATE PALAEONTOLOGY IN THE MUSEUM OF COMPARATIVE ZOOLOGY, HARVARD UNIVERSITY





NEW HAVEN, CONNECTICUT
PUBLISHED BY THE
CONNECTICUT ACADEMY OF ARTS AND SCIENCES
AND TO BE OBTAINED ALSO FROM THE
YALE UNIVERSITY PRESS

THE TUTTLE, MOREHOUSE & TAYLOR COMPANY

TO THE MEMORY OF

CHARLES EMERSON BEECHER

SKILLFUL WITH HAND, BRAIN, AND PEN; REVEALER OF THE MYSTERIES OF TRILOBITES;

THIS MEMOIR IS DEDICATED

FOREWORD.

By Charles Schuchert.

Trilobites are among the most interesting of invertebrate fossils and have long attracted the attention of amateur collectors and men of science. These "three-lobed minerals" have been mentioned or described in books at least since 1698 and now several thousand species are known to palæontologists. To this group of students they are the most characteristic animals of the seas of Palæozoic time, and even though they are usually preserved as dismembered parts, thousands upon thousands of "whole ones" are stored in the museums of the world. By "whole ones" perfect individuals are not meant, for before they became fossils the wear and tear of their time and the process of decomposition had taken away all the softer parts and even most of the harder exterior covering. What is usually preserved and revealed to us when the trilobites weather out of the embrace of their entombing rocks is the test, the hard shell of the upper or dorsal side. From time to time fragments of the under or limb-bearing side had been discovered, first by Elkanah Billings, but before 1876 there was no known place to which one could go to dig out of the ground trilobites retaining the parts of the ventral side.

Students of trilobites have always wanted specimens to be delivered to them weathered out of the rock by nature and revealing the ventral anatomy without further work than the collecting, but the wish has never been fulfilled. In the Utica black shales, near Rome, New York, there was finally discovered in 1892 a layer less than ten millimeters thick, bearing hundreds of *Triarthrus becki* with most of the ventral anatomy intact. The collector's first inkling that such were present in the Utica formation came to him in a chance find in 1884, and for eight years he sought off and on for the stratum whence this specimen came. His long search was finally rewarded by the discovery of the bed, and lo! here were to be had, in golden color, prostrate specimens with the breathing and crawling legs and the long and beautifully curved feeling organs all replaced by iron pyrites. Fool's gold in this case helped to make a palæontologic paradise. The bed contained not only such specimens of *Triarthrus becki,* but also, though more rarely, of *Cryptolithus tessellatus* and exceptionally of *Acidaspis trentonensis.* This important discovery, which has figured so largely in unraveling the evolution of the Crustacea and even has a bearing on that of most of the Arthropoda, was made by Mr. W. S. Valiant, then curator of the Museum of Rutgers College.

There were, however, great material difficulties to overcome before the specimens revealed themselves with all of their information exposed for study. No surgeon was needed, but a worker knowing the great scientific value of what was hidden, and with endless patience and marked skill in preparation of fossils. Much could be revealed with the hammer, because specimens were fairly abundant. A chance fracture at times showed considerable portions, often both antennæ entire, and more rarely the limbs protruding beyond the test, but the entire detail of any one limb or the variation between the limbs of the head, thorax, and tail was the problem to be solved. No man ever loved a knotty problem more than Charles E. Beecher. Any new puzzle tempted him, and this one of *Triarthrus becki* interested him most of all and kept him busy for years. From the summer of 1893, when he quarried out two tons of the pay stratum at Rome, until his death in 1904, his

time was devoted in the main to its solution by preparing these trilobites and learning their anatomical significance.

The specimens of *Triarthrus becki* from Rome are pseudomorphs composed of iron pyrites, as has been said, and are buried in a gray-black carbonaceous shale. A little rubbing of the specimens soon makes of them bronze images of the former trilobite and while under preparation they are therefore easily seen. However, as the average individual is under an inch in length and as all the limbs other than the antennæ are double or biramous, one lying over the other, and the outer one fringed with a filamentous beard, the parts to be revealed by the preparator are so small and delicate that the final touch often obliterates them. These inherent difficulties in the material were finally overcome by endless trials on several thousand specimens, each one of which revealed something of the ventral anatomy. Finally some 500 specimens worthy of detailed preparation were left, and on about 50 of these Beecher's descriptions of *Triarthrus* and *Cryptolithus* were based.

The black shale in which the specimens are buried is softer than the pseudomorphous trilobites, a condition that is of the greatest value in preparation. With chisel and mallet the trilobites are sought in the slabs of shale and then with sharp chisels of the dental type they are revealed in the rough. At first Beecher sought to clean them further by chemical methods, and together with his friends, the chemist Horace L. Wells, and the petrologist Louis V. Pirsson, several solutions were tried, but in all cases the fossils were so much decomposed as to make them useless in study. Therefore Beecher had to depend wholly on abrasives applied to the specimens with pieces of rubber. Much of this delicate work was done on a dental lathe, but in the final cleaning most of it was done with patient work by hand. Rubber has the great advantage of being tough and yet much softer than either specimen or shale. As the shale is softer than the iron pyrites, the abrasives (carborundum, emery, or pumice) took away the matrix more quickly than the trilobite itself. When a part was fully developed, the rubbers were cut to smaller and smaller dimensions and the abrading reduced to minute areas. So the work went on and on, helped along from time to time by the dental chisels. Finally Beecher became so expert with these fossils that after one side was developed he would imbed the specimen in Canada balsam and fix it on a glass slide, thus enabling him to cut down from the opposite side. This was done especially with *Cryptolithus* because of the great scarcity of material preserving the limbs, and two of these revealed both sides of the individuals, though they were then hardly thicker than writing paper.

Then came illustrations, which at first were camera-lucida drawings in pencil smoothed out with pen and ink. "In some quarters," however, it has been said, "his methods unknown, their results were not accepted; they were regarded as startling, as iconoclastic, and even unreliable." He therefore decided to rework his material and to illustrate his publications with enlarged photographs. The specimens were black, there was little relief between fossil and matrix, and the ammonium chloride process of coating them white and photographing under artificial light was unsuitable. Nevertheless, after many trials, he finally succeeded in making fine enlarged photographs of the trilobites immersed in liquid Canada balsam, with a contact cover of glass through which the picture was taken, the camera standing vertically over the horizontal specimen. Beecher had completed this work in 1903 and in the winter of 1903-1904 was making the drawings, nearly all of which are here reproduced. On Sunday morning, February 14, 1904, as he was working at home on a large wash drawing of *Cryptolithus,* death came to him suddenly, leaving the trilobite problem but partially solved.

When the writer, in the autumn of 1904, succeeded Professor Beecher in the chair of Palæontology at Yale, he expected to find considerable manuscript relating to the ventral anatomy of the trilobites, but there was only one page. It was Beecher's method first to prepare and thoroughly study the material in hand, then to make the necessary illustrations, and between times to read what others had written. There was no written output until everything had been investigated and read, certain passages being marked for later reference. Then when all was assimilated, he would write the headings of topics as they came to him, later cutting them apart and arranging them in a logical sequence. When the writer visited him in his home in January 1904, he was primed for his final trilobite memoir, but the writing of it had not been begun.

The writer has never made the trilobites his special subjects for study as he has the brachiopods, and therefore felt that he should not try to bring to light merely the material things that Beecher had so well wrought out. It seemed at first an impossible task to find the specialist and friend to do Beecher justice, but as the years have passed, one of Beecher's students, always especially interested in trilobites, has grown into a full appreciation of their structures and significance, and to him has fallen the continuation of his master's work. If in the following pages he departs here and there from the accepted interpretation and the results of others, it is because his scientific training, in desiring to see with his own eyes the structures as they are, has led him to accept only those interpretations that are based on tangible evidence as he understands such. Furthermore, in seeking the relationship of the trilobites to the rest of the Arthropoda, his wide study of material and literature, checked up by the ontogeny of fossil and recent forms, has led him in places from the beaten path of supposedly ascertained phylogenies. His results, however, have been won through a detailed study of the interrelations of the Arthropoda, starting from the fact that the Trilobita are chronogenetically the oldest and most primitive. The trilobites are held by him to be the most simple, generalized, ancient Crustacea known, and the progenitors, directly and indirectly, of all Arthropoda.

It is now twenty-six years since Professor Beecher began his publications on the class Trilobita, and in commemoration of him and his work, Professor Percy E. Raymond of Harvard University presents this memoir, to bring to fruition the studies and teachings of his honored guide. It has been with Professor Raymond a labor of love, and it is for the writer of this foreword a long-desired memorial to the man to whose position in the Museum and University he had the privilege of succeeding.

Yale University, New Haven, Connecticut.

PREFACE.

The primary object of this memoir is, as has been stated by Professor Schuchert, to rescue from oblivion the results of the last few years of Professor Beecher's investigations on the ventral anatomy of trilobites. Since he left his data in the form of drawings and photographs, without even rough notes, it became necessary, in order to write a text to accompany the plates, to restudy the entire subject. Under these circumstances, it seemed best to include all that is known about the appendages of trilobites, thus bringing together a summary of present information on the subject.

The growth of the memoir to its present size has been a gradual one. As first completed in 1917, it contained an account of the appendages only. Thoughts upon the probable use of the appendages led to the discussion of possible habits, and that in turn to a consideration of all that is known or could be inferred of the structure and anatomy of the trilobite. Then followed an inquiry into the relationships to other Arthropoda, which ultimately upset firmly established preconceptions of the isolated position of the group, and led to a modification of Bernard's view of its ancestry.

During the progress of the work, I have had the opportunity of examining most of the known specimens retaining appendages. From the Marsh collection in the Yale University Museum were selected the forty-six specimens showing best the appendages of *Triarthrus, Cryptolithus,* and *Acidaspis.* Dr. Charles D. Walcott very kindly returned to the Museum of Comparative Zoology the slices of *Ceraurus, Calymene,* and *Isotelus* which were the basis of his paper of 1881, and which had been loaned him for further study. He loaned also eight of the more important specimens of *Neolenus serratus,* and two of *Triarthrus becki.* At the United States National Museum I saw the specimens of *Isotelus* described by Mickleborough and the isolated limbs of *Calymene* from near Cincinnati. The *Isotelus* at Ottawa I had already studied with some care while an officer of the Geological Survey of Canada.

This memoir consists, as shown in the table of contents, of four parts. The appendages of *Neolenus, Isotelus, Ptychoparia, Kootenia, Ceraurus, Calymene,* and *Acidaspis* are discussed, as fully as circumstances warrant, in the first part, and new restorations of the ventral surfaces of *Neolenus, Isotelus, Triarthrus, Ceraurus* and *Cryptolithus* are included. It is not supposed that these restorations will be of permanent value in all of their detail, but they are put forward as the best approximations to the real structure that the writer is able to present from the materials so far discovered. I am greatly indebted to Doctor Elvira Wood for the care and skill with which she has worked up these restorations from my rather sketchy suggestions. She has put into them not only a great amount of patient work, but also the results of considerable study of the specimens.

Part II is a discussion of the internal anatomy of the trilobite and a brief statement of some of the possible habits and methods of life of these animals. Part III, which begins with a survey of the relationships of the trilobites to other Arthropoda, is largely taken up with an attempt to demonstrate the primitive characteristics of the former, and their probable ancestral position. The form of the ancestor of the trilobite is deduced from a study of the morphology, ontogeny, and phylogeny of the group, and evidence adduced to indicate that it was a depressed, flattened, free-swimming animal of few segments.

In Part IV are included somewhat detailed descriptions of a few of the best specimens of *Triarthrus* and *Cryptolithus*. Professor Beecher, while an observer of the minutest details, believed in publishing only the broader, more general results of his investigations. This method made his papers brief, readable, and striking, but it also resulted in leaving in some minds a certain amount of doubt about the correctness of the observations. In a matter so important as this, it has seemed that palæontologists are entitled to the fullest possible knowledge of the specimens on which the conclusions are based. The last part is, therefore, a record of the data for the restorations of *Triarthrus* and *Cryptolithus*.

The illustrations in the plates were nearly all made by or under the supervision of Professor Beecher, as were also text figures 45 and 46.

In conclusion, I wish to express my thanks to Mrs. Charles E. Beecher for the use of drawings which were the personal property of Professor Beecher; to Doctor Charles D. Walcott for photographs of the limbs of *Calymene*, and for his kindness in sending me the slices of trilobites from Trenton Falls and specimens of *Neolenus* and *Triarthrus;* to Doctor R. V. Chamberlin for suggestions and criticisms in regard to the relationship of trilobites to Insecta, Arachnida, Chilopoda, and Diplopoda; to Mr. Samuel Henshaw, Director of the Museum of Comparative Zoology, for permission to use the time which has been devoted to this work; and to Miss Clara M. Le Vene, for assistance in the preparation of the manuscript. My greatest debt is to Professor Charles Schuchert, to whom the work owed its inception, who has assisted in many ways during its prosecution, and who read the manuscript, and arranged for its publication. To him I can only express my warmest thanks for the favors which I have received and for the efforts which he has put forth to make this a worthy memorial to our friend and my teacher, Professor Charles Emerson Beecher.

Harvard University, Cambridge, Mass.
November, 1919.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

Historical review 17
Part I. The appendages of trilobites 20
Terminology 20
The appendages of *Neolenus* 21
Historical 21
Neolenus serratus (Rominger) 21
Cephalon 21
Thorax 22
Pygidium 23
Epipodites and exites 23
Description of individual specimens 23
Restoration of *Neolenus* 30
Nathorstia transitans Walcott 31
The appendages of *Isotelus* 32
Historical 32
Isotelus latus Raymond 34
Isotelus maximus Locke 35
Restoration of *Isotelus* 37
Isotelus gigas Dekay 37
Isotelus arenicola Raymond 39
The appendages of *Triarthrus* (see also Part IV) 39
Triarthrus becki Green 39
Historical 40
Restoration of *Triarthrus* 42
Relation of cephalic appendagess to marking on dorsal surface of glabella 43
Anal plate 44
The appendages of *Ptychoparia* 45
Ptychoparia striata (Emmrich) 45
Ptychoparia cordillerae (Rominger) 45
Ptychoparia permulta Walcott 45
The appendages of *Kootenia* 46
Kootenia dawsoni Walcott 46
The appendages of *Calymene* and *Ceraurus* 46
Historical 46
Comparison of the appendages of *Calymene* and *Ceraurus* with those of *Triarthrus* 47
Spiral branchiæ 48
Ventral membrane 50
Appendifers 51
Calymene senaria Conrad 52
Cephalic appendages 52
Thoracic appendages 53
Pygidial appendages 54

Relation of hypostoma to cephalon in *Calymene* 55
Restoration of *Calymene* 56
Calymene sp. ind. 56
Ceraurus pleurexanthemus Green 57
Cephalic appendages 58
Thoracic appendages 59
Pygidial appendages 59
Relation of hypostoma to cephalon 59
Restoration of *Ceraurus pleurexanthemus* 60
The appendages of *Acidaspis trentonensis* Walcott 61
The appendages of *Cryptolithus* (see also Part IV) 61
Cryptolithus tessellatus Green 61
Restoration of *Cryptolithus* 62
Summary on the ventral anatomy of trilobites 64
Comparison of appendages of different genera 64
Coxopodite 64
Cephalon 64
Thorax 66
Pygidium 67
Caudal rami 68
Homology of cephalic appendages with those of other Crustacea 69
Functions of the appendages 70
Antennules 70
Exopodites 70
Endopodites 71
Use of the pygidium in swimming 72
Coxopodites 74
Position of the appendages in life 74

Part II. Structure and habits of trilobites 77
Internal organs and muscles 77
Alimentary canal 77
Ceraurus pleurexanthemus 79
Calymene senaria 80
Cryptolithus goldfussi 80
Summary 81
Gastric glands 82
Summary 84
Heart 85
Illœnus 85
Ceraurus and *Calymene* 85
The median "ocellus" or "dorsal organ" 86
Nervous system 89
Various glands 89
Dermal glands 89
Renal excretory organs 90
Reproductive organs 90

Panderian organs 90
Musculature 91
Flexor muscles 92
Extensor muscles 92
Hypostomial muscles 94
Eyes 96
Summary 97
Sex 98
Eggs 98
Methods of life (See also under "Functions of the Appendages") 98
Habits of locomotion 99
Food and feeding methods 103
Tracks and trails 104

Part III. Relationship of the trilobites to other Arthropoda 106
Crustacea 106
Branchiopoda 106
Burgessia bella Walcott 108
Waptia fieldensis Walcott 108
Yohoia tenuis Walcott 109
Opabina regalis Walcott 109
Summary 109
Copepoda 110
Archicopepoda 111
Ostracoda 112
Cirripedia 113
Malacostraca 113
Phyllocarida 113
Syncarida 114
Isopoda 114
Marrella splendens Walcott 115
Restoration of *Marrella* 116
Arachnida 117
Trilobites not Arachnida 117
Merostomata 119
Sidneyia inexpectans Walcott 119
Emeraldella brocki Walcott 119
Molaria and *Habelia* 120
Araneæ 121
Insecta 122
Chilopoda 123
Diplopoda 124
Primitive characteristics of trilobites 125
Trilobites the most primitive arthropods 125
Limbs of trilobites primitive 125
Summary 128
Number of segments in the trunk 128

Form of the simplest protaspis 132
Origin of the pygidium 134
Width of the axial lobe 137
Presence or absence of a "brim" 137
Segmentation of the glabella 137
Summary 138
The simplest trilobite 138
Naraoia compacta Walcott 139
The ancestor of the trilobites, and the descent of the Arthropoda 140
Evolution within the Crustacea 142
Summary 144
Evolution of the Merostomata 146
Evolution of the "Tracheata" 147
Summary on lines of descent 147
Final summary 151
Part IV. Description of the appendages of individual specimens 152
Triarthrus becki Green 152
Cryptolithus tessellatus Green 158
Bibliography 163

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS.

1. *Triarthrus becki* Green. Diagram of limb to show nomenclature employed ... 20
2. *Neolenus serratus* (Rominger). Two thoracic appendages 24
3. The same. An exopodite 26
4. The same. A so-called "epipodite" 26
5. The same. The so-called "exites" 29
6. The same. A cephalic limb 29
7. The same. Restoration of a transverse section 30
8. The same. Restoration of the ventral surface 31
9. *Isotelus*. Restoration of the ventral surface 38
10. *Triarthrus becki* Green. Restoration of the ventral surface 41
11. The same. Median appendage 44
12. *Ceraurus pleurexanthemus* Green. Slice showing an exopodite 49
13. *Calymene senaria* Conrad. Slice showing cephalic coxopodites 53
14. The same. Another similar slice 53
15. The same. Slice showing method of articulation of the appendages 53
16. The same. Restoration of the ventral surface 55
17. *Ceraurus pleurexanthemus* Green. Slice showing the method of articulation of the appendages 58
18. The same. Slice showing an exopodite above an endopdite 58
19. The same. Restoration of a transverse section 60
20. *Cryptolithus tessellatus* Green. Restoration of the ventral surface 63
21. *Ceraurus pleurexanthemus* Green. Slice showing the abdominal sheath 79
22. The same. Slice showing the large alimentary canal 79

23. *Calymene senaria* Green. Slice showing the large alimentary canal 79
24. *Ceraurus pleurexanthemus* Green. Restoration of a longitundinal section 81
25. *Cryptolithus tessellatus* Green. Cheek showing the genal cæca 84
26. *Illœnus.* Volborth's figure of the heart 85
27. Heart of *Apus* 85
28. *Isotelus gigas* Dekay. The Panderian organs 91
29. *Ceraurus pleurexanthemus* Green. Restoration, showing heart, alimentary canal, and extensor muscles 93
30. The same. Longitudinal section of cephalon 95
31. *Nileus armadillo* Dalman. Moberg's figure of the muscle-scars 95
32. *Marrella splendens* Walcott. Restoration of the ventral surface 116
33. *Triarthrus becki* Green. Appendage of the anterior part of the thorax 126
34. *Apus.* Appendage from the anterior part of the trunk 127
35. *Weymouthia nobilis* (Ford) 138
36. *Naraoia compacta* Walcott 145
37. *Pagetia clytia* Walcott 145
38. *Asaphiscus wheeleri* Meek 145
39. *Pœdeumias robsonensis* Burling 145
40. *Robergia* sp. 145
41. Diagram showing possible lines of descent of the Arthropoda 150
42. *Triarthrus becki* Green. Thoracic appendages 155
43. The same. Pygidial appendages 157
44. The same. Pygidial appendages 158
45. *Cryptolithus tessellatus* Green. Drawing of the best single specimen 159
46. The same. Part of the thorax and pygidium, with appendages 162

Frontispiece. Charles Emerson Beecher, 1896.

Plates 1-5. Photographs of *Triarthrus becki,* made by C. E. Beecher.

Plate 6. Photographs of *Triarthrus becki* (figs. 1-3), *Acidaspis trentonensis* (fig. 6), and *Cryptolithus tessellatus* (fig. 7), made by C. E. Beecher. Photographs of the endopodites of a probable species of *Calymene* (figs. 4, 5)

Plates 7-8. Photographs of *Cryptolithus tessellatus,* made by C. E. Beecher.

Plate 9. Drawings of *Cryptolithus tessellatus,* made by C. E. Beecher or under his direction.

Plate 10. Photographs of *Isotelus latus* and *I. maximus,* made by C. E. Beecher.

Plate 11. Drawing of a restoration of *Ceraurus pleurexanthemus,* made by Elvira Wood.

HISTORICAL REVIEW.

The beginning of the search for the limbs of trilobites was coeval with the beginning of scientific study of the group, knowledge of the appendages being essential to the proper systematic allocation of the animals.

The early search was so barren of results that negative evidence came to be accepted as of positive value, and it was for many years generally believed that such organs as may have been present beneath the dorsal test were so soft as to be incapable of preservation. This view is best expressed by Burmeister (1846, p. 43):

> There is good proof that the feet of trilobites must have been soft membranous organs, for the absence of the slightest remains of these organs in the numerous specimens observed is of itself evidence of the fact, and it can indeed scarcely be supposed that hard horny extremities should be affixed to a soft membranous abdominal surface; since they would not have possessed that firm basis, which all solid organs of locomotion require, in order that they may be properly available.

Very well reasoned, and were it not for the discovery of new material in American localities, Burmeister's views would probably never have been proved incorrect. One can not escape the suspicion that some of the accepted hypotheses of today, founded on similar "proof," may yield in time to the weight of bits of positive evidence.

The history of the study of appendages of trilobites may be divided into two periods. The first, in which there was a general belief that the appendages were soft organs, but during which numerous "finds" of limbs were reported, extended from the time of Linné to the year (1876) in which Walcott demonstrated the fact that the animals possessed jointed ambulatory and breathing organs.

The second, much more fruitful period, began with Walcott's publication of 1881, descriptive of the appendages of *Ceraurus* and *Calymene,* and for the purposes of this memoir, closes with his great contribution on the anatomy of *Neolenus* (1918). Beecher's brilliant productions came in the middle of the second period.

In the first period, there were at least two authentic discoveries of appendages, those of Eichwald (1825) and Billings (1870), but since neither of these men convinced his confrères of the value of his finds, the work of neither can be considered as having marked an especial epoch in the history.

As all the authentic finds will be treated in detail on later pages, only a brief résumé of the first period will be given here. This has already been done by Burmeister (1843, 1846) and Barrande (1852, 1872), whose works have been my primary sources of information, but I have looked up the original papers, copies of nearly all of which are to be seen in the libraries in Cambridge and Boston. Brig.-Gen. A. W. Vogdes, U. S. A. (retired), has very kindly placed at my disposal a number of references and notes.

Linné (1759) was the first to report the discovery of appendages of trilobites. Törnquist (1896) has pressed for a recognition of the contribution of the great Swedish naturalist to this problem, but Beecher (1896 B) doubted the validity of the find. Linné figured a specimen of *Parabolina spinulosa* (Wahlenberg), with what he interpreted as a pair of antennæ attached. He states (translation quoted from Törnquist): "Most remarkable in this specimen are the antennæ in the front, which I never saw in any other sample, and which clearly prove this fossil to belong to the insects." Beecher has shown as conclusively as can be shown without access to the original specimen that the supposed antennæ were really only portions of the thickened anterior border, the appearance being due to imperfect preservation. Brünnich as early as 1781 called attention to the imperfection of this speci-

men, and it is also referred to by Wahlenberg (1821, p. 39), Brongniart (1822, p. 42), Dalman (1828, p. 73), and Angelin (1854, p. 46).

Audouin (1821) seems to have been the first naturalist with sufficient knowledge of the Arthropoda to be competent to undertake the study of the trilobites. He concluded that the absence of ventral appendages was probably a necessary consequence of the skeletal conformation, and thought if any were discovered, they would prove to be of a branchial nature.

Wahlenberg (1821) in the same year expressed his belief that the trilobites were nearly allied to *Limulus* and in particular tried to show that the trilobites could have had masticatory appendages attached about the mouth as in that modern "insect" (p. 20). Wahlenberg was also the first to describe an hypostoma of a trilobite (p. 37, pl. 1, fig. 6), but did not understand the nature of his specimen, which he described as a distinct species.

Brongniart (1822, p. 40) devoted five pages of his monograph to a discussion of the affinities of trilobites, concluding that it was very probable that the animals lacked antennæ and feet, unless it might be that they had short soft feet which would allow them to creep about and fix themselves to other bodies.

Schlotheim (1823) thought that the spines on *Agnostus pisiformis* were segmented and compared them with the antennæ of *Acarus*.

Stokes (1823) was the first who, with understanding, published an illustration of the ventral side of a trilobite, having figured the hypostoma of an *Isotelus*. He was followed in the next year (1824) by Dekay, who also figured the hypostoma of an *Isotelus*, and added some observations on the structure of trilobites. The researches of Barrande, Novak, Broegger, Lindstroem, and others have dealt so fully with the hypostoma that further references to that organ need not be included here.

Dalman (1826, 1828) reviewed the opinions of his predecessors, and thought it not impossible that organs of mastication may have been present under the head shield of the trilobite as in *Limulus* (1828, p. 18). In this he of course followed Wahlenberg.

Goldfuss (1828) figured sections of *Dalmanites hausmanni, Phacops macrophthalma,* and *Calymene tristani,* which remind one of some of Doctor Walcott's translucent slices. So far as one can judge from the illustrations, it is probable that what he took for limbs were really fragments of other trilobites. Such is certainly the case in his figures 9 and 10, where a number of more or less broken thoracic segments are present. The section of *Encrinurus punctatus* shown in figure 7 may possibly exhibit the position and folds of the ventral membrane beneath the axial lobe, and also, perhaps, the appendages. His figures 4, 5 and 8 show the hypostoma in section.

Pander (1830) described the hypostoma in greater detail than had been done by previous authors, but otherwise added nothing to the subject.

Sternberg (1830) thought he had individuals showing appendages, but judging from his poor figures, he was deceived by fragmentary specimens.

Green (1839 A, B, C) described specimens of *Phacops* from Berkeley Springs, West Virginia, which had the hypostoma in position, and appear to have had a tubular opening under the axial lobe. While appendages were not actually present, these specimens suggested fairly correct ideas about the swimming and breathing organs of trilobites. They were similar to the ones which Castelnau obtained, and all were perhaps from the same locality.

It is not worth while to do more than enumerate the other authors of this period: Hisinger 1837, Emmerich 1839, Milne-Edwards 1841, for they all shared the same views, and added nothing to what was already known.

Castelnau (1843) described and figured a *Phacops* said to come from Cacapon Springs, West Virginia, which he thought possessed remains of appendages. There is nothing in the description or figures to indicate exactly what was present, but it is very unlikely that any limbs were preserved. The broad thin "appendage" figured may have been a fragment of a thoracic segment. This specimen was evidently described by Castelnau before 1843, as is inferred from a reference in the Neues Jahrbuch, 1843, p. 504, but I have not seen the earlier publication.

Burmeister (1843-1846), in his "Organization of the Trilobites," reviewed *in extenso* the history of the search for appendages, and concluded that they must have been so soft as to preclude the possibility of their being preserved as fossils. "Their very absence in fossils most distinctly proves their former real structure" (p. 10). In figures 7 and 8 on plate 6 he gave a restoration of the ventral surface of an *Asaphus,* the first restoration of the ventral anatomy to be attempted. Since he chose modern branchiopods as his model, he did not go so far wrong as he might have done. Still, there is little in the figure that would now be accepted as correct. The following quotation will serve to give the opinion of this zoologist, who from his knowledge of the Crustacea, was the most competent of the men of his time to undertake a restoration of the appendages of the trilobites:

> . . . in giving a certain form to the feet in the restored figure, I have done so rather intending to indicate what they might have resembled, than with any idea of assuming their actual form. I merely assert that these organs were soft, membranous, and fringed, adapted for locomotion in water, placed on the abdominal portion of the body, and extending sidewise beneath the lateral lobes of the rings, as shown in the ideal transverse section. These feet were also indented, and thus divided into several lobes at the open lower side, and each separate lobe was furnished at the margin with small bristles serving as fins. The last and external lobe was probably longer, smaller, and more movable, and reached to the termination of the projecting shell lobe, bearing a bladder-shaped gill on the inner side (1846, p. 45).

McCoy (1846) observed in several trilobites a pair of pores situated in the dorsal furrows near the anterior end of the glabella. He showed that the pits occupy precisely the position of the antennæ of insects and suggested that they indicated the former presence of antennæ in these trilobites (chiefly *Ampyx* and *"Trinucleus"*). The evidence from *Cryptolithus,* set forth on a later page, indicates the correctness of McCoy's view.

Richter (1848, p. 20, pl. 2, fig. 32) described and figured what he took to be a phyllopod-like appendage found in a section through a *Phacops.* Without the specimen it is impossible to say just what the structure really was. The outline figure is so obviously modeled on an appendage of *Apus* that one is inclined to think it somewhat diagrammatic. In calling attention to this neglected "find," Clarke (1888, p. 254, fig.) interprets the appendage as similar to the spiral branchiæ of *Calymene senaria,* and adds that he himself has seen evidence of spiral branchiæ in the American *Phacops rana.*

Beyrich (1846) described a cast of the intestine of *"Trinucleus,"* and Barrande (1852) further elaborated on this discovery.

Corda (1847) made a number of claims for appendages, but all were shown by Barrande (1852) to be erroneous.

Barrande (1852, 1872) gave a somewhat incomplete summary of the various attempts to describe the appendages of trilobites, concluding that none showed any evidence of other than soft appendages, until Billings' discovery of 1870.

Volborth (1863) described a long chambered tubular organ in *Illœnus* which be believed to represent a cast of the heart of a trilobite, but which has since been likened by writers to the intestinal tract in *"Trinucleus."*

PART I.

THE APPENDAGES OF TRILOBITES.

Terminology.

The terminology employed in the succeeding pages is essentially the same as that used by Beecher, with two new terms added. Beecher assigned to the various segments of the limbs the names suggested by Huxley, but sometimes used the name protopodite instead of coxopodite for the proximal one. It is obvious that he did not use protopodite in the correct sense, as indicating a segment formed by the fusion of the coxopodite and basipodite. The usage employed here is shown in figure 1.

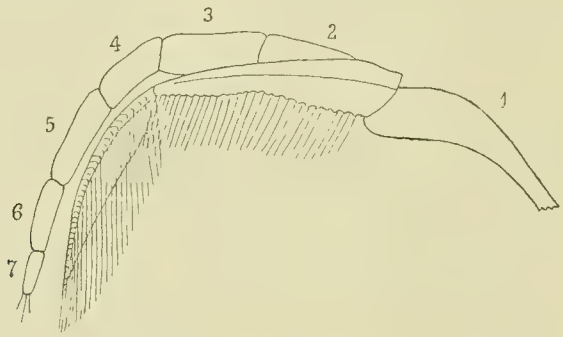


Fig. 1.—*Triarthrus becki* Green. Diagram of one of the limbs of the thorax, viewed from above, with the endopodite in advance of the exopodite. 1, coxopodite, the inner extension being the endobase (gnathobase on cephalon); 2, basipodite, springing from the coxopodite, and supporting the exopodite, which also rests upon the coxopodite; 3, ischiopodite; 4, meropodite; 5, carpopodite; 6, propodite; 7, dactylopodite, with terminal spines.

The investigation of *Ceraurus* showed that the appendages were supported by processes extending downward from the dorsal test, and on comparison with other trilobites it appeared that the same was true in *Calymene, Cryptolithus, Neolenus,* and other genera. Thin sections showed that these processes were formed by invagination of the test beneath the dorsal and glabellar furrows. While these processes are entirely homologous with the entopophyses of *Limulus,* I have chosen to apply the name *appendifer* to them in the trilobites.

The only other new term employed is the substitution of *endobase* for gnathobase in speaking of the inner prolongation of a coxopodite of the trunk region. The term gnathobase implies a function which can not in all cases be proved.

The individual portions of which the limbs are made up are called *segments,* and the articulations between them, *joints.* Such a procedure is unusual, but promotes clearness.

The Appendages of Neolenus.

HISTORICAL.

The first mention of *Neolenus* with appendages preserved was in Doctor Walcott's paper of 1911, in which two figures were given to show the form of the exopodites in comparison with the branchiæ of the eurypterid-like *Sidneyia.* In 1912, two more figures were presented, showing the antennules, exopodites, and cerci. The specimens were found in the Burgess shale (Middle Cambrian) near Field, in British Columbia. This shale is exceedingly fine-grained, and has yielded a very large fauna of beautifully preserved fossils, either unknown or extraordinarily rare elsewhere. It was stated in this paper (1912 A) that trilobites, with the exception of *Agnostus* and *Microdiscus,* were not abundant in the shale.

In discussing the origin of the tracks known as *Protichnites,* Walcott presented four figures of *Neolenus* with appendages, and described the three clawlike spines at the tip of each endopodite.

Three new figures of the appendages were also contributed to the second edition of the Eastman-Zittel "Text-book of Paleontology" (1913, p. 701). Later (1916, pl. 9) there was published a photograph of a wonderful slab, bearing on its surface numerous Middle Cambrian Crustacea. Several of the specimens of *Neolenus* showed appendages.

Finally, in 1918, appeared the "Appendages of Trilobites," in which the limbs of *Neolenus* were fully described and figured (p. 126), and a restoration presented. Organs previously unknown in trilobites, epipodites and exites, attached to the coxopodites, were found.

Neolenus serratus (Rominger).

(Text fig. 2-8.)

Illustrated: Walcott, Smithson. Misc. Coll., vol. 57, 1911, p. 20, pl. 6, figs. 1, 2 (exopodites of thorax and cephalon);—Ibid., vol. 57, 1912, p. 191, pl. 24, figs. 1, 1a (antennules, caudal rami, and endopodites of thorax);—Ibid., vol. 57, 1912, p. 277, pl. 45, figs. 1-4 (antennules, endopodites of cephalon and thorax, caudal rami);—Text-book of Paleontology, edited by C. R. Eastman, 2d ed., vol. 1, 1913, p. 701, fig. 1343 (exopodites), p. 716, fig. 1376 (abdominal appendages), fig. 1377 (appendages of thorax and pygidium);—Ann. Rept. Smithson. Inst. for 1915, 1916, pl. 9;—Smithson. Misc. Coll., vol. 67, 1918, pp. 126-131 et al., pl. 14, fig. 1; pls. 15-20; pl. 21, fig. 6; pls. 22, 23; pl. 31 (restoration); pl. 34, fig. 3 (restored section); pl. 35, fig. 4; pl. 36, fig. 3 (hypostoma).

The following description of the appendages of *Neolenus* is summarized from Walcott's paper of 1918, and from a study of the eight specimens mentioned below.

Cephalon.

The antennules are long, slender, and flexible, and lack the formal double curvature so characteristic of those of *Triarthrus.* There are short fine spines on the distal rims of the segments of the proximal half of each, thus giving great sensitiveness to these organs. In the proximal portion of each, the individual segments are short and wider than long, and in the distal region they are narrow and longer than wide.

There are four pairs of biramous cephalic appendages, which differ only very slightly from the appendages of the thorax. All are of course excessively flattened, and they are here described as they appear.

The coxopodites, shown for the first time in Walcott's paper of 1918, are broad, longer than wide, and truncated on the inner ends, where they bear short, stout, unequal spines

similar to those along the anterior margin. The gnathobases are but slightly modified to serve as mouth parts, much less so than in *Triarthrus,* but the coxopodites of the cephalon are shorter and wider than those of the thorax.

At the distal end of the coxopodite arise the endopodite and exopodite. The endopodite consists of six segments, the distal ones, propodite and dactylopodite, more slender than the others, the last bearing three terminal spines. The first endopodite is shorter than the others and slightly more slender (pl. 16, fig. 1)[1] and the anterior appendages turn forward more or less parallel to the sides of the hypostoma (pl. 22). The basipodite, ischiopodite, meropodite, and carpopodite are, in their flattened condition, roughly rectangular, only a little longer than wide, taper gradually distally, each bears small spines on the outer rim, and some of the proximal ones usually have a row along the margin.

The exopodites of the cephalon, as of the body of *Neolenus,* are very different from those of any other trilobite whose appendages were previously known. As shown in the photographs (pl. 20, fig. 2; pl. 22), each exopodite consists of a single long, broad, leaf-like blade, not with many segments as in *Triarthrus,* but consisting of a large basal and small terminal lobe. It bears on its outer margin numerous relatively short, slender, flat setæ. The long axes of the exopodites point forward, and the setæ are directed forward and outward. They stand more nearly at right angles to the shaft on the cephalic exopodites than on those of the thorax. This same type of broad-bladed exopodite is also found on the thorax and pygidium.

The number of functional gnathobases on the cephalon is unknown. That four endopodites were present on one side is shown pretty clearly by specimen 58591 (pl. 16, fig. 3) and while no more than two well preserved exopodites have been seen on a side, there probably were four. Specimen 65513 (pl. 16, fig. 1) shows gnathobases on the second and third appendages of that individual as preserved, but there is no positive evidence that these are really the second and third appendages, for they are obviously displaced. The hypostoma of *Neolenus* is narrow but long, several specimens showing that it extended back to the horizon of the outer ends of the last pair of glabellar furrows. It is not as wide as the axial lobe, so that, while gnathobases attached beneath the first pair of furrows would probably not reach back to the posterior end of the hypostoma, they might lie parallel to it and not extend beneath. It seems possible, then, that there were four pairs of endobases but that the second rather than the first pair served as mandibles, as seems to be the case in *Ceraurus.*

Thorax.

The thorax of *Neolenus* consists of seven segments, and the appendages are well shown (pl. 17, fig. 1; pl. 18, figs. 1, 2; pl. 20, fig. 1.), The endopodites of successive segments vary but little, all are slender but compact, and consist of a long coxopodite with six short, rather broad segments beyond it. In the figures, the endopodites extend some distance in a horizontal direction beyond the edges of the dorsal test, as many as four segments being in some cases visible, but measurements show that the appendages tended to fall outward on decay of the animal. The dactylopodites are provided with terminal spines as in *Triarthrus.* The coxopodites are long, straight, and slender. They are well shown on only one specimen (pl. 18), where they are seen to be as wide as the basipodite, and the endobases are set with spines on the posterior and inner margins. They are so long that those on opposite

[1] *Nota bene!* All references in this section are to the plates of Doctor Walcott's paper in 1918.

sides must have almost met on the median line. The segments of the endopodites are mostly but little, if any, longer than broad, and at the distal end each shows two or more spines. The propodite and dactylopodite are notably more slender than the others. The exopodites of the thorax are broad and flat, and each shaft has two distinct parts with different kinds of setæ. The posterior edge of the proximal lobe is fringed with a slender, flat, overlapping hairs which are a little longer than the width of the lobe, and stand at an angle of about 60 degrees with the direction of the axis of the appendage. The outer lobe is at an angle with the main one, and has short, very fine setæ on the margin. One or two specimens show some evidence of a joint between the inner and outer lobes, but in the great majority of cases they seem to be continuous; if originally in two segments, they have become firmly united. The exopodites of the thorax, like those of the cephalon, are directed diagonally forward and outward. (Pl. 21, fig. 6; pl. 22.)

Pygidium.

The pygidium of *Neolenus serratus* is large, and usually shows five rings on the axial lobe and four pairs of ribs on the sides. There are five pairs of biramous appendages belonging to this shield, and behind these a pair of jointed cerci. That the number of abdominal appendages should correspond to the number of divisions of the axial lobe rather than to the number of ribs on the pleural lobes is of interest, and in accord with other trilobites, as first shown by Beecher.

The endopodites of the pygidium have the same form as those of the thorax, are long, and very much less modified than those of any other trilobite whose appendages are known. On some specimens, they extend out far beyond the dorsal test, so that nearly all the segments are visible (pl. 17, fig. 3; pl. 18; pl. 19; pl. 20, fig. 1), but in these cases are probably displaced. The segments are short and wide, the whole endopodite tapering gradually outward. The dactylopodite bears terminal spines, and the individual segments also have outward-directed spines.

The cerci appear to have been long, slender, very spinose organs much like the antennules, but stiff rather than flexible. They are a little longer than the pygidium (pl. 17, figs. 1, 2), and seem to be attached to a plate on the under surface of the posterior end and in front of the very narrow doublure. The precise form of this attachment can not be determined from the published figures. They bear numerous fine spines (pl. 17, fig. 3).

Epipodites and Exites.

Doctor Walcott has found on several specimens of *Neolenus* remains of organs which he interprets as epipodites and exites attached to the coxopodites. A study of the specimens has, however, convinced me that both the large and small epipodites are really exopodites, and that the exites are badly preserved and displaced coxopodites. Detailed explanation of this interpretation is given below in the description of the several specimens involved.

Description of Individual Specimens.

Doctor Walcott was kind enough to send me eight of the more important specimens of *Neolenus* figured by him, and since my interpretation of them does not agree in all respects with his, I have thought it fairer to the reader to present here rather full notes explaining the position I have taken. I understand that since I communicated my interpretation of the epipodites and exites to him, Doctor Walcott has submitted the specimens to

several palæontologists, who consider that epipodites are really present. Since I am not able to convince myself that their conclusion is based upon sound evidence, I give here my own interpretation. There is of course, no *a priori* reason why trilobites should not have had epipodites.

Specimen No. 58589.

Illustrated: Walcott, Smithson. Misc. Coll., vol. 57, 1912, pl. 45, fig. 2;—Zittel-Eastman Text-book of Paleontology, vol. 1, 1913, fig. 1377;—Smithson. Misc. Coll., vol. 67, 1918, pl. 18, fig. 1; pl. 20, fig. 1.

This is one of the most important of the specimens, as it shows the coxopodites of three thoracic limbs and the well preserved endopodites of six thoracic and five pairs of pygidial appendages.

The appendages are all shifted to the left till the articular socket of the coxopodite is about 8 mm. outside of its proper position. The endopodites extend a corresponding amount beyond the edge of the dorsal test and are there so flattened that they are revealed as a

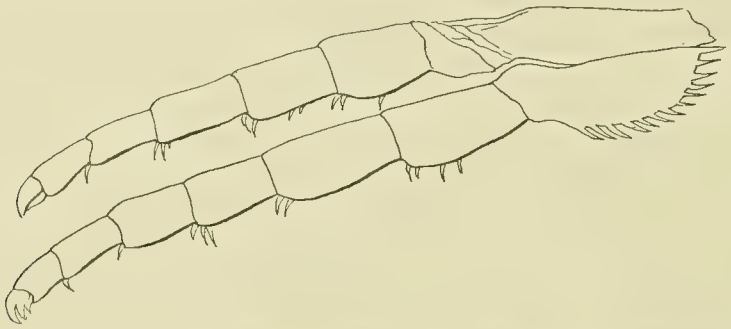


Fig. 2.—*Neolenus serratus* (Rominger). A sketch of the coxopodites and endopodites of two thoracic segments. Note notch for the reception of the lower end of the appendifer. × 3.

mere impression. The coxopodites, which are beneath the test, seem to have been somewhat protected by it, and while hopelessly crushed, are not flattened, but rather conformed to the ridges and grooves of the thorax.

The coxopodite of the appendage of the last thoracic segment is best preserved. It is rectangular, about one third as wide as long, with a slight notch in the posterior margin near the outer end. The inner end is obliquely truncated and shows about ten sharp spines which do not appear to be articulated to the segment, but rather to be direct outgrowths from it. There are similar spines along the posterior margin, but only two or three of what was probably once a continuous series are now preserved. On the opposite margin of the coxopodite from the slight depression mentioned above, there is a slight convexity in the outline, which is better shown and explained by the coxopodite just in front of this. That basal segment has the same form as the one just described, but as its posterior margin is for the greater part of its length pushed under the one behind it, the spines are not shown. On the posterior margin, two-thirds of the length from the proximal end, there is a shallow notch, and corresponding to it, a bulge on the anterior side. From analogy with *Ceraurus* and *Calymene* it becomes plain that the notch and bulge represent the position of the socket where the coxopodite articulated with the appendifer. Since these structures have not been shown in previous illustrations, a drawing giving my interpretation of them is here inserted

(fig. 2). It is evident from the position of the notch that the row of spines was on the dorsal (inner) side of the coxopodite and that the truncation was obliquely downward and outward.

The endopodite of the last thoracic appendage is well preserved and may be described as typical of such a leg in this part. The basipodite is as wide as the coxopodite, and it and the three succeeding segments, ischiopodite, meropodite, and carpopodite, are all parallel-sided, not expanded at the joints, and decrease regularly in width. The propodite and dactylopodite are also parallel-sided, but more slender than the inner segments, and on the end of the dactylopodite there are four little spines, three of them—one large and two small—articulated at the distal end, and the fourth projecting from the posterior outer angle. Each segment has one or more spines on the outer articular end, and the ischiopodite has several directed obliquely outward on the posterior margin. All of the four proximal segments show a low ridge parallel to and near the anterior margin, and several endopodites of the pygidium have a similar ridge and a row of spines along the posterior margin of some of the segments. These features indicate that the segments in question were not cylindrical in life, but compressed. From the almost universal location of the spines on the posterior side of the limbs as preserved, it seems probable that in the natural position the segments were held in a plane at a high angle with the horizontal, the ridge was dorsal and anterior and the row of spines ventral and posterior. Because the spines on the endobases are dorsal it does not follow that those on the endopodites were, for the position of the coxopodite in a crushed specimen does not indicate the position of the endopodite of even the same appendage.

The endopodites of the pygidium are similar to the one just described, except that some of them have spines on the posterior margin of the segments, and a few on the right side have extremely fine, faintly visible spines on the anterior side. The specimen shows fragments of a few exopodites, but nothing worth describing. In the middle of the right pleural lobe there is a small organ which Walcott has interpreted as a small epipodite. It is oval in form, broken at the end toward the axial lobe, and has exceedingly minute short setæ on the posterior margin. From analogy with other specimens, it appears to me to be the outer end of an exopodite.

Measurements: The entire specimen is about 64 mm. long and 52 mm. wide at the genal angles. The thorax is about 41 mm. wide (disregarding the spines) at the seventh segment, and the axial lobe about 13 mm. wide at the same horizon. The measurements of the individual segments of the seventh left thoracic limb are:

Coxopodite, 9 mm. long, 3 mm. wide, the middle of the notch 8 mm. from the inner end, measured along the bottom, and 6 mm. measured along the top.

Basipodite,	5	mm. long,	3	mm.	wide
Ischiopodite,	4	" "	3	"	"
Meropodite,	3.5	" "	2.5	"	"
Carpopodite,	3.5	" "	2	"	"
Propodite,	3	" "	1.25	"	"
Dactylopodite,	2	" "	1.25	"	"

The five distal segments of the last pygidial endopodite are together 10.5 mm. long. The whole six segments of the endopodite of the third thoracic segments are together 21 mm. long. The distance from the appendifer of the third segment to the outer end of the spine is 17 mm. From the center of the notch in the coxopodite to the outer end is 1.5 mm.,

which, added to the length of the endopodite, 21 mm., makes a distance of 22.5 mm. from the appendifer to the tip of the dactylopodite, showing that if projected straight outward, the endopodites of the thorax would project 5.5 mm. beyond the test, including spines.

The distance across the axial lobe from appendifer to appendifer on the seventh thoracic segment is 12.5 mm. Measured along the top of the coxopodite, it is 6 mm. from the middle of the notch to the inner end, and measured along the bottom it is 8 mm. From the truncated form of the ends it is evident that the coxopodites extended inward and downward from the appendifers, and with the dimensions given above, the inner toothed ends would practically meet on the median line.

Measurements on the appendages of the pygidia show that on this specimen they extend back about twice as far beyond the edge of the pygidium as they should, all being displaced.

Specimen No. 65514.

Illustrated: Walcott, Smithson. Misc. Coll., vol. 67, 1918, pl. 19, figs. 1-3.

This specimen is so twisted apart that it is not possible to determine to what segments the appendages belong, but it exhibits the best preserved exopodites I have seen. The

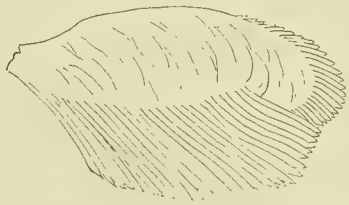


Fig. 3.—Exopodite of *Neolenus serratus* (Rominger), to show form of the lobes of the shaft, and the setæ. ×4.

Fig. 4.—*Neolenus serratus* (Rominger). One of the so-called epipodites of specimen 65515, showing that it has the same outline as an exopodite (compare figure 3) and fragments of setæ on the margin. ×3.

best one is just in front of the pygidium on the matrix, and shows a form more easily seen than described (our fig. 3). There is a broad, flat, leaf-like shaft, the anterior side of which follows a smooth curve, while in the curve on the posterior side, which is convex backward, there is a re-entrant, setting off a small outer lobe whose length is about one third the length of the whole. This lobe seems to be a continuation of the shaft, and the test of the whole is wrinkled and evidently very thin. The main and distal lobes of the shaft both bear numerous delicate setæ, but those of the outer lobe are much shorter and finer than those on the main portion. The latter are flattened and blade-like.

The anterior edge of the shaft shows a narrow stiffening ridge and the setæ are but little longer than its greatest width. The second segment of the pygidium has another exopodite like this one, but shows faintly the line between the two lobes, as though there were two segments.

This specimen also shows some very well preserved endopodites, but they differ in no way from those described from specimen No. 58589. Walcott mentions two large epipodites projecting from beneath the exopodites. I judge that he has reference to the distal lobes of the exopodites, but as these are continuous with the main shaft, there can be no other interpretation of them than that which I have given above.

Measurements: The pygidium is 19 mm. long (without the spines) and about 34 mm. wide at the front. The exopodites show faintly beneath the pygidial shield, but their proximal ends are too indistinct to allow accurate measurement. Apparently they were just about long enough to reach to the margin of the shield. The best preserved one, that of the second segment in the pygidium, is about 11 mm. long, 2.5 mm. wide at the widest; the distal lobe is 2.5 mm. long, and the longest setæ of the main lobe 3.5 mm. long. The pleural lobe of the pygidium is just 11 mm. wide at this point.

The endopodites project from 8 to 12 mm. beyond the pygidium, showing about four segments.

The thoracic exopodite described above is 11 mm. long and 2.75 mm. wide at the widest part. The distal lobe is 3.5 mm. long and 2.25 mm. wide, and the longest setæ on the main lobe 3 mm. long.

Specimen No. 65519.

Illustrated: Walcott, Zittel-Eastman Text-book of Paleontology, vol. 1, 1913, fig. 1343;—Smithson. Misc. Coll., vol. 67, 1918, pl. 21, fig. 6.

This specimen is somewhat difficult to study but is very valuable as showing the natural position of the exopodites of the anterior part of the thorax. Walcott's figures are excellent and show the broad leaf-like shafts, the distal lobes with the re-entrant angles in the posterior margin, and the long fine setæ of the main lobes. None of the distal lobes retains its setæ. All extend back to the dorsal furrows, but the proximal ends are not actually shown.

The specimen is especially important because it shows the same distal lobes as specimen No. 65514, and demonstrates that they are a part of the exopodite and not of any other structure.

Measurements: The exopodite belonging to the fourth thoracic segment is 23 mm. long and 4 mm. wide at the widest part. The longest setæ are 7 mm. in length.

Specimen No. 65520.

Illustrated: Walcott, Smithson. Misc. Coll., vol. 67, 1918, pl. 20, fig. 2; pl. 22, fig. 1.

This is a practically entire specimen, on two blocks, one showing the interior of the shell, and the other the one figured by Walcott, a cast of the interior. The first shows the low rounded appendifers at the anterior angle of each axial tergite. They are almost entirely beneath the dorsal furrows and do not project so far into the axial lobe as those of *Ceraurus* and *Calymene.* In fact, only those at the anterior end of the thorax project inward at all. As expected, there are five pairs on the pygidium. The cephalon is unfortunately so exfoliated that the appendifers there are not preserved. The doublure of the pygidium is extremely narrow.

The cast of the interior shows, rather faintly, the exopodites of the right side of the thorax and of the left side of the cephalon, and, still more faintly, the caudal rami and a few pygidial endopodites. The exopodites on the right side are in what seems to be the customary position, directed obliquely forward and outward, and the tips of their distal lobes project slightly beyond the edge of the test. These lobes were interpreted by Walcott as epipodites, but after comparing them with the terminal lobes of the exopodites of specimens No. 65519 and 65514 I think there can be no doubt that they represent the same structure. The pleura of the individual thoracic segments on this side of the specimen have an unusual appearance, for they are bluntly rounded or obtusely pointed, instead of being spinose.

The interpretation of the appendages of the cephalon is somewhat difficult. At the left of the glabella there are two large exopodites, the anterior of which lies over and partially conceals the other. These show by their position that they belong to the fourth and fifth cephalic appendages. In front of these lie two appendages which may be either endopodites or exopodites, but which I am inclined to refer to the latter. Both are narrow and shaped like endopodites, but bear on their outer edges close-set fine setæ. They also show what might be considered as faint traces of segmentation. If the first of these ran under the end of the exopodite behind it, as shown in Walcott's figure (pl. 22), then it would be necessary to interpret it as an endopodite, but it really continues down between the exopodite and the glabella, and seems to be attached opposite the middle of the eye. The specimen does not indicate clearly whether this appendage is above or below the exopodite behind it, but one's impression is that it is above, in which case it also must be an exopodite. The appendage in front, being similar, is similarly interpreted. If this be correct, then the exopodites of the second and third cephalic appendages are much shorter and narrower than those of the fourth and fifth. All of these appendages are obviously out of position, for the cheek has been pushed forward away from the thorax, though still pivoting on its inner angle at the neck-ring, till the eye has been brought up to the dorsal furrow. In this way the anterior exopodites have been thrust under the glabella and all the appendages have been moved to the right of their original position. The anterior exopodite is very poorly shown, but seems to be articulated in front of the eye. The posterior exopodites are very similar to those on the thorax. The distal lobe is shown only by the second from the last. It has the same form as the distal lobes on the thoracic exopodites, and like them has much finer setæ than the main lobe, but it does not stand at so great an angle with the axis of the main lobe, nor yet is it so straight as shown in Walcott's figure.

Measurements: The specimen is about 72 mm. long and 54 mm. wide at the genal angles. The pygidium is 22 mm. long and 37 mm. wide. The doublure is 1.5 mm. wide. The exopodite of the third thoracic segment is 19.5 mm. long. The pleural lobe at this point is 13 mm. wide without the spines and 18.5 mm. wide with them. The third exopodite of the cephalon was apparently about 15 mm. long when complete.

Specimen No. 65515.

Illustrated: Walcott, Smithson. Misc. Coll., vol. 67, 1918, pl. 20, figs. 3, 4.

This is a small piece of the axial portion of a badly crushed *Neolenus,* showing appendages on the left side as viewed from above. On the posterior half there are three large appendages which have the exact form of the exopodites of other specimens. There is a broad, oval, proximal lobe and a distal one at an angle with it. The proximal part of the shaft has fine setæ or the bases of them, and the distal lobe faint traces of much finer ones. The form, and the setæ so far as they are preserved, are exactly like those of the exopodites on the specimens previously described. (See fig. 4, page 26.) Beneath them there are slender, poorly preserved endopodites.

In front of the exopodites and endopodites lie a series of structures which Walcott has called exites, but for which I can see another explanation. Walcott has shown them as four broad rounded lobes, but his figure must be looked upon as a drawing and not as a photograph, for it has been very much retouched.

For convenience of discussion, these lobes may be called Nos. 1, 2, 3, and 4, the last being the posterior one (fig. 5). This lobe is best shown on the matrix, where the anterior end is seen to be margined by stout spines, while the posterior end lies over the endopodite and under the exopodite behind it. No. 3 is sunk below the level of the others, and only a part of it has been uncovered. Its margin bears strong spines of different sizes. Its full shape can not be made out, but it has neither the shape nor the form of spines shown in figure 3, plate 20 (1918). Lobes 2 and 1 and another lobe in front of 1 seem to form a continuous series and to be part of a single appendage. They are all in one plane, are so continuous that the joints between them can be made out with difficulty and if they do belong together, can easily be explained.

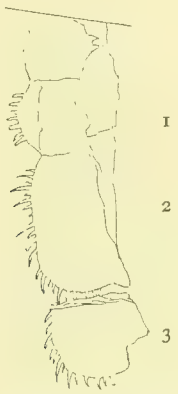


Fig. 5.—A sketch of the so-called exites of *Neolenus serratus* (Rominger), to show the form and the character of the spines. ×2.

Fig. 6.—Endopodite of a cephalic appendage of *Neolenus serratus* (Rominger), showing the very broad coxopodite. ×2.

Before calling these structures new organs not previously seen on trilobites, it is of course necessary to inquire if they can be interpreted as representing any known structures. That they can not be exopodites is obvious, since they are bordered by short stout spines instead of setæ. The same stout spines that negate the above possible explanation at once suggest that they are coxopodites (compare fig 6). At first sight, the so-called exites seem too wide and too rounded to be so interpreted, but if reference be had to the specimens rather than the figures, it will be noted that the only well preserved structure (No. 2) is longer than wide, has spines only on one side and one end, and does not differ greatly from the coxopodite of specimen No. 58589 (pl. 18, 1918). If structures 2, 1, and the segment ahead of 1 are really parts of one appendage, it can only be an endopodite, of which No. 2 is the coxopodite, No. 1 the basipodite, and the next segment the ischiopodite. If one looks carefully, there are no traces of spines on either end of No. 1, but only on the margin. The extreme width of No. 2 is against this interpretation as a coxopodite (see, however, fig. 6), but it may be rolled out very flat, as this is an unusually

crushed specimen. No. 2 is 10 mm. long and 6 mm. wide at the widest point. No. 1 is 5 mm. long and 3.5 mm. wide.

The crucial point in this determination is whether 2 and 1 are parts of the same appendage. I believe they are, but others may differ.

Specimen No. 65513.

Illustrated: Walcott, Smithson. Misc. Coll., vol. 57, 1912, pl. 45, fig. 3;—Ibid., vol. 67, 1918, pl. 16, figs. 1, 2.

This is nearly all of the right half of an entire specimen, but the only appendages of any interest are those of the cephalon. Five endopodites emerge from beneath that shield, but as all are displaced it is not possible to say how many belong to the head. When held at the proper angle to the light, the second and third from the front show faintly the partial outlines of the coxopodites. The anterior side and end of the best preserved one shows irregular stout spines of unequal sizes, and the inner end is truncated obliquely (fig. 6). These coxopodites are like those on the thorax of specimen No. 58589, but shorter and wider. This of course suggests that the "exite" No. 2 of specimen No. 65515 may be a cephalic coxopodite. The endopodite of this appendage, like the others on this cephalon, is shorter and stouter than the thoracic or pygidial endopodites of the others described.

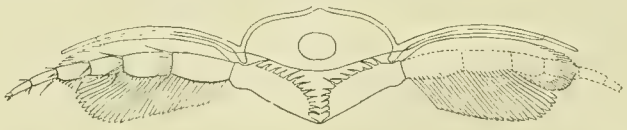


Fig. 7.—A restored section across the thorax of *Neolenus serratus*, showing the probable form of attachment of the appendages, their relation to the ventral membrane, and the jaw-like endobases of the coxopodites.

Measurements: The cephalon is 24 mm. long and about 60 mm. wide. The coxopodite of the third appendage is about 10 mm. long and 5.5 mm. wide at the widest point. The corresponding endopodite is 19 mm. long and projects 11 mm. beyond the margin, which is about 5 mm. further than it would project were the appendage restored to its proper position.

RESTORATION OF NEOLENUS.

(Text fig. 7, 8.)

This restoration is based upon the information obtained from the studies which have been detailed in the preceding pages, and differs materially from that presented by Doctor Walcott. The appendages are not shown in their natural positions, but as if flattened nearly into a horizontal plane. The metastoma is added without any evidence for its former presence.

The striking features of the appendages are the broad unsegmented exopodites which point forward all along the body, and the strong endopodites, which show practically no regional modification. Although the exopodites have a form which is especially adapted for use in swimming, their position is such as to indicate that they were not so used. The stout endopodites, on the other hand, probably performed the double function of natatory and ambulatory legs.

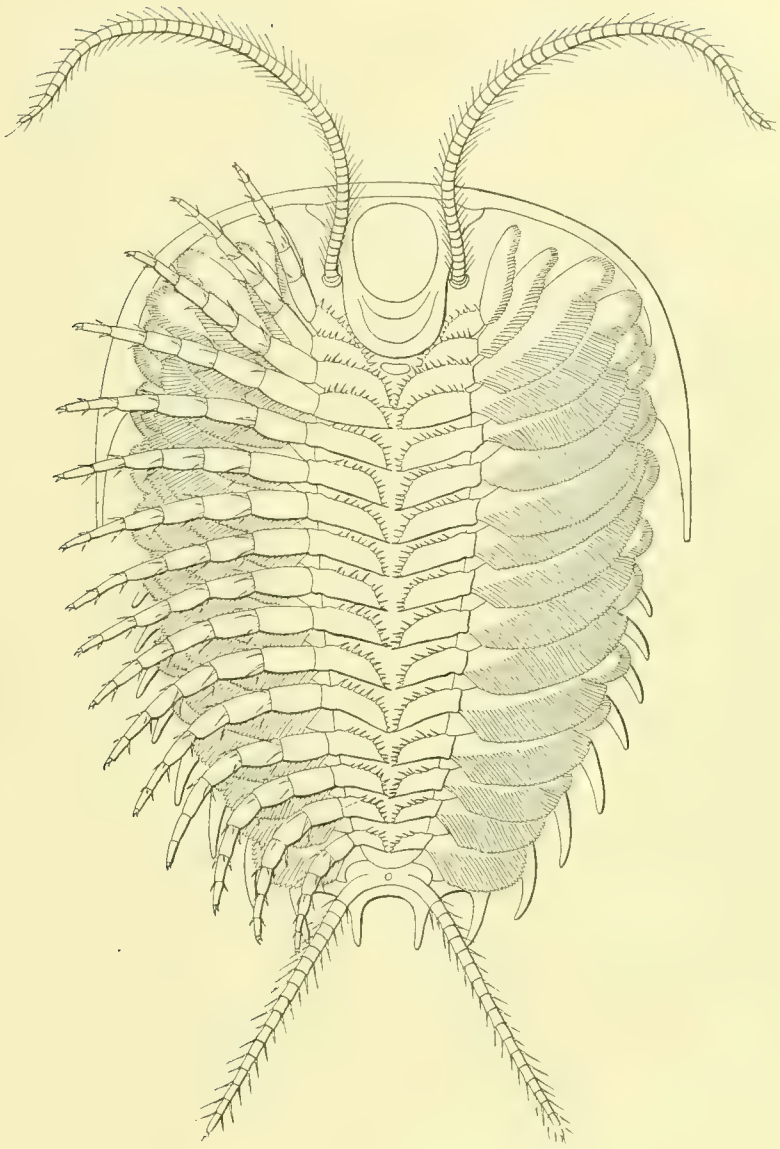


Fig. 8.—*Neolenus serratus* (Rominger). A restoration of the ventral surface, with the endopodites omitted from one side, to permit a better exposition of the exopodites. The position and number of the appendages about the mouth are in considerable doubt. Restored by Doctor Elvira Wood under the supervision of the writer. About one-half larger than the average specimen.

Nathorstia transitans Walcott.

Illustrated: Walcott, Smithson. Misc. Coll., vol. 57, 1912, pl. 28, fig. 2.

The badly preserved specimen on which this genus and species was based is undoubtedly a trilobite, but for some reason it does not find a place in Walcott's recent article on "Appendages" (1918). The preservation is different from that of the associated trilobites, being merely a shadowy impression, indicating a very soft test. The general outline

of the body, the position of the eye, and even a trace of spines about the pygidium (in the figure) are similar to those of *Neolenus,* and I would venture the suggestion that *Nathorstia transitans* is a recently moulted *Neolenus serratus,* still in the "soft-shelled" condition. Even if not a *Neolenus,* it is probable, from the state of preservation, that it is an animal which had recently cast its shell.

Walcott describes such fragments of appendages as remain, as follows:

> Head. A portion of what may be an antenna projects from beneath the right anterior margin; from near the left posterolateral angle a large four-jointed appendage extends backward. I assume that this may be the outer portion of the large posterior appendage (maxilla) of the head.
>
> Thorax. Traces of several slender-jointed thoracic legs project from beneath the anterior segments and back of these on the right side more or less of six legs have been pushed out from beneath the dorsal shield; these are composed of three or four long slender joints; fragments of the three proximal joints indicate that they are shorter and larger and that they have a fringe of fine setæ. Indications of a branchial lobe (gill) are seen in two specimens where the legs are not preserved. This is often the case both among the Merostomata (pl. 29, fig. 3, *Molaria*) and Trilobita (pl. 24, fig. 2, *Ptychoparia*).
>
> Two caudal rami project a little distance beneath the posterior margin of the dorsal shield.

This latter feature of course suggests *Neolenus.* The other appendages are too poorly preserved to allow comparison without seeing the specimen.

The specific name was given "on account of its suggesting a transition between a Merostome-like form, such as *Molaria spinifera,* and the trilobites." In what respect it is transitional does not appear.

Formation and locality: Same as that of *Neolenus serratus.* One nearly complete specimen and a few fragments were found.

The Appendages of Isotelus.

HISTORICAL.

The first specimen of *Isotelus* with appendages was described orally by Billings before the Natural History Society of Montreal in 1864, and in print six years later (1870, p. 479, pls. 31, 32). The specimen is described in detail on a later page. Billings recognized the remains of eight pairs of legs on the thorax, a pair for each segment, and he inferred from the fact that the appendages projected forward that they were ambulatory rather than natatory organs. He was unable to make out the exact number of the segments in the appendages, but thought each showed at least four or five.

Having examined the individual sent to London by Billings, Woodward (1870, p. 486, fig. 1) reviewed the collection from the American Trenton in the British Museum and found a specimen in the "Black Trenton limestone," from Ottawa, Ontario, in which, alongside the hypostoma, was a jointed appendage, which he described as the "jointed palpus of one of the maxillæ." This has always been considered an authentic "find," but I am informed by Doctor Bather that the specimen does not show any real appendage. For further discussion, see under *Isotelus gigas.*

In 1871, Billings' specimen was examined by Professors James D. Dana (1871, p. 320), A. E. Verrill, and Sydney I. Smith, who agreed that the structures identified by Billings as legs were merely semicalcified arches of the membrane of the ventral surface, which opinion seems to have been adopted by zoologists generally in spite of the fact that the most elementary consideration of the structure of the thorax of a trilobite should have shown its falsity. While the curvature of the thoracic segments was convex forward, that of the supposed ventral arches was convex backward, and the supposed arches extended

across so many segments as to have absolutely prevented any great amount of motion of the segments of the thorax on each other. Enrollment, a common occurrence in *Isotelus*, would have been absolutely impossible had any such calcified arches been present.

Walcott, in his study of trilobites in thin section (1881, pp. 192, 206, pl. 2, fig. 9), obtained eleven slices of *Isotelus gigas* which showed remains of appendages. He figured one of the sections, stating that it "shows the basal joint of a leg and another specimen not illustrated gives evidence that the legs extended out beneath the pygidium, as indicated by their basal joints."

The second important specimen of an *Isotelus* with appendages was found by Mr. James Pugh in strata of Richmond age 2 miles north of Oxford, Ohio, and is now in the U. S. National Museum. It was first described by Mickleborough (1883, p. 200, fig. 1-3). In two successive finds, a year apart, the specimen itself and its impression were recovered. Since I am redescribing the specimen in this memoir (see p. 35), it only remains to state here that Mickleborough interpreted the structures essentially correctly, though not using the same terminology as that at present adopted. His view that the anterior appendages were chelate can not, however, be supported, nor can his idea that the sole appendages of the pygidium were foliaceous branchial organs.

Walcott (1884, p. 279, fig. 1) studied the original specimens and presented a figure which is much more detailed and clear than those of Mickleborough. By further cleaning the specimen he made out altogether twenty-six pairs of appendages. He stated that one of these belonged to the cephalon, nine to the thorax,[1] and the remaining sixteen to the pygidium. He showed that the endopodites of the pygidium were of practically the same form as those on the thorax, and stated that the "leg beneath the thorax of the Ohio trilobite shows seven joints in two instances; the character of the terminal joint is unknown." His figure shows, and he mentions, markings which are interpreted as traces of the fringes of the exopodites.

In the same year Woodward (1884, p. 162, fig. 1-3) reproduced all of Mickleborough's figures, and suggested that the last seven pairs of appendages on the pygidium of *Calymene* and *Isotelus* were probably "lamelliform branchiferous appendages, as in *Limulus* and in living Isopoda."

Professor Beecher published, in 1902, an outline taken from Mickleborough's figure of this specimen, to call attention to certain discontinuous ridges along the axial cavity of the anterior part of the pygidium and posterior end of the thorax. These ridges are well shown in Mickleborough's figure, though not in that of Walcott, and their presence on the specimen was confirmed by a study by Schuchert, who contributed a diagrammatic cross-section to Beecher's paper (1902, p. 169, pl. 5, figs. 5, 6). Beecher summarized in a paragraph his interpretation of this specimen:

> The club-shaped bodies lying within the axis are the gnathobases attached at the sides of the axis; the curved members extending outward from the gnathobases are the endopodites; the longitudinal ridges in the ventral membrane between the inner ends of the gnathobases are the buttresses and apodemes of the mesosternites; the slender oblique rod-like bodies shown in the right pleural region in Walcott's figure are portions of the fringes of the exopodites.

In 1910, Mr. W. C. King of Ottawa, Ontario, found at Britannia, a few miles west of Ottawa, the impression in sandstone of the under surface of a large specimen of *Isotelus arenicola*, described on a later page (p. 39).

[1] The posterior one of these he believed to have been crowded forward from beneath the pygidium.

Finally (1918, p. 133, pl. 24, figs. 3, 3a; pl. 25), Walcott has redescribed the specimen from Ohio, presenting a new and partially restored figure. He refers also to the specimen from Ottawa under the name *Isotelus covingtonensis?* Foerste (not Ulrich). He advances the view, which I am unable to share, that the cylindrical appearance of the segments of the appendages of *Isotelus* is due to post-mortem changes.

Isotelus latus Raymond.

(Pl. 10, fig. 1.)

Illustrated: *Asaphus platycephalus* Billings, Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 26, 1870, pl. 31, figs. 1-3; pl. 32, figs. 1, 2.—Woodward, Geol. Mag., vol. 8, 1871, pl. 8, figs. 1, 1a.—Gerstäcker, in Bronn's "Klassen u. Ordnungen d. Thier-Reichs," 1879, pl. 49, fig. 1.—von Koenen, N. Jahrb. f. Min., etc., vol. 1, 1880, pl. 8, fig. 8.—Milne-Edwards, Ann. Sci. Nat., Zoologie, ser. 6, vol. 12, 1881, pl. 12, fig. 45.

Isotelus latus Raymond, Bull. Victoria Mem. Mus., Geol. Survey Canada, No. 1, 1913, p. 45 (species named).

Isotelus covingtonensis? Walcott (not Foerste), Smithson. Misc. Coll., vol. 67, 1918, p. 134.

Knowledge of the appendages of this species is derived from the specimen which Billings described in 1870. It was found in the Trenton, probably the Middle Trenton, near Ottawa, Ontario, and is preserved in the Victoria Memorial Museum at Ottawa.

Viewed from the upper surface, it shows a large part of the test, but is broken along the sides, so that parts of the free cheeks, considerable of the pleural lobes of the thorax, and one side of the pygidium are missing. Viewed from the lower surface, the appendages are practically confined to the cephalon and thorax.

A short time before his death, Professor Beecher had this specimen and succeeded in cleaning away a part of the matrix so that the appendages show somewhat more clearly than in Billings' time, but they are not so well preserved as on the Mickleborough specimen, found in Ohio somewhat later.

The hypostoma is in place and well preserved; the posterior points are but 3 mm. in advance of the posterior margin of the cephalon. Behind the hypostoma there are only two pairs of cephalic appendages, the first of which is represented by the coxopodite and a trace of the endopodite. The outer end of the coxopodite is close to the outer margin of one of the prongs of the hypostoma and about 3 mm. in front of its posterior end. The gnathobase curves backward and inward, and appears to pass under the tip of the hypostoma. There were probably two appendages in front of this, whose gnathobases projected under the hypostoma, but the specimen shows nothing of them unless it be that one small fragment about 2 mm. back of the center is really a part of a gnathobase.

The specimen retains only the coxopodite and basipodite of the posterior cephalic appendage on the left side. The coxopodite is long and apparently cylindrical, the cross-section being of uniform diameter throughout the length. The inner portion is nearly straight, while the outer part is curved gently forward.

It is possible to make out remains of eight pairs of appendages on the thorax, some of them represented by coxopodites only, but most with more or less poorly preserved endopodites as well. No exopodites are visible. The coxopodites of the thorax seem to be of the same form as the last one on the cephalon, but slightly less curved. All are long and heavy, and there seems to be no decrease in size toward the pygidium. The endopodites are very imperfectly shown. They seem to be longer than those of *Isotelus maximus,* and the segments, while of less diameter than the coxopodites, do not show so great a contrast to

them as do those of that species. The direction of the endopodites is diagonally forward, and the outer portions do not appear to be curved backward as in *Isotelus maximus*. It would appear also that the endopodites were nearly or quite long enough to reach the outer margin of the dorsal test. On no endopodite can more than three segments be definitely distinguished, but the longest ones are the most obscurely segmented.

No appendages are preserved on the pygidium, but at one side of the median groove there are two projections which may be processes to which the appendages were attached.

Measurements: Total length of specimen, 109 mm. Probable length when complete, 116 mm. Length of cephalon, 40 mm.; width at genal angles, restored, about 62 mm. (Billings' restoration). Width of doublure of front of cephalon on median line, 17 mm.; length of hypostoma, 20 mm. Length of coxopodite of last appendage on left side of cephalon, 10.5 mm.; length of basipodite of the same appendage, 5 mm. Diameter of coxopodite, 2 mm.; diameter of basipodite, 1.5 mm. Length of coxopodite on left side of the second segment of the thorax, 11 mm.; diameter, about 2.5 mm. Length of basipodite of the same, 5 mm.; diameter, about 1.5 mm. Length of ischiopodite, 3.5 mm.; diameter about 1.5 mm. Length of meropodite, 2.5 mm. (this may be less than the total length as the segment is not completely exposed.) Distance between proximal ends of gnathobases of the fifth thoracic segment, about 7 mm. Distance between outer ends of the coxopodites of the first thoracic segment (estimated from measurements on the left side), 27 mm Distance apart of the dorsal furrows at the first thoracic segment, 27 mm. Length of the longest exopodite which can be traced, about 20 mm.

Isotelus maximus Locke.

(Pl. 10, fig. 2.)

Illustrated: Mickleborough, Jour. Cincinnati Soc. Nat. Hist., vol. 6, 1883, p. 200, figs. 1-3 (endopodites and coxopodites).—Walcott, Science, vol. 3, 1884, p. 279, fig. 1 (endopodites, coxopodites, and traces of exopodites).—Woodward, Geol. Mag., dec. 3, vol. 1, 1884, p. 162, figs. 1-3 (copies of Mickleborough's figures).—Bernard, The Apodidæ, 1892, text fig. 49.—Beecher, Amer. Jour. Sci., vol. 13, 1902, p. 169, pl. 5, figs. 5, 6 (outline from one of Mickleborough's figures and an original figure).—Walcott, Smithson. Misc. Coll., vol. 67, 1918, p. 133, pl. 24, figs. 3, 3a; pl. 25, fig. 1.

This specimen, which comes from the Richmond strata 2 miles north of Oxford, Ohio, is the best preserved of the specimens of *Isotelus* with appendages which has so far been found. The individual consists of two parts, the actual specimen, and the impression of the ventral side.

To describe it I am using very skillfully made plaster reproductions of both parts, presented to the Museum of Comparative Zoology by Doctor Charles D. Walcott, and presumably made after he cleaned the specimen as described in Science (1884). I have also an enlarged photograph (pl. 10, fig. 2) which seems to have been made after some later period of cleaning, probably by Professor Beecher, and I have examined the original specimens in Washington.

Viewed from the dorsal side, it is seen that the individual is very imperfect, the greater part of the cephalon being removed by a diagonal break which cuts off the anterior third of the left eye and extends to the front of the second thoracic segment on the right side. The ends of the pleura of both sides of the thorax are broken away, as are also the greater parts of the pleural lobes and the posterior end of the pygidium. On the ventral side, merely the posterior tips of the hypostoma remain, but the distal ends of the appendages were so far within the outer margin that the appendagiferous area is quite fully retained.

The most conspicuous feature of this specimen is the presence of nine pairs of large coxopodites behind the hypostoma, and of the remains of ten pairs of endopodites, making in all ten pairs of appendages which are easily seen. The apportionment of these segments to cephalon, thorax, and pygidium is not agreed upon by the people who have examined the specimens, but if one remembers that it is the outer and not the inner end of the coxopodite which articulates with the appendifer, it at once becomes evident that the first two pairs of appendages on the specimen are the last two pairs belonging to the cephalon, and that the next eight pairs are those of the thorax.

The impressions of fourteen pairs of coxopodites are readily counted on the pygidium, and as Doctor Walcott noted sixteen pairs on the actual specimens, his number was probably correct.

Cephalon.

Projecting the line of the back of the cephalon through from the dorsal side, it is found that the posterior tips of the hypostoma are 7 mm. in front of the posterior margin of the cephalon, and that the points of attachment of the posterior pair of cephalic appendages (the second pair shown on the specimen) are just within the posterior margin. The gnathobases of this pair of appendages extend back some distance beneath the thorax, and so give the impression that they belong to that part of the body. So far as can be determined, the cephalic appendages do not differ in any way from those of the thorax. On the mould of the ventral surface, just outside of the lateral edge of the right lobe of the hypostoma, is the somewhat imperfectly shown impression of the endopodite of the third cephalic appendage. The point of junction of the endopodite and coxopodite is about 2 mm. in front of the tip of the adjacent branch of the hypostoma, and the gnathobase is curved around just behind it. This accounts for three of the pairs of cephalic appendages. The second cephalic appendages must have thrust their gnathobases under the prongs of the hypostoma, and the endopodites were probably close to its edge. No trace of this pair appears on the specimen.

Thorax.

The thoracic appendages are the best preserved of any, and show the large coxopodites and the more slender endopodites which do not extend to the outer margin of the test. The latter extend forward and outward for about one half their length, then turn backward in a graceful curve.

Walcott's figure in Science shows hair-like markings on the under side of the right half of the thorax. These were interpreted by both Walcott and Beecher as fringes of the exopodites, but since the setæ of those organs on all other trilobites are always above the endopodites, while these are represented as below them, it would seem doubtful if this interpretation can be sustained. Furthermore, I find no trace of them on either cast or mould, and the actual specimen does not now show them.

Pygidium.

The coxopodites and endopodites of the pygidium seem to be similar to those on the thorax, but both are shorter and more slender, and the former decrease in length rapidly toward the posterior end. As mentioned above, it is not perfectly plain how many appendages are present, but I have accepted Doctor Walcott's count of sixteen pairs. Of the endopodites only the barest traces are seen, and of exopodites nothing.

One point of considerable interest in this specimen is the thickness, as it probably gives some measure of the space occupied by the animal. In *Triarthrus* and other trilobites from Rome, New York, the appendages are pressed directly against the dorsal test, but in this specimen a considerable space intervenes between the plane of the appendages and the shell. Between the central furrow and the inner surface of the dorsal test at the anterior end of the thorax is a distance of 13 mm. and under the dorsal furrows the thickness is about 7 or 8 mm., no accurate measurement being possible in the present state of the specimen.

Measurements: Length of specimen on median line, 121 mm.; probable original length, about 195 mm. (Walcott's restoration). Length of thorax, 58 mm.[1] Width of axial lobe at the first thoracic segment, 45 mm.; total width as preserved, 92 mm.; width as estimated from the mould of the ventral surface, 110 mm.; Walcott's restoration, 105 mm.

Length of coxopodite of fourth left cephalic appendage, about 18 mm.; diameter, about 2.5 mm. Length of coxopodite of last left cephalic appendage, about 18.5 mm. Distance apart of inner ends of gnathobases of fourth cephalic appendages, about 4 mm. Distance apart of inner ends of endobases of first thoracic segment, about 6 mm. Distance apart of outer ends of coxopodites of first thoracic segment, about 43 mm.

Length of coxopodite of seventh left thoracic appendage 16 mm., diameter about 3.5 mm.; length of basipodite of the endopodite of the same appendage 6 mm.; diameter about 2 mm.; length of ischiopodite 5 mm.; length of meropodite 4.5 mm.; length of carpopodite 4.5 mm.; length of propodite 3 mm.; length of dactylopodite 2.75 mm.; total length of endopodite 25.75 mm.

Length of coxopodite of fourth left thoracic appendage 20 mm., diameter 4 mm.; length of five proximal joints of the endopodite 25 mm.; diameter of basipodite about 2 mm.

RESTORATION OF ISOTELUS.

(Text fig. 9.)

The exopodites have been omitted from this restoration since nothing is known of their actual form. The chief reason for the figure is to contrast the greatly developed coxopodites of the posterior part of the cephalon and thorax with those of other trilobites. The antennules and first two pairs of biramous appendages of the cephalon are more or less hypothetical, and less is known of the appendages of the pygidium than is shown here. The restoration is based somewhat upon Walcott's figure in Science. The outline is that of a specimen of *Isotelus maximus* from Toronto, Ontario.

Isotelus gigas Dekay.

Illustrated: Woodward, Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 26, 1870, text fig. 1;—Geol. Mag., dec. 3, vol. 1, 1884, p. 78, text fig.—Milne-Edwards, Ann. Sci. Nat., Zoologie, ser. 6, vol. 12, 1881, pl. 12, fig. 46.—Walcott, Bull. Mus. Comp. Zool., Harvard Coll., vol. 8, 1881, pl. 2, fig. 9;—Geol. Mag., dec. 4, vol. 1, 1894, pl. 8, fig. 9;—Proc. Biol. Soc. Washington, vol. 9, 1894, pl. 1, fig. 9.

The specimen in the British Museum which Woodward called *Asaphus platycephalus*, is, in all probability, an *Isotelus gigas*. Woodward says of it:

[1] If this specimen had the same proportions as specimens of *Isotelus maximus* from Toronto, the total length would be only 174 mm. The cephalon would be about 52 mm. long, the thorax 58 mm., and the pygidium about 64 mm. long.

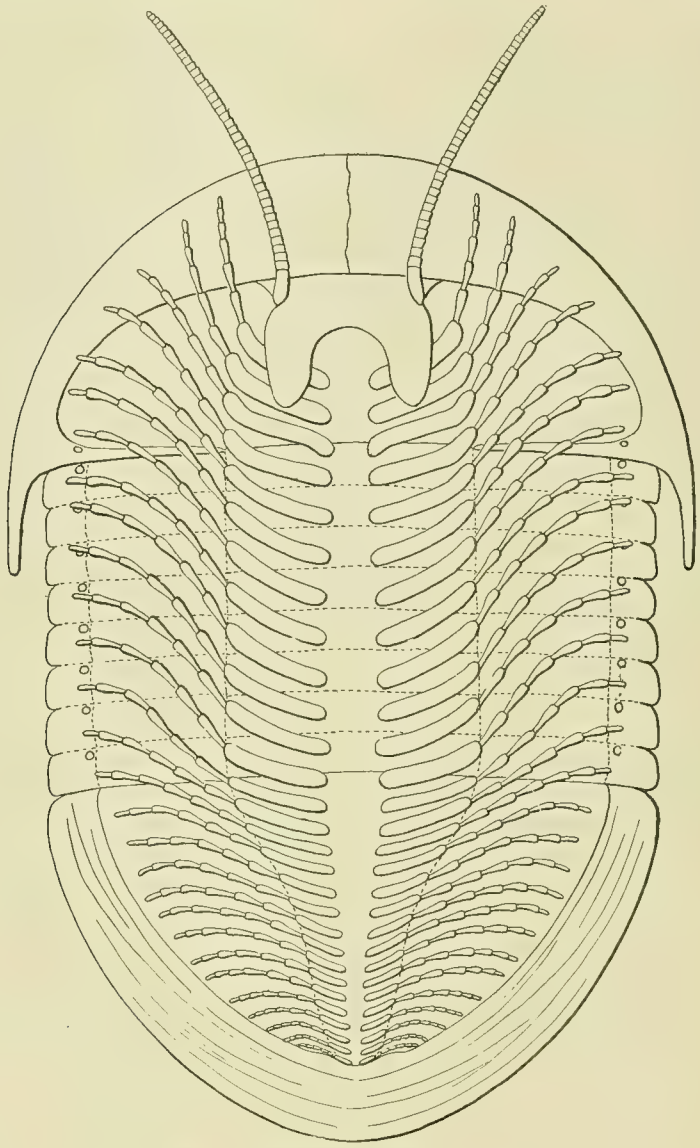


Fig. 9.—A restored composite of *Isotelus maximus* and *I. latus.* The exopodites are left out because entirely unknown. Drawn by Doctor Elvira Wood. Natural size.

I was at once attracted by a specimen of *Asaphus,* from the Black Trenton Limestone (Lower Silurian), which has been much eroded on its upper surface, leaving the hypostoma and what appear to be the appendages belonging to the first, second, and third somites, exposed to view, united along the median line by a longitudinal ridge. The pseudo-appendages, however, have no evidence of any articulations. But what appears to me to be of the highest importance, as a piece of additional information afforded by the Museum specimen, is the discovery of what I believe to be the *jointed palpus* of one of the maxillæ, which has left its impression upon the side of the hypostoma—just, in fact, in that position which it must have occupied in life, judging by other Crustaceans which are furnished with an hypostoma, as *Apus, Serolis,* etc.

The palpus is 9 lines in length, the basal joint measures 3 lines, and is 2 lines broad, and somewhat triangular in form.

There appear to be about 7 articulations in the palpus itself, above the basal joint, marked by swellings upon its tubular stem, which is 1 line in diameter.

Desiring to know more of this individual, I wrote to Doctor Bather and was surprised to learn that the specimen which was the basis of Woodward's observations is so badly preserved as to be of no real value. With his permission, I append a note made by Doctor Bather some years ago when selecting fossils to be placed on exhibition:

Asaphus gigas Dekay. Ordovician, Trenton Limestone. N. America, Canada. Descr. H. Woodward, 1870, Q. J. G. S., XXVI, pp. 486-488, text fig. 1, as *Asaphus platycephalus*. Coll. and presd. J. J. Bigsby, 1851. Regd. I 14431.

This specimen is in the Brit. Mus. Geol. Dept. I 14431. The supposed hypostome is exceedingly doubtful; it lies dorsad of the crushed glabellar skeleton. The "appendage" is merely the edge of a part in the head-shield; the maxilla is some calcite filling, between two such laminæ.

13 Sept. 1911. (Signed) F. A. Bather.

Walcott figured a slice of *Isotelus gigas* from Trenton Falls, New York, which shows a few fragments of appendages, but is of particular importance because it shows the presence of well developed appendifers beneath the axial lobe.

Isotelus arenicola Raymond.

Illustrated: Ottawa Nat., vol. 24, 1910, p. 129, pl. 2, fig. 5.

The following quotations from my paper are inserted here to complete the record of appendage-bearing specimens:

A rather remarkable specimen of this species was found by W. C. King, Esq., on the shore of Lake Deschenes at Britannia [near Ottawa, Ontario]. This specimen is an impression of the lower surface of the trilobite, and shows a longitudinal ridge corresponding to the central furrow along the axis of the ventral side of the animal, ten pairs of transverse furrows, and the impression of the hypostoma. The doublure of the pygidium has also left a wide smooth impression, but in the cephalic region the hypostoma is the only portion of which there are any traces remaining. The specimen was found on a waterworn surface of the beach, partially covered by shingle. . . .

The transverse furrows are the impressions left by the gnathobases of the basal joints of the legs. They were evidently long and very heavy, but the specimen has been so abraded that all details are obscured. The first six pairs of impressions are longer and deeper than the four behind. The first eight pairs seem to pertain to the thoracic appendages, while the last two belong to the pygidium. From the posterior tips of the hypostoma to the first gnathobases of which traces are present there is a distance of about 22 mm. without impressions. In *Isotelus gigas* the hypostoma normally extends back to the posterior margin of the cephalon, so that it seems that in this specimen the impressions of the first two pairs of gnathobases under the thorax may not have been preserved. In that case, the six pairs of strong impressions may represent the last six pairs of thoracic segments, and the pygidium might begin with the first of the fainter ones.

Horizon and locality: From the sandstone near the base of the Aylmer (Upper Chazy) formation at Britannia, west of Ottawa, Ontario. Specimen in the Victoria Memorial Museum, Geological Survey of Canada, Ottawa.

The Appendages of Triarthrus.

Triarthrus becki Green.

(Pls. 1-5; pl. 6, figs. 1-3; text figs. 1, 10, 11, 33, 42.)

(Also see Part IV.)

Illustrated: Matthew, Amer. Jour. Sci., vol. 46, 1893, pl. 1, figs. 1-7;—Trans. N. Y. Acad. Sci., vol. 12, pl. 8, figs. 1-7.—Beecher, Amer. Jour. Sci., vol. 46, 1893, text figs. 1-3;—Amer. Geol., vol. 13, 1894, pl. 3;—Amer. Jour. Sci., vol. 47, pl. 7, text fig. 1;—Amer. Geol., vol. 15, 1895, pls. 4, 5;—Ibid., vol. 16, 1895, pl. 8,

figs. 12-14; pl. 10, fig. 1;—Amer. Jour. Sci., vol. 1, 1896, pl. 8;—Geol. Mag., dec. 4, vol. 3, 1896, pl. 9;—Eastman-Zittel Text-book of Paleontology, vol. 1, 1900, text figs. 1267-1269;—2d ed., 1913, fig. 1375;—Studies in Evolution, 1901, reprint of all previous figs.;—Amer. Jour. Sci., vol. 13, 1902, pl. 2, figs. 1-5; pl. 3, fig. 1; pl. 4, fig. 1; pl. 5, figs. 2-4;—Geol. Mag., dec. 10, vol. 9, 1902, pls. 9-11, text figs. 1-3.—Walcott, Proc. Biol. Soc. Washington, vol. 9, 1894, pl. 1, figs. 1-6;—Geol. Mag., dec. 4, vol. 1, 1894, pl. 8;—Smithson. Misc. Coll., vol. 67, 1918, pl. 29, figs. 1-11; pl. 30, figs. 17-20; pl. 32; pl. 34, figs. 4-7; pl. 35, fig. 5.—Bernard, Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 50, 1894, text figs. 11, 12.—Œhlert, Bull. Soc. Géol. France, ser. 3, vol. 24, 1896, text figs. 1-17, 34.—Jaekel, Zeits. d. d. geol. Gesell., vol. 53, 1901, text fig. 24.—Moberg, Geol. Fören. Förhandl., vol. 29, pt. 5, 1907, pl. 4, fig. 2; pl. 5, fig. 1.—Handlirsch, Foss. Insekten, 1908, text fig. 6.—Tothill, Amer. Jour. Sci., vol. 42, 1916, p. 380, text fig. 5.—Crampton, Jour. N. Y. Entomol. Soc., vol. 24, 1917, pl. 2, fig. 20.

Historical.

Specimens of *Triarthrus* retaining appendages were first obtained by Mr. W. S. Valiant from the dark carbonaceous Utica shale near Rome, New York, in 1884, but no considerable amount of material was found until 1892. The first specimens were sent to Columbia University, and were described by Doctor W. D. Matthew (1893). This article was accompanied by a plate of sketches, showing for the first time the presence of antennules in trilobites and indicating something of the endopodites and exopodites of the appendages of the cephalon, thorax, and pygidium. Specimens had not yet been cleaned from the lower side, so that no great amount could then be learned of the detailed structure. Matthew concluded that "The homology with *Limulus* seems not to be as close in *Triarthrus* as in the forms studied by Mr. Walcott; but the characters seem to be of a more comprehensive type, approaching the general structure of the other Crustacea rather than any special form."

Professor Beecher's first paper, dated October 9, 1893, merely mentioned the fact that the Yale University Museum had obtained material from Valiant's locality, but was quickly followed by a paper read before the National Academy of Sciences on November 8, and published in December, 1893. This paper described particularly the thoracic appendages.

This was followed in January (1894 A) by an article in which some information about the mode of occurrence of the specimens was added, and in April (1894 B), the limbs of the pygidium were described and figured. The determination of the structure of the appendages of the head evidently presented some difficulty, for the article describing this portion of the animal did not appear until the next February (1895 A). This cleared up the ventral anatomy of *Triarthrus,* and was followed by a short article (1896 A) accompanied by a restoration of the trilobite showing all the appendages.

This ended Professor Beecher's publications on *Triarthrus* until his final paper in 1902, although he contributed some of his results and figures to his chapter on the trilobites in the Eastman-Zittel Text-book of Paleontology in 1900.

The discovery of these excellent specimens had of course excited very great interest. Doctor Walcott also studied a number of specimens from Valiant's locality, and published in 1894, with some original figures, the results of his comparison of the appendages of *Triarthrus* with those of *Calymene* and *Ceraurus.*

In his article on the "Systematic Position of the Trilobites," Bernard (1894) used the results of Professor Beecher's studies of 1893, and also quoted the papers by Matthew (1893) and Walcott (1894), though the article by the latter appeared too late to be used except for a note added while Bernard's paper was in press. A final footnote quoted from Professor Beecher's paper of April, 1894 (1894 B).

Œhlert (1896) gave an excellent summary in French of the work of Beecher and Walcott on *Triarthrus,* with reproductions of many of their figures.

Valiant (1901) in a non-technical article described his long search for trilobites with antennæ. The discovery of the wonderful pyritized trilobites at Cleveland's Glen near Rome

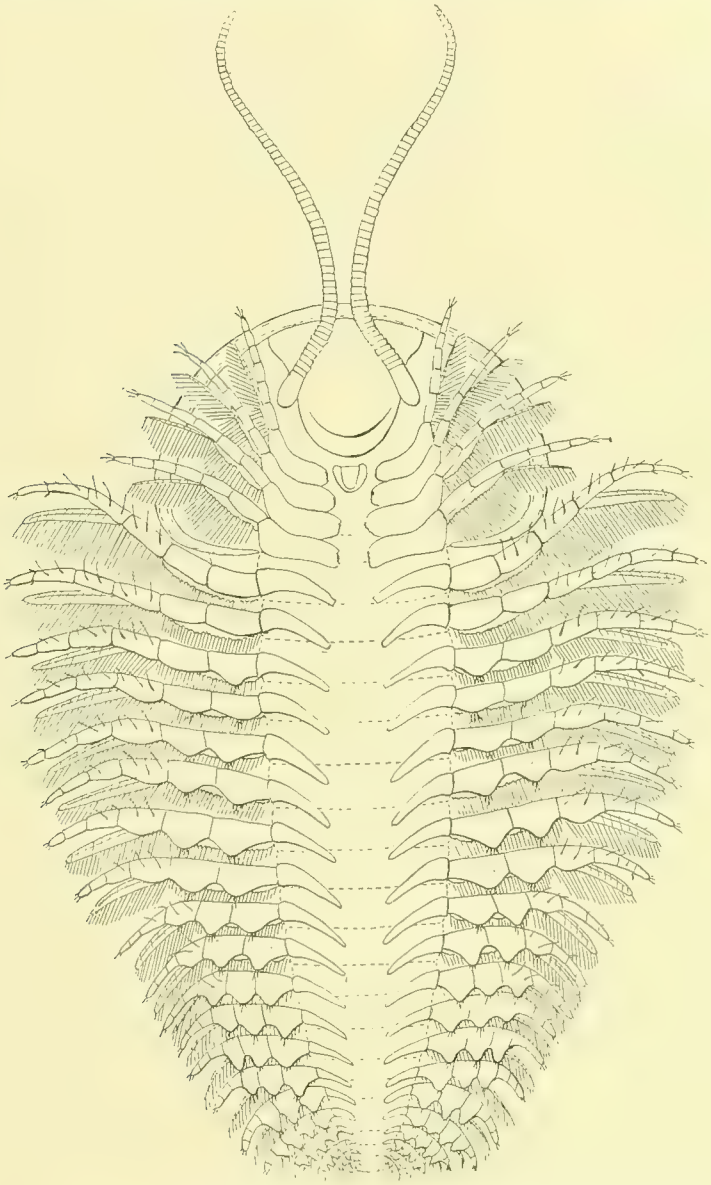


Fig. 10.—*Triarthrus becki* Green. A new restoration, modified from Professor Beecher's, to incorporate the results of his later work. The inner ends of the endobases are probably too far apart, as it was not discovered until after the drawing had been made that the appendifers projected within the dorsal furrows. Drawn by Doctor Elvira Wood. × about 3.8.

was not the result of a lucky accident, but the culmination of eight years of labor in a locality especially selected on account of the fineness of grain of the shale.

After 1896, Professor Beecher turned his attention largely to the problem of the classification of trilobites, and while he continued the arduous task of cleaning the matrix from

specimens of *Triarthrus* and *Cryptolithus* he did not again publish upon the subject of appendages until forced to do so by the doubts cast by Jaekel (1901) upon the validity of his earlier conclusions. Because of certain structures which he thought he had interpreted correctly from a poorly preserved specimen of *Ptychoparia,* Jaekel came to the conclusion that Beecher's material was not well preserved. Professor Beecher would have taken much more kindly to aspersions upon his opinions than to any slight upon his beloved trilobites, and his article on the "Ventral Integument of Trilobites" of 1902 was designed not only as an answer to Jaekel, but also to show by means of photographs the unusually perfect state of preservation of the specimens of *Triarthrus.* This article, like so many describing the appendages of trilobites, beginning with Matthew's, was published in two places (Beecher 1902).

Most of Beecher's papers, except the last one, were reprinted in the volume entitled "Studies in Evolution," published by Charles Scribner's Sons at the time of the Yale Bicentennial in 1901. The part pertaining particularly to *Triarthrus* is on pages 197 to 219.

Moberg (1907), in connection with a specimen of *Eurycare angustatum* which he thought preserved some appendages, described and illustrated some of the appendages of *Triarthrus.*

The most recent discussion of *Triarthrus,* with some new figures, is by Walcott (1918, p. 135, pls. 29, 30). He gives a summary of Beecher's work with numerous quotations. The principal original contribution is a discussion of the form and shape of the appendages before they were flattened out in the shale. He found also what he thought might possibly be the remains of epipodites on three specimens, one of which he illustrated with a photograph. I have seen nothing which could be interpreted as such an organ in the many specimens I have studied.

A point in which Walcott differs from Beecher in the interpretation of specimens is in regard to the development of the endopodites of small pygidia. Beecher (1894 B, pl. 7, fig. 3) illustrated a series of endopodites which he likened to the endites of a thoracic limb of *Apus.* Doctor Walcott finds that specimens in the United States National Museum show slender endopodites all the way to the back of the pygidium, and thinks that Beecher mistook a mass of terminal segments of exopodites for a series of endopodites. On careful examination, however, the specimen shows, as Beecher indicated, a series of endopodites in undisturbed condition (No. 222, our pl. 4, fig. 5).

Restoration of Triarthrus.

One of the more important points noted in the later studies of *Triarthrus* is that the gnathites of the cephalic appendages are much less like the endobases under the thorax than Beecher earlier thought, and showed in his restored figures and in his model. The four gnathites of each side are curved, flattened, not club-shaped, and so wide and so close together that they overlap one another. The metastoma is somewhat larger and more nearly circular than Beecher's earlier preparations led him to suppose.

The restoration here presented is modified only slightly from the one designed by Professor Beecher, and the modifications are taken principally from figures published by him. The gnathites are drawn in form more like that shown by the specimens and his figures in the American Geologist (1895 A), and the metastoma is taken from one of the specimens. On the thorax the chief modification is in the addition of a considerable number of spines to the endopodites. In spite of the trivial character of most of these changes, they empha-

size one of the important characteristics of *Triarthrus*—the regional differentiation of the appendages.

It should be pointed out that although *Triarthrus* is usually considered to be a very primitive trilobite, its appendages are more specialized than those of any of the others known. This is shown in their great length, the double curvature of the antennules, the differentiation of four pairs of endobases on the cephalon as gnathites, and the flattening of the segments of the posterior endopodites. These departures from the uniformity existing among the appendages of the other genera lead one to question whether the genus is really so primitive as has been supposed.

Relation of the Cephalic Appendages to the Markings on the Dorsal Surface of the Glabella.

Triarthrus becki is usually represented as having four pairs of glabellar furrows, but the two pairs at the front are exceedingly faint and the first of them is hardly ever visible, though that it does exist is proved by a number of authentic specimens. The neck furrow is narrow and sharply impressed, continuing across the glabella with a slightly backward curvature. In front of it are two pairs of linear, deeply impressed furrows which in their inward and backward sweep are bowed slightly forward, the ends of the corresponding furrows on opposite sides nearly meeting along the crest of the glabella. In front of these, near the median line, is a pair of slight indentations, having the appearance and position of the inner ends of a pair of furrows similar to those situated just behind them.

In front of and just outside this pair are the exceedingly faint impressions of the anterior pair of furrows, these, as said above, being but seldom seen. They are short, slightly indented linear furrows which have their axes perpendicular to the axis of the cephalon, and do not connect with each other or with the dorsal furrows. The latter are narrow, sharply impressed, and merge into a circumglabellar furrow at the front. In front of the circumglabellar furrow is a very narrow rounded ridge, but the anterior end of the glabella is very close to the margin of the cephalon.

Specimen No. 214, which was cleaned from the dorsal side, shows the posterior tip of the hypostoma, apparently in its natural position, 3.5 mm. back from the anterior margin. The entire length of the cephalon is 6 mm., so that the hypostoma reaches back slightly over one half the length (0.583). The greater part of it has been cleaned off, and one sees the proximal portions of the antennules, which are apparently attached just at the sides of the hypostoma, 2.5 mm. apart and 2.25 mm. back from the anterior edge of the cephalon. This position is distinctly within the outline of the glabella and corresponds approximately to the location of the second pair of glabellar furrows. Specimens 214, 215, 216, 217, and 219 all seem to show the same location for the bases of the antennules. Specimen 220 is the one in which the basal shafts are best preserved and the points of attachment seem to be further apart in it than in any of the others. This specimen is 38 mm. long, and the bases of the antennules are 5.5 mm. apart and 4 mm. behind the anterior margin. As the specimen is cleaned from the ventral side, the dorsal furrows do not show distinctly, but another specimen of about the same size (No. 228, 38.5 mm. long) has the dorsal furrows 8 mm. apart 4 mm. back of the anterior margin.

On the same slab with specimens 209 and 210 there is an individual which, although retaining the test, has had the proximal ends of the antennules so pressed against it that the course of the one on the left side is readily visible. It originates in a small oval mound

whose posterior margin impinges upon the third glabellar furrow near the middle of its course, and just outside the outer end of the second glabellar furrow. The cephalon of this specimen is 5 mm. long, and the point of origin of the left antennule is 2.75 mm. in front of the posterior margin and 0.75 mm. from the dorsal furrow.

It is therefore evident that the antennules in this species are not attached *beneath the dorsal furrows,* but within them and opposite the second pair of glabellar furrows.

All cephalic appendages behind the antennules are attached somewhat within the dorsal furrows, the first pair as far forward as the antennules and the last pair apparently under the anterior edge of the neck ring. They do not appear to correspond in position to the posterior glabellar furrows and neck ring, being more crowded. The last pair is attached to appendifers beneath the nuchal segment, and the first pair beneath the third glabellar furrows. There are no depressions on the dorsal surface corresponding to the points of attachment of the mandibles.

Anal Plate.

Professor Beecher, during his first studies of *Triarthrus,* found no appendages pertaining to the anal segment, but later evidently came upon a spinose anal plate which he caused

Fig. 11. — *Triarthrus becki* Green. Anal plate of specimen 65525 in the U. S. National Museum. Drawn by Doctor Wood. × 20.

to be figured. The specimen (No. 201) on which this appendage is preserved is cleaned from the dorsal side, and the anal plate is a small, bilaterally symmetrical, nearly semicircular structure margined with small spines. Specimen 202 also shows the same plate (pl. 5, fig. 6), but it is imperfectly preserved. It has a large perforation in the anterior half. Both of these specimens are in the Yale University Museum.

The anal plate is especially well shown by specimen 65525 in the United States National Museum (fig. 11). This specimen is from Rome, New York, and two photographs of it have been published by Walcott (1918, pl. 29, fig. 6; pl. 30, fig. 19). It is developed from the dorsal side, and the anal plate is displaced, so that it projects behind the end of the pygidium. It is semicircular in shape, with a hemispheric mound at the middle of the anterior half. Two furrows starting from the anterior edge on either side of the mound border its sides, and, uniting back of it, continue as an axial furrow to the posterior margin. The mound is perforated for the opening of the posterior end of the alimentary canal. The lateral borders of the plate bear five pairs of short, symmetrically placed spines. The plate is 1 mm. wide and 0.5 mm. long, and the entire trilobite is 11.5 mm. long.

The Appendages of Ptychoparia.

Ptychoparia striata (Emmrich).

Illustrated: Jaekel, Zeits. d. d. geol. Gesell., 1901, vol. 53, part 1, pls. 4, 5.

Jaekel has described a specimen of this species obtained from the Middle Cambrian near Tejrovic, Bohemia, which on development showed beneath the test of the axial lobe, certain structures which he believed represented the casts of proximal segments of appendages. On the basis of this specimen he produced a new restoration of the ventral surface of the trilobite, in which he showed three short wide segments in the place occupied by the coxopodite of an appendage of *Triarthrus*. He also made the mouth parts considerably different from those of the latter genus. Beecher (1902) showed that the structures which Jaekel took for segments of appendages were really the fillings between stiffening plates of chitin on the ventral membrane, and demonstrated the fact that similar structures existed in *Triarthrus*. It cannot be said, therefore, that any appendages are really known in *Ptychoparia striata,* but some knowledge of the internal anatomy of the species is supplied by the specimen.

Ptychoparia cordilleræ (Rominger).

Illustrated: Walcott, Smithson. Misc. Coll., vol. 57, 1912, p. 192, pl. 24, fig. 2;—Ibid., vol. 67, 1918, pl. 21, figs. 3-5 (corrected figure).

Walcott has figured a single individual of this species showing appendages, the accompanying description being as follows (1918, p. 144):

> Ventral appendages.—Only one specimen has been found showing the thoracic limbs. This indicates very clearly the general character of the exopodite and that it is situated above the endopodite, although there are only imperfect traces of the latter. . . .
>
> The exopodites are unlike those of any trilobite now known. They are long, rather broad lobes extending from the line of the union of the mesosternites and the pleurosternites. At the proximal end they appear to be as wide as the axial lobe of each segment, and to increase in width and slightly overlap each other nearly out to the distal extremity. . . . They are finely crenulated along both the anterior and dorsal margins, which indicates the presence of fine setæ.

The specimen is quite imperfectly preserved, but seems to indicate that the exopodite of *Ptychoparia* had a long, rather narrow unsegmented shaft.

Measurements (from Walcott's figure): The specimen is a small one, about 9.5 mm. long, an individual exopodite is about 2 mm. long and the shaft 0.33 mm. wide.

Horizon and locality: Middle Cambrian, Burgess shale, between Mount Field and Wapta Peak, above Field, British Columbia.

Ptychoparia permulta Walcott.

Illustrated: Walcott, Smithson. Misc. Coll., vol. 67, 1918, p. 145, pl. 21, figs. 1, 2.

Walcott figured one individual of this species showing long slender antennules projecting in front of the cephalon. It is of especial interest because one of the antennules shows almost exactly the same sigmoid curvature which is so characteristic of the related *Triarthrus*. The individual segments are not visible.

Measurements: The specimen is 23 mm. long and the direct distance from the front of the head to the anterior end of the more perfect antennule is 9.5 mm. Measured along the curvature, the same antennule is about 11 mm. long.

Horizon and locality: Same as the preceding.

The Appendages of Kootenia.

Kootenia dawsoni Walcott.

Illustrated: Walcott, Smithson. Misc. Coll., vol. 67, 1918, pl. 14, figs. 2, 3.

One specimen figured by Doctor Walcott shows the distal ends of some of the exopodites and endopodites of the right side. He compares the exopodites with those of *Neolenus,* stating that the shaft consists of two segments, the proximal section being long and flat, fringed with long setæ, while the distal segment has short fine setæ. The endopodite best shown is very slender, and the segments are of uniform width and only slightly longer than wide.

Measurements (from Walcott's figures): Length of specimen, about 41 mm. Length of five distal segments of an endopodite, 7.5 mm. Since the pleural lobe is only 7 mm. wide, the endopodites, and probably the exopodites also, must have projected a few millimeters beyond the dorsal test when extended straight out laterally.

Formation and locality: Burgess shale, Middle Cambrian, on the west slope of the ridge between Mount Field and Wapta Peak, above Field, British Columbia.

The Appendages of Calymene and Ceraurus.

HISTORICAL.

All of the work on these species has been done by Doctor Walcott, who summarized his results in 1881.

In the first of his papers (1875, p. 159), Walcott did not describe any appendages but paved the way for further work by a detailed and accurate description of the ventral surface of the dorsal shell of *Ceraurus.* He demonstrated the presence in this species of strongly buttressed processes which extend directly downward from the test just within the line of the dorsal furrows. One pair of these is seen beneath each pair of the glabellar furrows, each segment of the thorax has a pair, and there are four pairs on the pygidium. He pointed out also that these projections were but poorly developed on that part of the glabella which is covered by the hypostoma. He called them axial processes, the only name which appears to have been suggested thus far.

The first announcement of the discovery of actual appendages in *Ceraurus* and *Calymene* was made by the same investigator in a pamphlet published in 1876 in advance of the 28th Report of the New York State Museum of Natural History, the publication of the whole report being delayed till 1879. The results were obtained by the process of cutting translucent slices of enrolled trilobites derived from the Trenton limestone at Trenton Falls, New York. Since he summarized all the results of this study in one paper at a later date, it is not necessary to follow the stages of the work.

A second preliminary paper was published in pamphlet form in September, 1877, and in final form in 1879, when the first figures were presented.

In his important paper of 1881, Walcott reviewed all that was known of the appendages of trilobites to that time, and gave the results of seven years of study of sections of enrolled specimens. Slices had been made of 2,200 individuals from Trenton Falls, which resulted in obtaining 270 which were worthy of study. Of these, 205 were from *Ceraurus pleurexanthemus,* 49 from *Calymene senaria,* 11 from *Isotelus gigas,* and 5 from *Acidaspis trentonensis.*

Walcott's views on certain portions of the anatomy can best be set forth in the form of a few extracts (1881, pp. 199-208):

The Ventral Membrane.—In those longitudinal sections in which the ventral membrane is most perfectly preserved, it is shown to have been a thin, delicate pellicle or membrane, strengthened in each segment by a transverse arch, to which the appendages were attached. These arches appear as flat bands separated by a thin connecting membrane, somewhat as the arches in the ventral surface of some of the Macrouran Decapods. . . .

In by far the greater number of sections, both transverse and longitudinal, the evidence of the former presence of an exterior membrane, protecting the contents of the visceral cavity, rests on the fact that the sections show a definite boundary line between the white calcspar, filling the space formerly occupied by the viscera, and the dark limestone matrix. Even the thickened arches are rarely seen.

The mode of attachment of the leg to the ventral surface is shown [in transverse and longitudinal sections of *Ceraurus* and *Calymene*]. These illustrations are considered as showing that the point of articulation was a small, round process projecting from the posterior surface of the large basal joint, and articulating in the ventral arch somewhat as the legs of some of the Isopods articulate with the arches in the ventral membrane. The arches of the ventral membrane in the trilobite . . . afford a correspondingly firm basis for the attachment of the legs.

Branchial appendages.—The branchiæ have required more time and labor to determine their true structure than any of the appendages yet discovered. They were first regarded as small tubes arranged side by side, like the teeth in a rake; then as setiferous appendages, and finally as elongate ribbon-like spirals and bands attached to the side of the thoracic cavity, the epipodite being a so-called branchial arm. All of these parts are now known to belong to the respiratory system, but from their somewhat complex structure, and the various curious forms assumed by the parts when broken up and distorted, it was a long time before their relations were determined.

The respiratory system is formed of two series of appendages, as found beneath the thorax. The first is a series of branchiæ attached to the basal joints of the legs, and the second, the branchial arms, or epipodites.

The branchiæ, as found in *Calymene, Ceraurus,* and *Acidaspis,* have three forms. In the first they bifurcate a short distance from the attachment to the basal joint of the leg, and extend outward and downward as two simple, slender tubes, or ribbon-like filaments. In the second form they bifurcate in the same manner, but the two branches are spirals. These two forms occur in the same individual but, as a rule, the more simple ribbon-like branchia is found in the smaller or younger specimens, and the spiral form in the adult. . . . The spiral branchiæ of *Ceraurus* are usually larger and coarser than those of *Calymene.*

The third type of the branchiæ [consists of rather long straight ribbons arranged in a digitate manner on a broad basal joint]. As far as yet known, this is confined to the anterior segments of the thorax.

The epipodite or branchial arm was attached to the basal joints of the thoracic legs and formed of two or more joints. This has been called a branchial arm, not that it carried a branchia, but on account of its relation to the respiratory system. It is regarded as an arm or paddle, that, kept in constant motion, produced a current of water circulating among the branchiæ gathered close beneath the dorsal shell. . . .

Of the modification the respiratory apparatus underwent beneath the pygidium, we have no evidence.

In his latest publication (1918, pp. 147-153, pls. 26-28, 33), Walcott has reviewed his earlier work on *Calymene* and *Ceraurus,* and presented a new restoration of the former. The coxopodites are now interpreted as being similar to those of *Triarthrus* and *Neolenus,* but the exopodites are still held to be spiral and the setiferous organs labelled as epipodites rather than exopodites.

Comparison of the Appendages of Calymene and Ceraurus with those of Triarthrus.

As one may see by reading the above quotations from Doctor Walcott's descriptions, he found certain branchial organs in *Ceraurus* and *Calymene* which have not been found in other trilobites but otherwise the essential features of the appendages of all are in agreement.

Spiral Branchiæ.

It is now necessary to inquire if the thin sections can not be interpreted on the basis of trilobites with the same organs as *Triarthrus.* The interpretation of the structures seen in these translucent slices is exceedingly difficult, and Doctor Walcott deserves the utmost praise for the acumen with which he drew his deductions. Even with the present knowledge of *Triarthrus, Isotelus,* and *Neolenus* as a guide, I do not think it is safe to speak dogmatically about what one sees in them.

Walcott has summarized his results in his restoration of the appendages of *Calymene* (1918, pl. 33). The coxopodite supports a slender six-jointed endopodite as in *Triarthrus,* dorsal to which is a short setiferous epipodite which differs from the exopodite of *Triarthrus,* in being less long, unsegmented, and in having shorter setæ. Arising from the same part of the coxopodite with this epipodite is the bifurcate spiral branchia which has not been seen in this form in other trilobites. The evidence on which the existence of this organ is postulated consists of a series of sections across the thorax, the best of them figured by Walcott in his plates 2 and 3 (1881) and plate 27 (1918).

The specimens sliced were all partially or quite enrolled, and in that position one would expect to find the appendages so displaced that it would be only rarely that a section would be cut, either by chance or design, in such a direction as to show any considerable part of any one appendage. This expectation has proved true in regard to the endopodites, the sections rarely showing more than two or three consecutive segments. Sections like those shown in figures 1 and 2 in plate 2 (1881) seem to be unique. On the other hand, there are numerous slices showing the so-called spiral branchiæ. They show for the most part as a succession of rectangular to kidney-shaped spots of clear calcite.[1] Usually these clear spots are isolated, not confluent, but in a small number of specimens, perhaps three or four, the spots are connected in such a way as to show a zig-zag band which suggests a spiral. Such an explanation is of course entirely reasonable, but it would be surprising if so slender a spiral should be cut in such a way as to exhibit the large series of successive turns shown in many of these thin sections. Continuous sections of such organs should be no more common than continuous sections of endopodites.

One of the arguments against the interpretation of these series of spots as sections across spiral arms is that of probabilities. It is known from flattened specimens that *Neolenus, Kootenia, Ptychoparia, Triarthrus,* and *Cryptolithus* all have a single type of exopodite, consisting of a simple setiferous shaft. All these genera have been examined in a way that permits no doubt about the structure, and no trace of spiral arms has been detected. On the other hand, Walcott found spiral arms in three unrelated genera, *Calymene, Ceraurus,* and *Acidaspis,* all of the trilobites in which he found exopodites by the method of sectioning. What are the probabilities that genera of three different families, studied by means of sections, should agree in having a type of exopodite different from that of the five genera about whose interpretation there can be no doubt?

Another argument against the interpretation of the sections as spirals is that in any one line the individual spots are of roughly uniform size. This means of course that the spiral has been cut by a plane parallel to the tangent plane. This might happen once, just as once Doctor Walcott cut all six segments of a single endopodite, but that it should happen

[1] In looking at Walcott's figures of 1881, it should be remembered that the dark portions of the figures are clear calcite in the specimens, while the light part is the more or less opaque matrix.

repeatedly is highly improbable. Moreover, there is a limit to the diameter of the section which may be made from these slender spirals. Most of the spots have one diameter about one half greater than the other, but others are from three to six times as long as wide. These last could obviously be cut only from a very large spiral, and they are therefore interpreted by Walcott as setæ of epipodites. Yet all gradations are found among the sections, from the long setæ to the short dots. (See pl. 27, 1918.) In referring to one slice, Walcott says (1918, p. 152):

> In the latter figure and in figure 13, plate 27, the setæ of several epipodites appear to have been cut across so as to give the effect of long rows of setæ. The same condition occurs in specimens of *Marrella* when the setæ of several exopodites are matted against each other.

Fig. 12.—A slice of *Ceraurus pleurexanthemus* in which the exopodite happened to be cut in such a way as to show a part of the shaft and some of the setæ in longitudinal section. Specimen 80. ×4.

This is certainly an apt comparison, and equally true if *Neolenus, Triarthrus,* or *Cryptolithus* were substituted for *Marrella.*

Now consider the "epipodites." They are well shown in *Calymene* in the specimens illustrated on plate 27, figure 11 (1918), and plate 3, figure 3 (1881), and less clearly in one or two others. Slices 22 (pl. 27, fig. 12, 1918) and 80 (our fig. 12) show what is called the same organ in *Ceraurus.* It will be noted that all of these slices are cut in the same way, that is, more or less parallel to the under surface of the head, or, at any rate, on a plane parallel to a plane which would be tangent to the axial portion of the coiled shell. The sections which show the spirals best are those which are cut by a plane perpendicular to the long axis of the body. If one were to attempt to cut an enrolled *Triarthrus* in such a way as to get a section showing the length of the setæ, one would not cut a section perpendicular to the axis of the animal, nor, in fact, would he cut one parallel to the ventral plane, but it is obvious that in this latter type of section he would stand a better chance of finding a part of the plane of the exopodite coincident with the plane of his section than in the former. And that seems to be what has happened in these sections of *Calymene* and *Ceraurus.* If the exopodites were preserved, transverse sections were bound to cut across many sets of fringes, and the resultant slice would show transverse sections of the setæ as a series of overlapping spots. A few fortunately located sections in a more nearly hori-

zontal plane might cut the setæ and occasionally the shaft of one or more exopodites in the longitudinal plane, and the resulting effect would produce the so-called "epipodites." A careful study has shown that no one of these epipodites is complete, and they do not have the palmate form shown in Walcott's figures.

And the last and most important argument against the spiral appendages is that certain slices, of both *Calymene* and *Ceraurus,* show definitely exopodites of exactly the type found in other trilobites. These are discussed later in the detailed description of the various slices.

If these series of spots are interpreted on the basis of the known structure of *Triarthrus,* they are of course a series of sections through the setæ of the exopodites. It will be shown in Part IV that these setæ are not circular in section, but flattened, in *Cryptolithus* even blade-like, and that they overlap one another. A section across them would give the same general appearance as, for instance, that shown in figures 4, 6, 9, and 10 of Walcott's plate 3 (1881).

When both endopodites and the "spiral branchiæ" are present in the same section (pl. 1, fig. 4; pl. 2, figs. 1, 2), the "spiral branchiæ" are dorsal to the endopodites, as the setæ of the exopodites would be expected to be. The specimens which show the clear spots connected, and which suggest a spiral (pl. 3, fig. 5), may seem at first sight to bear evidence against this interpretation, but one has only to think of the effect of cutting a section along the edge where the setæ are attached to the shaft of the exopodite of *Triarthrus* to see that such a zigzag effect is entirely possible. One would expect to cut just this position only rarely, and, in fact, the zigzags are seen in only three or four sections. The bifurcation of the basal segment of the "spiral branchiæ" (pl. 3, fig. 10, 1881) is probably more apparent than real, if indeed these basal segments have anything to do with the succeeding one.

A second peculiarity of *Calymene,* shown in Walcott's restoration, is the great enlargement of the coxopodites and of the distal segments of the endopodites of the fifth pair of appendages of the cephalon. This is based on the sections of plate 3, figures 6, 7, 8, 9, 10 (1881). After a study of the specimens I regret to find myself still unconvinced that the posterior cephalic appendages were any larger than those in front.

Ventral Membrane.

The most striking value of the thin sections of *Ceraurus* and *Calymene,* and therein they have a great superiority over all the other forms so far investigated, is that they show the extent of the body cavity and the position, though not the substance, of the ventral membrane. Transverse sections through *Ceraurus* (Walcott's pl. 1, figs. 1-5; pl. 2, figs. 1, 3, 1881) and *Calymene* (pl. 3, figs. 9, 10, 1881) show that the body cavity was almost entirely confined to the axial lobe. The longitudinal sections of *Ceraurus* (pl. 2, figs. 6, 8; pl. 4, fig. 8) and of *Calymene* (pl. 2, figs. 5, 7; pl. 5, figs. 1-4) show that the ventral membrane was exceedingly thin and was wrinkled transversely when the shell was enrolled.

The specimens of figures 1-3, plate 5 (1881) show the form of the ventral membrane more distinctly than any of the others. The section of figure 1 was cut just inside the dorsal furrow on the right side, and figure 2, which is on the opposite side of the same slice, is almost exactly on the median line. Figure 3 shows a section just inside the left dorsal furrow. Section 2 did not cut any of the appendages, and the ventral membrane is

shown as a thickened, probably chitinous sheet thrown into low sharply crested folds equal in number to, and pointing in a direction just the reverse of, the crests of the segments of the thorax. Under the pygidium, where there would of course be less wrinkling, the folds are hardly noticeable. In the actual specimens one sees more plainly than in the figures the line of separation between the ventral membrane and the appendages, but the state of preservation of everything beneath the dorsal shell is so indefinite that one does not feel sure just what the connection between the appendages and the membrane was. In the original of figure 5, plate 2, which seems to have been cut so as to cross the appendages at their line of junction with the ventral membrane, there appear to be narrow chitinous (?) plates extending from the ventral membrane to the dorsal test.

Appendifers.

In *Ceraurus* there are regular calcareous processes which extend down from the dorsal test just inside the line of the dorsal furrow, and which undoubtedly serve as points of attachment of the appendages. These processes, which for convenience I have designated as "appendifers," are broken off in most specimens showing the lower surface of *Ceraurus pleurexanthemus,* but on certain ones cleaned with potash they are well preserved. Doctor Walcott showed them well in his figures of the lower surface of this species (1875, pl. 11; 1881, pl. 4, fig. 5), while the attempt of Raymond and Barton (1913, pl. 2, fig. 7) to show them by photography was not so successful.

There is one pair of appendifers on each of the thoracic segments and four pairs on the pygidium. On the cephalon there is one pair under the neck furrow, and a pair under the posterior glabellar furrows. These are not concealed by the hypostoma. Further forward, and completely covered by the hypostoma, are two much less strongly developed but similar ones, so that there are in all four pairs of appendifers on the cephalon, though it is extremely doubtful if the appendages were articulated directly to all of them. On a specimen of *Ceraurus pleurexanthemus* 30 mm. long on the median line, the dorsal furrows are 7.5 mm. apart at the anterior end of the thorax, and the tips of the appendifers of this segment are only 4 mm. apart. Each consists of a straight slender rod with a knob-like end projecting directly downward from the dorsal test, and supported by a thin calcareous plate which runs diagonally forward to the anterior edge of the segment directly under the dorsal furrow. On the pygidium three pairs of the appendifers have this form, while the fourth pair consist of low rounded tubercles which are concealed by the doublure. These appendifers are probably cut in many of Walcott's sections of *Ceraurus,* but owing to the state of preservation it is not always possible to determine what part is appendage, what part is body cavity, and what part is appendifer.

Nearly forty years ago Von Koenen (1880, p. 431, pl. 8, figs. 9, 10) described and figured the appendifers of *Phacops latifrons.* He found them to be calcareous projections on the hinder margin of each segment, converging inward, and about 1.5 mm. long. He correctly considered them as supports (Stützpunkte) for the feet.

Appendifers are well developed also in *Pliomerops,* and in well preserved specimens of *Calymene senaria* from Trenton Falls they are present, but instead of being rod-like processes, they are rather thick, prominent folds of the shell. They are also well shown in some of the thin sections. A specimen of *Triarthrus* (No. 229, our pl. 5, fig. 2) has broad processes extending downward from the lower side of the test below the dorsal furrows, much as in *Calymene,* and the individual of *Cryptolithus* shown in plate 8, figure

1, possesses slender appendifers. Two other specimens (Nos. 237 and 242) show them quite well. They were probably present in all trilobites, but seldom preserved. The appendifers have the same origin as the entopophyses of *Limulus,* and like them, may have relatively little effect on the dorsal surface.

Calymene senaria Conrad.

(Text figs. 13-16, 23.)

Illustrated: Walcott, Bull. Mus. Comp. Zool., Harvard Coll., vol. 8, 1881, pl. 1, figs. 6-10; pl. 2, figs. 5-7, 10; pl. 3, figs. 1, 3, 8-10; pl. 4, figs. 3, 7; pl. 5, figs. 1-6; pl. 6, figs. 1 (restoration), 2;—Proc. Biol. Soc. Washington, vol. 9, 1894, pl. 1, fig. 7 (restoration);—Geol. Mag., dec. 4, vol. 1, 1894, pl. 8, figs. 7, 8;—Smithson. Misc. Coll., vol. 67, 1918, pl. 26, figs. 1-7, 9-13; pl. 27, figs. 4, 5 (not 5a), 11 (not 12, *Ceraurus*), 13, 14, 15 (not *Ceraurus*); pl. 28, figs. 7, 8; pl. 33, fig. 1 (restoration); pl. 34, fig. 2; pl. 35, fig. 6.—Dames, N. Jahrb. f. Min., etc., vol. 1, 1880, pl. 8, figs. 1-5.—Milne-Edwards, Ann. Sci. Nat., Zoologie, ser. 6, vol. 12, 1881, pl. 11, figs. 19-32; pl. 12, figs. 33-41.—Packard, Amer. Nat., vol. 16, 1882, p. 796, fig. 12.—Bernard, The Apodidæ, 1892, text figs. 50, 52, 54;—Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 50, 1894, text figs. 13, 15, 17.—Œhlert, Bull. Soc. Géol. France, ser. 3, vol. 24, 1896, fig. 12.—Beecher, Amer. Jour. Sci., vol. 13, 1902, pl. 5, fig. 7.

In both of Walcott's accounts (1881, 1918) of the appendages of *Calymene* and *Ceraurus,* he has described them together, so that those who have not taken time to study the illustrations and disentangle the descriptions are very apt to have a confused notion in regard to them. I have therefore selected from the original specimens those slices of *Calymene* which are most instructive, and bearing in mind the probable appearance of the appendages of an enrolled *Triarthrus,* have tried to interpret them. In such a method of study, I have of course started with a pre-formed theory of what to expect, but have tried to look for differences as well as likenesses.

Cephalic Appendages.

Antennules.—The evidence of antennules rests on a single slice (No. 78). The appendage in question is exceedingly slender and arises at the side of the hypostoma near its posterior end. It shows fine, slender segments, and curves first outward and then forward. If it is in its natural position, it is not an antennule, but the endopodite of the second or third pair of cephalic appendages. It is short, only about one-third the length of the hypostoma, but is doubtless incomplete. The two distal segments show a darker filling, indicating that they were hollow. Judging from analogy with other trilobites, the appendage is probably an endopodite and not an antennule. There can be no reasonable doubt, however, that *Calymene* possessed antennules.

Some idea of the form of the coxopodites of the cephalic appendages may be obtained from sections which cut in approximately the plane of the hypostoma. Such sections are shown in Walcott's photographs (pl. 26, figs. 4, 6, 11, 1918). Specimens 50 (fig. 4, our fig. 13), 51 (fig. 6), 6 (fig. 11), and 40 (our fig. 14) agree in showing two pairs of slender coxopodites which are attached at the sides of the hypostoma and run backward parallel and close to it, and two pairs of larger coxopodites which are behind the hypostoma, although the point of attachment of the third pair is in front of its tip. The anterior pair are apparently under-developed and no longer function as mouth parts, while the posterior two pairs are large and armed on their inner ends with spines. Specimen 78, which has already been mentioned in connection with the antennules, shows a second very slender appendage back of the so called antennule, which is equally slender, but is directed outward instead of for-

ward. It seems not improbable, from their position and similarity, that these two are the endopodites of the first two appendages on one side of the hypostoma. Specimen 6 shows rather inadequately the endopodites of the second and third cephalic appendages. I have not found other slices showing endopodites of the cephalon. Walcott, in both his restorations, has shown enlarged, paddle-shaped dactylopodites on the distal ends of the fourth cephalic endopodites. The evidence for this rests principally on three slices, No. 38 (pl. 26, figs. 9, 10), 53 (pl. 26, fig. 12), and 43 (pl. 26, fig. 13). Of these, No. 43 may be dismissed at once as too poorly preserved to be interpreted. No. 53 does show a section of an appendage which seems to have an unusually wide dactylopodite, but this slice presents no evidence at all as to the appendage to which the dactylopodite appertains, nor can one even be sure that there has not been a secondary enlargement. Specimen 43 shows this

Fig. 13.—Slice through *Caylmene senaria* in the plane of the hypostoma, showing the very slender coxopodites beside that organ, the spines on the inner end of one of the maxillulæ, and the anterior position of the attachment of all these appendages. From a photographic enlargement. Specimen 50. ×4.

Fig. 14.—Slice through the hypostoma and thorax of *Calymene senaria* Conrad, showing the small size of the coxopodites nearest the hypostoma. Shell in black, appendages and filling of abdominal cavity dotted. From a photographic enlargement. Specimen 40. ×3.8.

Fig. 15.—Transverse section of *Calymene*, showing method of articulation with the appendifer. The shell is in solid black, the filling of the appendage and appendifer stippled. Traced from a photographic enlargement of the slice. Specimen 63. ×7.

feature much less definitely than is indicated by the published photograph and drawing. The segment in question is strongly curved, with a constriction possibly dividing it into two. If it is in its natural position in this section, it obviously belongs to one of the thoracic segments and not to the cephalon. With evidence of difference so unsatisfactory, I prefer to reconstruct the posterior cephalic endopodites on the same plan as those of the thorax.

Exopodites.—Walcott admits that there is no direct evidence of spiral exopodites in the cephalon of *Calymene*. No one of the sections cutting through the plane of the hypostoma shows any trace of appendages which could be interpreted as exopodites.

Thoracic Appendages.

The large coxopodites of the anterior thoracic appendages are well shown in many specimens cut longitudinally, of which Nos. 23, 50, and 55 may be mentioned, since photographs of them have been published by Walcott (pl. 26, figs. 1-4, 1918). The endobases of all taper toward the proximal ends. Transverse slices show sections of the coxopodites which

are no wider than those in longitudinal sections, indicating that they were not compressed but probably cylindrical. This is borne out by an individual (pl. 28, fig. 7, 1918) which is not a slice but an actual specimen, the body cavity of which was hollow, and, opened from above, shows the impressions of the last two coxopodites of the cephalon, and the first four of the thorax.

One transverse section (No. 63, see our fig. 15) is especially valuable, as it shows the method of articulation of the coxopodites with the dorsal skeleton. Another specimen (No. 73) shows that appendifers are present in *Calymene,* and while the appendifer does not retain its original form in slice No. 63, the section does show clearly that there was a notch in the inner (upper) side of the coxopodite into which the lower end of the appendifer fitted, thus giving a firm, articulated support for the appendage. This notch appears to be slightly nearer the outer than the inner end of the coxopodite, and since it must have made a kind of ball-and-socket joint, considerable freedom of movement was allowed. The appendage must have been held in place by muscles within the coxopodite and attached to the appendifer.

No slice which I have seen shows a continuous section through all the segments of an endopodite, but many, both longitudinal and transverse, show one, two, or as many as three segments.

Such sections as No. 120 show that the endopodites of the thorax were slender and composed of segments of rather uniform diameter. Other sections, notably No. 83, 154, and 111, show that they tapered distally, and bore small spines at the outer end of each segment.

The exopodites of course furnish the chief difficulty in interpretation. Doctor Walcott finds two sets of structures attached to the coxopodite, a long, slender, spiral exopodite, and a short, broad epipodite with a fringe of long setæ. Since he has given the same interpretation for *Calymene, Ceraurus,* and *Acidaspis,* I have considered the question of all three together on a preceding page (p. 48),and given my reasons for regarding both structures as due to sections in different directions across setiferous exopodites.

Sections like those shown in figures 11, 13, and 14 of plate 27 (1918) happen to be cut in or near the plane of the setæ of an exopodite, and so show hairs of considerable length. Such sections are, as would be expected, very few in number, while sections like those shown on figures 4, 5, 7, and 9 of plate 27, which cut the setæ more nearly at right angles, are very common. Slices which give any definite idea of the form of the shaft of the exopodite are exceedingly rare. Perhaps the most satisfactory one is No. 23 (pl. 3, fig. 3, 1881), which shows the proximal part of a long, slender, unsegmented shaft, with the bases of a number of slender setæ. The organ is not complete, as would be inferred from the published figure, but the section cuts diagonally across it, and the total length is unknown. It is directed forward, like the exopodites of *Neolenus,* but whether or not this is a natural position is yet to be learned.

The proximal, non-setiferous portion of the exopodite is evidently at an angle with the setiferous part. Another similar exopodite is apparently shown by specimen 29 (pl. 3, fig. 9, 1881, which has a similar angulated shaft and just a trace of the bases of the setæ.

Pygidial Appendages.

That appendages were present under the pygidium is shown by longitudinal sections, but nothing is known of the detail of structure.

Relation of Hypostoma to Cephalon in Calymene.

In *Calymene* the shape of the hypostoma bears little relation to the shape of the glabella, and it is relatively smaller, both shorter and narrower, than in *Ceraurus*. In shape, neglecting the side lappets at the front, it is somewhat rectangular, but rounded at the back, where it is bifurcated by a shallow notch. The anterior edge has a narrow flange all across, which is turned at almost right angles to the plane of the appendage, and which

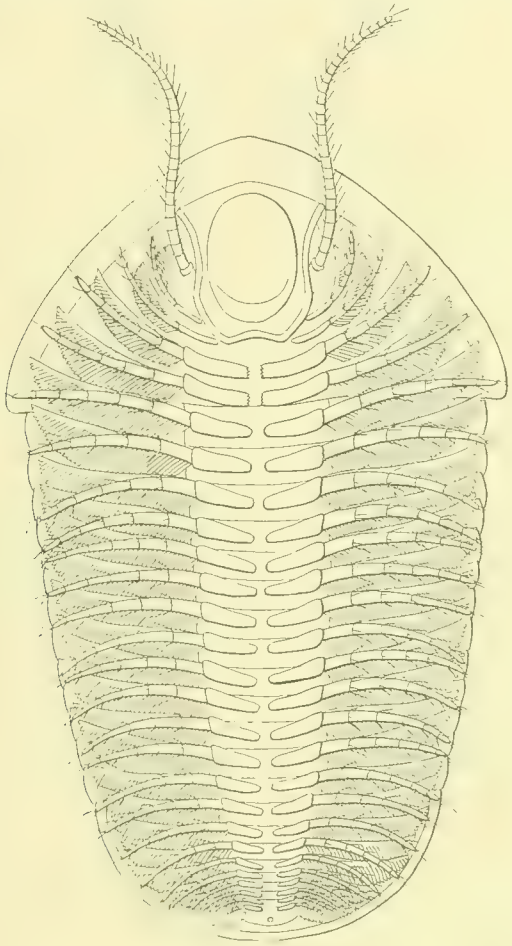


Fig. 16.—Restoration of *Calymene senaria* Conrad, based upon data obtained from the study of the translucent sections made by Doctor Walcott. Prepared by Doctor Elvira Wood, under the supervision of the author. About twice natural size.

fits against the doublure of the free cheeks at the sides and against the epistoma in the middle. The side lappets show on their inner (upper) surface shallow pits, one on each lappet, which fit over projections that on the dorsal surface show as deep pits in the bottom of the dorsal furrows in front of the anterior glabellar furrows. The appendifers on the head in *Calymene* take the form of curving projections of shell underneath the glabellar and neck furrows, and owing to the narrowness of the hypostoma, all these are visible from the ventral side, even with it in position. This shield extends back about 0.6 of

the length of the cephalon, and to a point a little behind the second glabellar furrow from the back of the head.

In Doctor Walcott's restoration of *Calymene* he has represented all four pairs of biramous appendages as articulating back of the posterior end of the hypostoma. I think his sections indicate that the gnathobases of two pairs of these appendages rested alongside or beneath it, and in particular, the longitudinal sections (1881, pl. 5) would appear to show that the mouth was some distance in advance of its posterior end.

Restoration of Calymene.

(Text fig. 16.)

From what has been said above, it is evident that for a restoration of the appendages of *Calymene* considerable dependence must be placed upon analogy with other trilobites. Nothing is positively known of the antennules, the exopodites of the cephalon, or any appendages, other than coxopodites, of the pygidium, but all were probably present. It is inferred from the slices that the first two pairs of cephalic appendages were poorly developed, the endopodites short and very slender, the coxopodites lying parallel to the sides of the hypostoma and nearly or quite functionless. The gnathites of the last two pairs of cephalic appendages are large, closely approximated at their inner ends, and bear small tooth-like spines. The endopodites are probably somewhat better developed than the anterior ones and more like those on the thorax.

The coxopodites of the thorax appear to have had nearly cylindrical endobases which tapered inward. The endopodites were slender, tapering gradually outward, and probably did not extend beyond the dorsal test. Small spines were present on the distal end of each segment. Each exopodite had a long, slender, unsegmented shaft, to which were attached numerous long, overlapping, flattened setæ. The shaft may have been angulated near the proximal end, and may have been directed somewhat forward and outward as in *Neolenus,* but the evidence on this point is unsatisfactory. The number of pairs of appendages is that determined by Walcott from longitudinal sections, namely, four pairs on the cephalon beside the antennules, thirteen pairs in the thorax, and nine pairs on the pygidium.

Calymene sp. ind.

(Pl. 6, figs. 4, 5.)

Illustrated: Walcott, Bull. Mus. Comp. Zool., Harvard Coll., vol. 8, 1881, pl. 6, figs. 5a, b;—Proc. Biol. Soc. Washington, vol. 9, 1894, pl. 1, fig. 10;—Geol. Mag., dec. 4, vol. 1, 1894, pl. 8, fig. 10;—Smithson. Misc. Coll., vol. 67, 1918, pl. 36, figs. 1, 2, 2a-d.—Milne-Edwards, Ann. Sci. Nat., Zoologie, ser. 6, vol. 12, 1881, pl. 12, figs. 44a, b.

In the United States National Museum there is a thin piece of limestone, about 3 inches square, which has on its surface eight jointed objects that have been called legs of trilobites. Two of these were figured by Walcott (1881, pl. 6, fig. 5). The slab contains specimens of *Dalmanella* and *Cryptolithus,* in addition to the appendages of trilobites, and is said by Doctor Ulrich to have come from the upper part of the Point Pleasant formation (Trenton) on the bank of the Ohio River below Covington, Kentucky.

The specimens are all endopodites of long slender form, similar to those of *Triarthrus,* but since that genus does not occur in the Point Pleasant, it is necessary to look upon some other trilobite as the former possessor of these organs. Both *Isotelus* and *Calymene* occur

at this horizon, and as the specimens obviously do not belong to *Isotelus* or *Cryptolithus,* it is probable that they were formerly part of a *Calymene.*

All the endopodites are of chitinous material, and the various specimens show, according to the perfection of their preservation, from four to six segments. The endopodite as a whole tapers but slightly outward, and the individual segments are of nearly equal length. They appear to be but little crushed, and are oval in section, with a crimped anterior and posterior margin. One or two show a median longitudinal ridge, such as is seen in some appendages of *Triarthrus.* Each segment is parallel-sided, with a slight expansion at the distal end, where the next segment fits into it.

Under the heading "Ordovician Crustacean Leg," Walcott (1918, p. 154, pl. 36, figs. 1, 2) has recently redescribed these specimens, and thinks that they do not belong to *Calymene,* nor, indeed, to any trilobite. He concludes that they were more like what one would expect in an isopod. Passing over the fact that the oldest isopod now known is Devonian, the fossils in question seem to me quite trilobite-like. Walcott says:

> The legs are associated with fragments of *Calymene meeki* but it is not probable that they belong to that species; if they did, they are unlike any trilobite leg known to me. The very short coxopodite and basopodite are unknown in the trilobites of which we have the legs, as they are fused into one joint forming the long protopodite in the trilobite. The distal joint is also unlike that of the trilobite legs known to us.

A great deal of Doctor Walcott's difficulty probably arises from his homology of the coxopodite of the trilobite with the protopodite of the higher Crustacea. The coxopodite of the trilobite is not fused with the basipodite, this latter segment always remaining free. Indeed, Walcott himself says of *Neolenus* (1918, p. 128):

> Each thoracic leg (endopodite) is formed of a large elongate proximal joint (protopodite), four strong joints each about 1.5 times as long as wide (basopodite, ischiopodite, meropodite and carpopodite); two slender elongate joints (propodite and dactylopodite) and a claw-like, more or less tripartite termination.

Walcott's drawing (pl. 36, fig. 1) is a composite one, and while it shows eight segments, I was not able to count more than seven on any of the specimens themselves. In regard to the terminal segment, the dactylopodite of the limb shown in his plate 36, figure 2, is unusually long, and a comparison with other photographs published on the same plate shows that such long segments are unusual.

Proof that these are appendages of a *Calymene* is of course wanting, but there is no particular reason so far to say that they are not.

Measurements: Two of the more complete specimens, each showing six segments, are each 8 mm. long.

Somewhat similar to the specimens from Covington are the ones described by Eichwald (1825, p. 39, 1860, pl. 21), the specimens being from the Silurian of Gotland. The figure copied by Walcott (1881, pl. 6, fig. 4) has never been looked upon as entirely satisfactory evidence of the nature of the specimen, and so far as I know, the fossil has not been seen by any modern investigator.

Ceraurus pleurexanthemus Green.

(Pl. 11; text figs. 12, 17-19, 21, 22, 24, 29, 30.)

Illustrated: Walcott, Ann. Lyc. Nat. Hist. New York, vol. 11, 1875, pl. 11;—31st Ann. Rept. New York State Mus. Nat. Hist., 1879, pl. 1, fig. 3;—Bull. Mus. Comp. Zool., Harvard Coll., vol. 8, 1881, pl. 1, figs. 1-5; pl. 2, figs. 1-4, 6-8; pl. 3, figs. 2, 4-7; pl. 4, figs. 1, 2, 4-6, 8; pl. 6, fig. 3;—Smithson. Misc. Coll., vol. 67,

1918, pl. 26, figs. 8, 14, 15; pl. 27, figs. 1-3, 5a, 6-9, 12 (not *Calymene*), (not 15, *Calymene*); pl. 28, figs. 1-5; pl. 34, fig. 1; pl. 35, fig. 7.—Milne-Edwards, Ann. Sci. Nat., Zoologie, ser. 6, vol. 12, 1881, pl. 10, figs. 1-18.—Bernard, The Apodidæ, 1892, text figs. 46, 51.

Cephalic Appendages.

No trace of antennules has yet been found.

I find only three sections cut through the plane of the hypostoma of *Ceraurus* which show anything of the cephalic appendages, and no one of them is very satisfactory. The best is No. 22, the one figured by Walcott (pl. 3, fig. 2, 1881; pl. 27, fig. 12, 1918), but one should remember that this section is not actually cut in the plane of the hypostoma but is a slice diagonally through the head, cutting through one eye and the posterior end of the hypostoma. It shows what seem to be the coxopodites of the second, third, and fourth pairs of cephalic appendages, the exopodites of the third and fourth pairs, and the metastoma. If this interpretation is correct, the first pair of gnathites lay alongside the hypostoma or under its edge, and were feebly developed, the second pair were attached in front of the tip of the hypostoma, curved back close to it, and their inner ends reached the sides of the metastoma. The third and fourth pairs were back of the metastoma, the third pair was stronger than the second, and the fourth probably like the third.

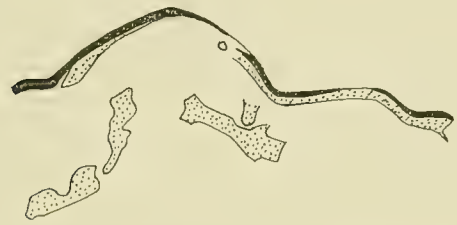


Fig. 17.—Transverse section of *Ceraurus pleurexanthemus,* showing the relation of the coxopodite to the appendifer. Traced from a photographic enlargement of the slice. Specimen 128. ×4.5.

Fig. 18.—Slice of *Ceraurus pleurexanthemus,* showing a nearly continuous section of an endopodite and an exopodite above it. The latter is so cut as to show only the edge of the shaft and the bases of a few setæ. Traced from a photographic enlargement. Specimen 111. ×4.

Specimen 92 shows traces of the slender endopodites belonging to the cephalon, but no details. Specimen 22 shows on one side exopodites (epipodites of Walcott) belonging to the third and fourth cephalic appendages. That belonging to the third shows some long setæ and a trace of the shaft, while the one on the fourth appendage (third coxopodite) has a portion of a broad shaft and a number of long setæ. It should again be remembered that the slice does not cut through the plane of the exopodite, but across it at a low angle, so that a part but not all of the shaft is shown. On the other side of this slice there is a fairly good section of one of the thoracic exopodites. It is, however, turned around in the opposite direction from the others, as would be expected in an enrolled specimen.

Specimens 4 and 5 (pl. 1, figs. 4, 5, 1881) are slices cut diagonally through the head of *Ceraurus,* in front of the posterior tip of the hypostoma. They show fragments of endopodites and exopodites which may be interpreted as practically identical in form with those of the thorax. Due to the diagonal plane in which the section is cut, slice 5 shows

the coxopodites of two pairs of appendages, one lying nearer the median cavity than the other. It is extremely difficult to visualize the interpretation of such sections.

Thoracic Appendages.

A transverse section through a thoracic segment (No. 128, our fig. 17) shows the relation of coxopodite to appendifer to be the same as in *Calymene,* the upper side of the coxopodite having a notch a little outward from the middle. After seeing that specimen, it is possible to understand slice No. 168, which shows longitudinal sections through a number of coxopodites of the thorax, with fragments of both exopodites and endopodites articulated at the distal ends. These and longitudinal vertical sections like No. 18 (pl. 2, fig. 8, 1881) show that the endobases taper inward, and the general uniformity in width in sections taken at various angles indicates that the coxopodites were not greatly flattened.

A unique slice (No. 111, pl. 2, fig. 2, 1881; pl. 27, fig. 1, 1918; our fig. 18) shows a nearly complete thoracic endopodite, and above it a part of the proximal end of the exopodite of the same segment. When one considers that out of over two thousand sections only this one shows the six successive segments of an endopodite, one realizes how futile it is to expect that dozens of the equally slender "spirals" should be cut so as to show practically all their turns.

This endopodite is slender, all the segments have nearly the same length and diameter, though there is a slight taper outward, each segment is expanded distally for the articulation of the next, and there are small spines on the distal ends of some of them. There is probably a terminal spine present, though it is neither so long nor so plainly visible as in Walcott's photograph.

The exopodite on this same specimen was evidently cut diagonally across near the setiferous edge, showing a section through the shaft and the bases of seven setæ (fig. 18). This section is so exactly what would be obtained by cutting similarly an exopodite of either *Neolenus* or *Triarthrus* that it should in itself dispose of the "spiral-exopodite" theory.

Several sections have already been illustrated showing sections across the setæ of the exopodites (pl. 3, figs. 4-6, 1881; pl. 27, figs. 3, 4, 9, 1918), and similar sections are not uncommon. Only a very few, however, show sections in the plane of the exopodite. If only No. 111, described above, were known, it would be inferred that the exopodite had a slender shaft as in *Calymene,* but another good slice, No. 80 (fig. 12, *ante*) shows that the blade was rather broad, though not so broad as in *Neolenus.* The other specimen is No. 22, which has already been discussed. The thoracic exopodite of this specimen has been very incorrectly figured by Walcott, as it shows no such palmate shaft as he has indicated, but a long blade-like one is outlined, though its entire width is not actually shown.

Pygidial Appendages.

Sections 14 and 18 (pl. 2, figs. 4, 8, 1881) prove the presence under the pygidium of three pairs of appendages, the coxopodites and fragments of endopodites of which are shown. Nothing is known of the exopodites.

Relation of Hypostoma to Cephalon.

In *Ceraurus* the body portion and posterior end of the hypostoma are roughly oval, about as wide as the glabella at its broadest part, and the posterior edge extends back to

within 0.5 to 1 mm. of the neck furrow. The posterior pair of appendifers are behind the hypostoma, while the second pair are in front of its posterior end but escape being covered by it on account of its oval shape. At the anterior end the hypostoma is widened by the presence of two side lappets which extend beyond the boundaries of the glabella. In both *Ceraurus* and *Cheirurus* the anterior edge of the hypostoma fits against the doublure at the anterior margin of the head and the epistoma is either entirely absent or is so narrow as not to be seen in specimens in the ordinary state of preservation. A section across the cephalon of *Ceraurus pleurexanthemus* at the horizon of the eyes shows the sides of the hypostoma fitting closely against the sides of the glabella (Walcott's pl. 1, fig. 1). Further back on the head it is not in contact with the dorsal test, and the gnathobases extend beneath it.

Restoration of Ceraurus pleurexanthemus.

(Pl. 11; text fig. 19.)

The restoration of the appendages of *Ceraurus pleurexanthemus* is a tentative one, based upon a careful study of the translucent sections prepared by Doctor Walcott. In no case

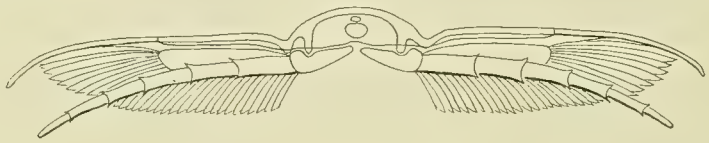


Fig. 19.—Restoration of a transverse section of the thorax of *Ceraurus pleurexanthemus* Green, showing the relation of the appendages to the appendifers and the ventral membrane. The probable positions of the heart and alimentary canal are indicated.

among these sections is the actual test of any appendage preserved, and the real form of each part is generally obscured by the crystallization of the calcite which fills the spaces formerly occupied by animal matter.

No section shows anything which can be identified as any part of the antennules, so that these organs have been supplied from analogy with *Triarthrus*.

There are undoubtedly four pairs of biramous cephalic appendages, but their points of attachment are not so obvious. There are two pairs of conspicuous appendifers on the posterior part of the cephalon and another pair almost concealed by the hypostoma. It is probable that the appendages of the cephalon were not attached directly beneath them, as the four pairs have to be placed within the space occupied by the three pairs of appendifers. As the mouth is in front of the posterior end of the hypostoma, the gnathites of the first pair of biramous appendages may have extended beneath that organ, or they may have lain beside it, and only become functional when the hypostoma was dropped down in the feeding position. The second pair of gnathites reached just to the tip of the hypostoma, and the other two pairs seemingly curved backward behind it.

The points of attachment on the thorax, as shown clearly in sections, were directly beneath the lower ends of the appendifers. The endopodites were long enough to reach to or a little beyond the outer extremities of the pleural spines, while the exopodites were apparently somewhat shorter. Each endopodite consisted of six short, fairly stout segments, each with at least two spines on the somewhat expanded distal ends. The exact

form of the exopodites could not be made out. The shaft was apparently rather short, unsegmented, and fairly broad. The setæ appear from the sections to have been more or less blade-shaped and to have overlapped, as do those of the exopodites of *Cryptolithus*. Judging from their position in the sections, the setæ not only bordered the posterior side of the shaft, but radiated out from the end as well.

The pygidium shows three pairs of functional appendifers, hence three pairs of appendages have been supplied. There is a fourth pair of rudimentary appendifers, but as they are beneath the doublure they could not have borne ambulatory appendages.

The Appendages of Acidaspis trentonensis Walcott.

(Pl. 6, fig. 6.)

A single individual of *Acidaspis trentonensis,* obtained from the same locality and horizon as the specimens of *Triarthrus* and *Cryptolithus,* when cleaned from the ventral side shows a number of poorly preserved endopodites which seem very similar in shape and position to those of *Triarthrus*. One endopodite on the right side of the head and the first five on the right side of the thorax are the best shown. All are slender, are directed first forward at an angle of about 45° with the axis, then, except in the case of the cephalic appendage, turn backward on a gentle curve and extend a little distance beyond the margin of the test, but not as far as the tips of the lateral spines of the thoracic segments.

The individual segments of the endopodites can not be seen clearly enough to make any measurements. On the fourth and fifth endopodites of the thorax, some of the segments seem to be broad and triangular as in *Triarthrus*. All that can be seen indicates that *Acidaspis* had appendages entirely similar to those of *Triarthrus,* but perhaps not quite so long, as they seem not to have projected beyond the limits of the lateral spines. There are no traces of antennules nor, unfortunately, of exopodites.

Measurements: Length 8 mm.

Walcott (1881, p. 206) stated that his sections had shown the presence in this species of legs "both cephalic and thoracic" and also the "spiral branchiæ." His specimens were from the Trenton at Trenton Falls, New York.

The Appendages of Cryptolithus.

Cryptolithus tessellatus Green.

(Pl. 6, fig. 7; pls. 7-9; text figs. 20, 25, 45, 46.)

(See also Part IV.)

Illustrated: Beecher, Amer. Jour. Sci., vol. 49, 1895, pl. 3.

When Professor Beecher wrote his short article on the "Structure and Appendages of *Trinucleus*" (1895), he had only three specimens showing appendages. In his later work he cleaned several more, so that there are now thirteen specimens of *Trinucleus* = *Cryptolithus* available for study, though some of these do not show much detail. In his last and unpublished study, Beecher devoted the major part of his attention to this genus, and summarized his findings in the drawings which he himself made of the best individuals (text figs. 45, 46). Valiant (1901) stated that he had found a *Trinucleus* with antennæ in the Frankfort shale south of Rome, New York. The specimen has not been figured.

None of the specimens shows much more of the appendages of the cephalon than the hypostoma and the antennules, so that we are still in ignorance about the mouth parts.

The most striking characteristics of the appendages are as follows: the antennules are long, and turn backward instead of forward; none of the limbs projects beyond the margin of the dorsal test; the exopodites extend beyond the endopodites, reaching very nearly to the margin of the test; the endopodites are not stretched out at right angles to the axis, but the first three segments have a forward and outward direction as in *Triarthrus,* while the last four turn back abruptly so that they are parallel to the axis; the limbs at the anterior end of the thorax are much more powerful than the others; the dactylopodites of the endopodites show a fringe of setæ instead of three spines as in *Triarthrus* and *Neolenus.* All these would, as Beecher has already suggested, seem to be adaptations to a burrowing habit of life, the antennules being turned backward and the other appendages kept within the shelter of the dorsal test in order to protect them, and the anterior endopodites enlarged and equipped with extra spines to make them more efficient digging and pushing organs.

Restoration of Cryptolithus.

(Text fig. 20.)

It should be definitely understood that the present figure is a restoration and not a drawing of a specimen, and that there are many points in the morphology of *Cryptolithus* about which no information is available, especially about the appendages under the central portion of the cephalon. The information afforded by all the figures published in this memoir is combined here. As gnathites are preserved on none of the specimens, those represented in the figure are purely conventional.

A person who is acquainted only with *Cryptolithus* preserved in shale, or with figures, usually has a very erroneous idea of the fringe It is not a flat border spread out around the front of the head, but stands at an angle about 45° in uncrushed specimens of most species. When viewed from the lower side, there is a single outer, concentric row of the cup-shaped depressions, bounded within by a prominent girder. This row is in an approximately horizontal plane, while the remainder of the doublure of the fringe rises steeply into the hollow of the cephalon. Since the front of the hypostoma is attached to this doublure, it stands high up within the vault and under the glabella. Two specimens, Nos. 231 and 233, show something of the hypostoma, and they are the only ones known of any American trinucleid. That of specimen 233, the better preserved, is very small, straight across the front, and oval behind. It seems that it is abnormally small in this specimen and I should not be surprised if in other specimens it should be found to be larger.

In the Bohemian *Trinucleoides reussi* (Barrande), the oldest of the trinucleids, the hypostoma is very commonly present, and is of the proper size to just cover the cavity of the glabella, seen from the lower side, and has, toward the anterior end, side flaps which reach out under the prominent glabellar lobes. This large size of the hypostoma would cause the antennules to be attached outside the dorsal furrows, and the position in which they are attached in the American species of *Cryptolithus* may be explained as an inherited one, since with the small hypostoma they might have been within the glabella, as in *Triarthrus.*

The antennules are seen in three specimens, and in all cases are directed backward. The particular course in which they are drawn in the restoration is purely arbitrary. The second pair of cephalic appendages are represented as directed downward and forward, since

in one or two specimens fragments of forward-pointing endopodites were seen near the front of the cephalon, and because in other trilobites the second pair of appendages is always directed forward. The remaining three pairs have a more solid basis in observed fact, for the two or three specimens retaining fragmentary remains of them indicate that they turn backward like those on the thorax, and that the individual segments are longer and more

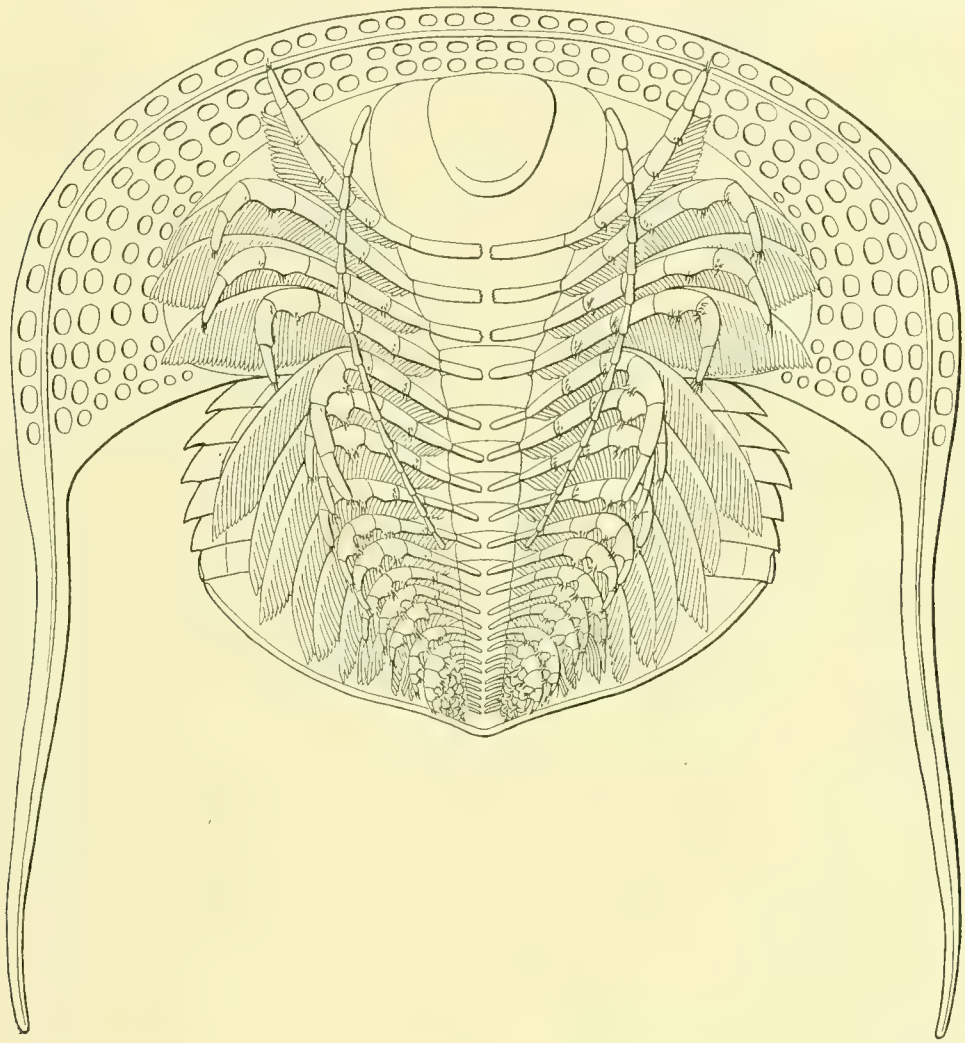


Fig. 20.—*Cryptolithus tessellatus* Green. A restoration of the appendages drawn by Doctor Elvira Wood from the original specimens and from the photographs made by Professor Beecher. × 9.

nearly parallel-sided than those of the more posterior appendages. The gnathites of all the cephalic appendages are admittedly purely hypothetical. None of the specimens shows them. As drawn, they are singularly inefficient as jaws, but if, as is suggested by the casts of the intestines of trinucleids found in Bohemia, these trilobites were mud-feeders, inefficient mouth-parts would be quite in order.

The appendages of the thorax and pygidium can fortunately be taken quite directly from the photographs of the dorsal and ventral sides of well preserved specimens. There

is of course a question as to the number and the exact form of those on the pygidium, but I think the present restoration is fairly well justified by the specimens. As would be expected from the narrow axial lobe, the gnathobases of the coxopodites are short and small.

Summary on the Ventral Anatomy of Trilobites.

comparison of appendages of different genera.

Since the appendages of *Triarthrus, Cryptolithus, Neolenus, Calymene,* and *Ceraurus* are now known with some degree of completeness, those of *Isotelus* somewhat less fully, and something at least of those of *Ptychoparia, Kootenia,* and *Acidaspis,* these forms being representatives of all three orders and of seven different families of trilobites, it is of some interest to compare the homologous organs of each.

All in which the various appendages are preserved prove to have a pair of antennules, four pairs of biramous limbs on the cephalon, as many pairs of biramous limbs as there are segments in the thorax, and a variable number of pairs on the pygidium, with, in the case of *Neolenus* alone, a pair of tactile organs at the posterior end. Each limb, whether of cephalon, thorax, or pygidium, consists of a coxopodite, which is attached on its dorsal side to the ventral integument and supported by an appendifer, an exopodite, and an endopodite. The exopodite is setiferous, and the shaft is of variable form, consisting of one, two, or numerous segments. The endopodite always has six segments, the distal one armed with short movable spines.

Coxopodite.

The coxopodite does not correspond to the protopodite of higher Crustacea, the basipodite remaining as a separate entity. The inner end of the coxopodite is prolonged into a flattened or cylindrical process, which on the cephalon is more or less modified to assist in feeding, and so becomes a gnathobase or gnathite. The inner ends of the coxopodites of the thorax and pygidium are also prolonged in a similar fashion, but are generally somewhat less modified. These organs also undoubtedly assisted in carrying food forward to the mouth, but since they probably had other functions as well, I prefer to give them the more non-committal name of *endobases.*

In *Triarthrus* and *Neolenus* the endobases are flattened and taper somewhat toward the inward end. In *Isotelus, Calymene* and *Ceraurus,* they appear to have been cylindrical. In other genera they are not yet well known. In all cases, particularly about the mouth, they appear to have been directed somewhat backward from the point of attachment. As it is supposed that these organs moved freely forward and backward, the position in which they occur in the best preserved fossils should indicate something of their natural position when muscles were relaxed.

Cephalon.

Antennules.—Antennules are known in *Triarthrus, Cryptolithus, Neolenus,* and *Ptychoparia.* In all they are long, slender, and composed of numerous segments, which are spiniferous in *Neolenus,* and very probably so in the other genera.

In *Triarthrus, Neolenus,* and *Ptychoparia* they project ahead of the cephalon, emerging quite close together under the front of the glabella, one on either side of the median line. In *Cryptolithus* they turn backward beneath the body, but since only three or four specimens are known which retain them, it is possible that other specimens would show

that these organs were capable of being turned forward as well as backward. The proximal ends of the antennules being ball-like, it is probable, as Doctor Faxon has suggested to me, that these "feelers" had considerable freedom of motion. The antennules of *Triarthrus* are apparently somewhat less flexible than those of the other genera, and have a double curvature that is seen among the others only in *Ptychoparia.* The proximal end of an antennule in *Triarthrus* is a short cylindrical shaft, apparently articulating in a sort of ball-and-socket joint. The proximal end in the other genera is still unknown. The points of attachment in *Triarthrus* seem to be under the inner part of the second pair of glabellar furrows. In *Cryptolithus* they appear to be beside the anterior lobe of the glabella under what have long been known as the antennal pits. In the other genera the location is not definitely known, but in *Neolenus* it seems to be under the dorsal furrows near the anterior end of the glabella. Viewed from the under side, the point of attachment is probably always beside the middle or anterior part of the hypostoma, just behind the side wings.

Paired biramous appendages.—Behind the antennules all the appendages except those on the anal segment are biramous, consisting of a coxopodite with an inward-directed endobase and an outward-directed pair of branches, the exopodite above, and the six-jointed endopodite beneath. The basipodite really bears the exopodite, but the latter also touches the coxopodite. This structure has been seen in *Triarthrus, Cryptolithus, Neolenus, Kootenia, Calymene, Ceraurus,* and *Ptychoparia.* In *Triarthrus, Neolenus, Acidaspis, Ptychoparia,* and *Kootenia,* the appendages extend beyond the margins of the dorsal test. In *Cryptolithus* and *Isotelus* none (other than antennules) does so. In *Isotelus* and *Acidaspis* only the endopodites have been seen. In *Triarthrus, Calymene, Ceraurus,* and *Neolenus* there are four pairs of appendages behind the antennules. The other genera probably had the same number, but the full structure of the under part of their cephala is not known. In *Triarthrus* the endopodites of the cephalon are slender, the individual segments parallel-sided, the inner ones flattened, the outer ones cylindrical in section. They project slightly beyond the edge of the cephalon when fully extended, and each terminates in three small spines. In *Cryptolithus* the endopodites of the cephalon are longer than those of the thorax, but with the possible exception of the first pair, are bent backward at the carpopodite, and do not ordinarily project beyond the brim of the test. In *Neolenus* the endopodites of the cephalon are rather thick and wide, but are long, project forward, and extend beyond the brim. The individual segments are flattened, probably compressed oval in section. The terminal segment of each is furnished with three strong spines at its distal end. In *Calymene* and *Ceraurus* the endopodites appear to consist of slender segments which are oval or circular in section. In *Calymene* Walcott believed the three distal segments of the last endopodites of the head to be greatly enlarged, giving these appendages a paddle-like form similar to some of the appendages of eurypterids. The evidence for this does not seem to me to be good. The cephalic endopodites of *Isotelus* are entirely similar to those of the thorax, and are rather short, consisting of a series of short cylindrical segments which do not taper greatly toward the distal end. The endopodites of the cephalon of *Acidaspis, Kootenia,* and *Ptychoparia* are still unknown.

The exopodites of the cephalon seem in all known cases (*Triarthrus, Cryptolithus, Neolenus,* and *Ceraurus*) to be like those of the thorax. They point more directly forward in most cases, project beyond the margin of the head normally only in *Triarthrus,* and usually occupy the region under the cheeks (fixed and free).

The endobases of the coxopodites of the appendages of the cephalon probably in all cases

function as mouth-parts (gnathites), and are especially modified for this purpose in *Triarthrus,* being flattened, shoe-shaped in outline, and so arranged that they work over one another in a shearing fashion. While the more anterior of the coxopodites are attached in front of the posterior tip of the hypostoma, the gnathites of *Triarthrus* bend backward so that all are behind the hypostoma. In *Calymene* and *Ceraurus,* two or three pairs of the gnathites are back of the hypostoma, and one or more pairs may be beside or under the hypostoma. In these genera the mouth is probably in front of the tip of the upper lip. In *Isotelus,* the mouth seems to have been situated in the notch between the two branches of the hypostoma, and the gnathites of two or three pairs of the appendages probably worked under its forks. Since the length of the hypostoma differs in the various species of *Isotelus,* there would be a variable number of gnathites projecting under its forks, according to the species. In this genus the gnathites are of the same long form, cylindrical in cross-section, as the endobases of the thoracic segments, but each is bowed back considerably from the point of attachment.

The gnathites of *Neolenus* are like the endobases of the thorax, but broader. The great length of the hypostoma makes it probable that the mouth was far back and that some of the gnathites were in front of it. The gnathites of *Cryptolithus* are unknown. Professor Beecher in his drawing shows some fragments with toothed ends near the hypostoma, and it may be that they are inner ends of gnathites, but I see nothing to substantiate such an interpretation. If, as some suppose, *Cryptolithus* was a mud feeder, the gnathites were probably poorly developed. Of the gnathites of *Kootenia, Ptychoparia,* and *Acidaspis* also nothing is known.

Thorax.

In each genus there is a pair of appendages for each segment of the thorax. When the axial lobe is narrow, the endobases of the coxopodites are small and short (*Cryptolithus, Ceraurus, Calymene*). When the axial lobe is wide, the endobases are long and stout (*Isotelus, Triarthrus*). The exopodites always lie above and in front of the corresponding endopodites. In *Triarthrus* the two branches are of practically equal length. In *Cryptolithus* the exopodites are much the longer. In *Neolenus, Calymene, Ceraurus, Kootenia,* and *Ptychoparia,* the exopodites are shorter than the endopodites.

The exopodites in *Triarthrus* consist of a proximal shaft, succeeded by numerous short segments, and ending distally in a long, grooved, somewhat spatula-shaped segment. Along the anterior margin of the shaft there are many small spines. Along the posterior margin there are numerous flattened setæ which all lie in one plane and which seem to be more or less united to one another like the barbs of a feather. The setæ are short, not much longer than the width of one of the thoracic segments, and point backward and outward. In *Cryptolithus* the shaft does not seem to be made up of small segments, and is narrow, with a decided backward curve. The setæ are considerably longer and much more flattened than in *Triarthrus.* In *Calymene* the state of preservation does not allow a very full knowledge of the exopodites, but they appear to have a slender, unjointed shaft and short and delicate setæ. The coiled branches of the exopodites as described by Walcott seem to me to be only ordinary *Triarthrus*-like organs, and this, as I understand from Schuchert, was also the view of Beecher. In *Ceraurus* the exopodite seems to have been somewhat paddle-shaped, expanded at the distal end, and to have had rather thick, blade-like setæ.

The exopodite of *Neolenus* is decidedly leaf-like, and reminds one somewhat of the exites

of some of the phyllopods. The shaft is a broad unsegmented blade. The setæ are slender, delicate, flattened, and a little longer than the width of the shaft. The exopodites of this genus point forward all along the body. In *Kootenia* the exopodites are like those of *Neolenus,* but with a narrower shaft. The exopodites of *Ptychoparia* appear to be very much like those of *Triarthrus,* but the shaft is probably not segmented.

The endopodites of the thorax of *Triarthrus, Cryptolithus,* and *Acidaspis* show progressive modification from front to back in the broadening of the individual segments and the assumption by them of a triangular form. Not only do the individual segments become more triangular from front to back, but more of the segments of each endopodite become triangular. This modification has so far been seen in these three genera only. The individual segments, except the distal ones, seem to be flattened in all these genera. The distal end of the terminal segment of each endopodite of *Triarthrus* bears three small movable spines, and each of the segments usually bears three or more spines, located in sockets along the dorsal surface and at the anterior distal angle of each segment. The endopodite of *Cryptolithus* is bent backward at the carpopodite and this segment is always thickened. At the distal end of the dactylopodite there is a tuft of spines, the triangular segments have tufts of spines on their posterior corners, and there are groups of spines also in the neighborhood of the articulations.

The endopodites of *Ceraurus, Calymene,* and *Isotelus* are all relatively slender, the segments are parallel-sided, and there seems to be no particular modification from front to back of the thorax. The endopodites of *Isotelus* are short, the entire six segments of one being but little longer than the coxopodite of the same appendage. The segments of the endopodites of *Neolenus* are mostly short and wide, and at the distal end of the terminal segment there are three stout spines. In *Kootenia* the endopodites are long and very slender. The endopodites of *Ptychoparia* are too poorly preserved to show details, and those of the thorax of *Acidaspis* likewise reveal little structure, but they seem to have the triangular modification, and to turn back somewhat sharply at about the position of the carpopodite.

Pygidium.

Beecher showed that in *Triarthrus* there was a pair of appendages on the pygidium for every segment of which it is composed except the last or anal segment (protopygidium). Walcott has since shown that in *Neolenus* this segment bears a pair of cerci, and Beecher's drawings show that in his later studies he recognized a spinous plate, the possible bearer of cerci, on the anal segment of *Triarthrus.* The appendages of the anal segment have not yet been seen on other species of trilobites.

The appendages of the pygidium do not show any special modifications, but seem in all cases to be similar to those of the posterior part of the thorax. In *Cryptolithus* all the pygidial appendages are short and remain beneath the cover of the dorsal test, while in *Triarthrus* and *Neolenus* they extend behind it.

In the latter genus the endopodites of the pygidial appendages appear to be practically identical in form with those of the thorax, the individual segments being perhaps a little more nearly square in outline. Like those of the thorax, the segments of the pygidial endopodites bear numerous short spines. The caudal cerci are richly segmented, slightly flexible, spinous tactile organs. They are symmetrically placed, nearly straight when in their natural position, and make an angle of about 75° with one another. They appear to be

attached to a narrow rim-like plate which seems to fit in just ahead of the doublure of the pygidium, or perhaps over it.

In *Ceraurus, Calymene,* and *Isotelus,* the endopodites of the pygidium are similar to those of the thorax, but seemingly more slender, with less well developed coxopodites, and with, in the last-named genus, slender cylindrical segments. Exopodites are not known on the pygidia of any of these genera, but since they are present and like those of the thorax in *Triarthrus, Cryptolithus, Neolenus,* and *Ptychoparia,* there is little reason to think that they were absent in *Ceraurus* or *Calymene,* though there is some question about *Isotelus.*

The limbs are largest and longest on the anterior part of the thorax of a trilobite, and diminish regularly in length and strength to the posterior end of the pygidium. This regular gradation shows, as Beecher was the first to point out, that the growing point of the trilobites is, as in other arthropods, in front of the anal segment. New *free* segments are introduced into the thorax at the anterior end of the pygidium, and this has led to some confusion between the growing point and the place of introduction of free segments.

If a new segment were introduced at a moult in front of the pygidium, that segment would probably have less fully developed appendages than those adjacent to it, and so make a break in the regular succession. The condition of the appendages corroborates the evidence derived from the ontogeny of the pygidium, and proves that the new segments are introduced at the same growing point as in other Arthropoda.

Caudal Rami.

Bernard, who believed that the Crustacea had been derived through an *Apus*-like ancestor (1892, pp. 20, 85, 274), pointed out that four or less than four anal cirri were to be expected. Two well developed cirri and two rudimentary ones are present in *Apus,* and they are also to be found in other phyllopods and some isopods. It is, however, characteristic of the Crustacea as a whole to lack appendages on the anal segment. Caudal cirri (cerci) are much more freely developed in the hexapods than in the Crustacea, particularly in the more primitive orders, Palæodictyoptera, Apterygota, Archiptera, and Neuroptera. They are supposed, in this case, to be modified limbs, and therefore not homologous with the bristles on the anal segment of an annelid. Doctor W. M. Wheeler of the Bussey Institution has kindly allowed me to quote the following excerpt from a letter to me, as expressing the opinion of one who has made an extensive study of the embryology of insects:

> I would say that I have no doubt that the cerci of insects are directly inherited from the insect ancestors. They are always highly developed in the lower insects, and only absent or vestigial in a few of the most highly specialized orders such as the Hemiptera, Diptera, and Hymenoptera. I have further no doubt concerning their being originally ambulatory in function. They are certainly not developed independently in insects. Embryologically they arise precisely like the legs, and each cercus contains a diverticulum of the mesoblastic somite precisely as is the case with the ambulatory legs and mouth parts.

The "pygidial antennæ" seem to be as fully developed in *Neolenus* as in any of the other arthropods, and may suggest a common ancestry of the phyllopods, isopods, and hexapods, in the trilobites. They were doubtless tactile organs, and while the evidence is chiefly negative, it would seem that they proved useless, and were lost early in the phylogeny of this group. Possibly the use of the pygidium as a swimming organ proved destructive to them.

HOMOLOGY OF THE CEPHALIC APPENDAGES WITH THOSE OF OTHER CRUSTACEA.

The head of the typical crustacean bears five pairs of appendages, namely, the antennules, antennæ, mandibles, and first and second maxillæ, or, as they are more properly called, the maxillulæ and maxillæ.

As Beecher has pointed out, the "antennæ" of the trilobites, on account of their pre-oral position and invariably uniramous character, are quite certainly to be correlated with the antennules.

The second pair of appendages, the first pair of biramous ones, Beecher homologized with the antennæ of other crustaceans, and that homology has been generally accepted, though Kingsley (1897) suggested that it was possible that no representatives of the true antennæ were present.

In preparing the restorations in the present study, the greatest difficulty has been to adjust the organs about the mouth. In *Triarthrus,* numerous specimens show that without question there are four pairs of gnathites back of the hypostoma, and that all four belong to the cephalon. In forms with a long hypostoma, however, there was no room on the cephalon for the attachment of four pairs of gnathites, neither were there enough appendifers to supply the requisite fulcra. At first I supposed I had solved the difficulty by assuming the mouth to be in front of the posterior tip of the hypostoma, as it really is in *Ceraurus* and *Calymene,* and allowing the gnathites to play under the hypostoma as Walcott (1912) has shown that they do in *Marrella.* Finally, when I came to study in greater detail the slices of *Calymene* and *Ceraurus,* they seemed to show that the anterior one or two pairs of appendages became degenerate and under-developed. This was probably a specialization due to the great development of the hypostoma in trilobites, that organ being much more prominent in this than in any other group. As the hypostoma lengthened to accommodate the increasing size of sub-glabellar organs (stomach, heart, etc.), the mouth migrated backward, leaving the anterior appendages ahead of it, with their gnathobases, at least, functionless. That such migration has taken place, even in *Triarthrus,* is shown by the fact that the points of articulation of the first biramous appendages are pre-oral, and it is more obviously true of *Ceraurus.* Correlated with the weakening of the appendages on the lower surface is the loss of glabellar furrows on the upper surface. The glabellar furrows mark lines of infolding of the test to form the appendifers and other rugosities for the attachment of tendons and muscles. It is conceivable that this migration backward of the mouth began very early in the history of the race, and that even before Cambrian times, the antennæ, probably originally biramous appendages like those on the remainder of the body, had dwindled away and become lost. If this is the case, then the first pair of biramous appendages of *Triarthrus* would be mandibles, the second pair maxillulæ, and the third pair maxillæ.

There remain the last pair of cephalic appendages, and they bring up the whole head problem of the trilobites. Beecher has stated (1897 A, p. 96) his conviction that the head of the trilobite is made up of five segments, representing the third, fourth, fifth, sixth, and seventh neuromeres of the theoretical crustacean. As a matter of fact, he really made up the head of seven segments, since he stated that the first neuromere was represented by the hypostoma and the second by the epistoma and free cheeks.

Jaekel (1901, p. 157) nearly agreed with Beecher, but made eight segments, as he saw

five segments in the glabella of certain trilobites. In his table (p. 165) he has listed the segments with their appendages as follows: 1. Acron, with hypostoma; 2, rostrum (epistoma), with free cheeks; 3, first frontal lobe, with (?) antennules; 4, second frontal lobe, with antennæ; 5, mandibles; 6, first, or pre-maxillæ; 7, second maxillæ; 8, occipital segment with maxillipeds.

Jaekel refused to believe that the antennæ of trilobites were really entirely simple, and so homologized them with the antennæ and not the antennules of other Crustacea. In this he was obviously incorrect, but it accounts for his homology of the remainder of the cephalic appendages.

It is, at present, impossible to demonstrate the actual number of somites in the cephalon of the trilobite, but I believe that Beecher was correct in holding that the glabella was composed of four segments. There are, it is true, a number of trilobites (Mesonacidæ, Paradoxidæ, Cheiruridæ, etc.) which show distinctly four pairs of glabellar furrows, indicating five segments in the glabella. This is, however, probably due to a secondary division of the first lobe.

The correspondence of the five segments on the dorsal side with the five pairs of appendages makes it unlikely that any pair of limbs has been lost. The condition in *Marrella,* where a trilobite-like cephalon bears five pairs of appendages, the second pair of which are tactile antennæ, is favorable to the above interpretation. In spite of the apparent degeneration of the first two pairs of appendages in *Calymene,* no limbs are actually missing, and if some are dropped out in the later trilobites it would not affect the homology of those now known. I therefore agree with Beecher in homologizing the appendages, pair for pair, with those of the higher Crustacea.

FUNCTIONS OF THE APPENDAGES.

Antennules.

The antennules were obviously tactile organs, probably freely movable in most trilobites, but in the case of *Triarthrus* perhaps rather rigid, judging from the great numbers of specimens which show the characteristic sigmoid curve made familiar by Professor Beecher's restoration. The proximal end of the shaft of each antennule of *Triarthrus* is hemispheric and doubtless fitted into a socket, thus suggesting great mobility of the whole organ. In spite of this, I have seen no specimens in which they did not turn in toward each other and cross the anterior margin very near the median line. In front of the margin, various specimens show evidence of flexibility, but from the proximal end to the margin the position is the same in all specimens.

In all the few specimens of *Cryptolithus* retaining the antennules, these organs are turned directly backward, but it is entirely within the range of probabilities that while its burrowing habits made this the more usual position, the animal had the power of turning them around to the front when they could be used to advantage in that direction.

Exopodites.

It has been the opinion of most observers that the exopodites of trilobites were swimming organs, while others have thought that they functioned also in aërating the blood. To the present writer it seems probable that the chief function was that of acting as gills, for which the numerous thin, flattened or blade-like setæ are particularly adapted. That

they were also used in swimming is of course possible, but that was not their chief function. It should be remembered that the exopodites are always found dorsal to or above the endopodites, and in a horizontal plane. For use in swimming it would have been necessary to rotate each exopodite into a plane approximately perpendicular to or at least making a considerable angle with the dorsal test. In this position, the exopodites would have been thrust down between the endopodites, and one would expect to find some specimens in which a part at least of the exopodites were ventral to the endopodites. Specimens in this condition have not yet been seen among the fossils. To avoid having the exopodites and endopodites intermingled in this way, the animal would have to bring all the endopodites together along the axial line in a plane approximately perpendicular to the dorsal test, in which case the exopodites would be free to act as swimming organs. The fact that the setæ of an exopodite stay together like the barbs on a feather would of course tend to strengthen the idea that the exopodites could be used in swimming, but that is not the only possible explanation of this condition. The union of the basipodite and exopodite shows that the two branches of the appendage acted together. Every movement of one affected the other, and the motion of the endopodites in either swimming or crawling produced a movement of the exopodites which helped to keep up a circulation of water, thus insuring a constant supply of oxygen.

Although *Neolenus* is usually accounted a less primitive form than *Ptychoparia* or *Triarthrus,* it has much the most primitive type of exopodite yet known. It would appear that the exopodites were originally broad, thin, simple lamellæ, which became broken up, on the posterior side, into fine cylindrical setæ. As development progressed, more and more of the original lamella was broken up until there remained only the anterior margin, which became thickened and strengthened to support the delicate filaments. The setæ in turn became modified from their original simple cylindrical shape to form the wide, thin, blade-like filaments of *Cryptolithus* and *Ceraurus.*

Another possible use of the exopodites is suggested by the action of some of the barnacles, which use similar organs as nets in gathering food and the endopodites as rakes which take off the particles and convey them to the mouth. The exopodites of the trilobite might well set up currents which would direct food into the median groove, where it could be carried forward to the mouth.

Endopodites.

The endopodites were undoubtedly used for crawling; in some trilobites, probably most of them, for swimming; in the case of *Cryptolithus,* and probably others, for burrowing; and probably in all for gathering food, in which function the numerous spines with which they are arrayed doubtless assisted.

Various trails have been ascribed to the action of trilobites, and many of them doubtless were made by those animals (see especially Walcott, 1918). Some of these trails seem to indicate that in crawling the animal rested on the greater part of each endopodite, while others, notably the *Protichnites* recently interpreted by Walcott (1912 B, p. 275, pl. 47), seem to have touched only the spinous tips of the dactylopodites to the substratum. The question of the tracks, trails, and burrows which have been ascribed to trilobites is discussed briefly on a later page, but can not be taken up fully, as it would require another monograph to treat of them satisfactorily.

The flattened, more or less triangular segments of the endopodites of the posterior part

of the thorax and pygidium in *Triarthrus, Cryptolithus,* and *Acidaspis* probably show an adaptation of the endopodites of the posterior part of the body both as more efficient pushing organs and as better swimming legs. The fact that these segments are pointed below enabled them to get a better grip on whatever they were crawling over, and the flattening allowed a much greater surface to be opposed to the water in swimming. In this connection it might be stated that it seems very probable that the trilobites with large pygidia at least, perhaps all trilobites, had longitudinal muscles which allowed them to swim by an up and down motion of the fin-like posterior shield, the pygidium acting like the caudal fin of a squid. Such a use would explain the function of the large, nearly flat pygidia seen in so many of the trilobites beginning with the Middle Cambrian, and of those with wide concave borders. It should be noted here that it is in trilobites like *Isotelus,* with pygidia particularly adapted to this method of swimming, that the endopodites are most feebly developed, and show no flattening or modification as swimming organs.

The relatively strong, curved, bristle-studded endopodites of *Cryptolithus,* combined with its shovel-shaped cephalon, indicate *Limulus*-like burrowing habits for the animal, and the mud-filled casts of its intestine corroborate this view. That it was not, however, entirely a mud groveller is indicated by its widespread distribution in middle Ordovician times.

Use of the Pygidium in Swimming.

The idea that the use of the pygidium as a swimming organ is a possible explanation of that caudalization which is so characteristic of trilobites has not been developed so far as its merits seem to deserve. Two principal uses for a large pygidium of course occur to one: either it might form a sort of operculum to complete the protection when the trilobite was enrolled, or it might serve as a swimming organ. That the former was one of its important functions is shown by the nicety with which the cephalon and pygidium are adapted to one another in such families as the Agnostidæ, Asaphidæ, Phacopidæ, and others. That a large pygidium is not essential to perfect protection on enrollment is shown by an equally perfect adjustment of the two shields in some families with small pygidia, notably the Harpedidæ and Cheiruridæ. That the large pygidial shields are not for protective purposes only is also shown by those forms with large pygidia which are not adjusted to the conformation of the cephalon, as in the Goldiidæ and Lichadidæ. It is evident that a large pygidium, while useful to complete protection on enrollment, is not essential.

It would probably be impossible to demonstrate that the trilobites used the pygidium in swimming. The following facts may, however, be brought forward as indicating that they probably did so use them.

1. The appendages, both exopodites and endopodites, are relatively feebly developed as swimming organs. This has been discussed above, and need not be repeated. It must in fairness be observed, however, that many modern Crustacea get about very well with limbs no better adapted for swimming than those of the trilobites.

2. The articulations of the thoracic segments with each other and with the two shields are such as to allow the pygidium to swing through an arc of at least 270°, that is, from a position above the body and at right angles to it, around to the plane of the bottom of the cephalon. Specimens are occasionally found in which the thorax and pygidium are so flexed that the latter shield stands straight above the body. A well preserved *Dipleura* in this position is on exhibition in the Museum of Comparative Zoology, and Mr. Narraway and I have figured a *Bumastus milleri* in the same attitude (Ann. Carnegie Mus., vol. 4, 1908, pl. 62, fig. 3).

3. What little can be learned of the musculature (see under musculature, seq.) indicates that the trilobites had powerful extensor and flexor muscles, such as would be required for this method of swimming. It may be objected that the longitudinal muscles were too small to permit the use of a caudal fin. In the lobster, where this method of progression is most highly developed, there is a large mass of muscular tissue which nearly fills the posterior segments. Trilobites have not usually been thought of as powerfully muscled, but it may be noted that in many cases broad axial lobes accompany large pygidia. As the chief digestive region appears to have been at the anterior end, and other organs are not largely developed, it seems probable that the great enlargment of the axial lobe was to accommodate the increased muscles necessary to properly operate the pygidium. It may be noted that in all these genera the axial lobe of the pygidium is either short or narrow.

4. The geological history of the rise of caudalization favors this view. With the exception of the Agnostidæ and Eodiscidæ, all Lower Cambrian trilobites had small pygidia, and the same is true of those of the Middle Cambrian of the Atlantic realm (except for the *Dorypyge* of Bornholm). In Pacific seas, however, large-tailed trilobites of the families Oryctocephalidæ, Bathyuridæ, and Asaphidæ then began to be fairly common, though making up but a small part of the total fauna of trilobites. In the Upper Cambrian of the Atlantic province the Agnostidæ were the sole representatives of the isopygous trilobites, while in the Pacific still another family, the Dikelocephalidæ, was added to those previously existing.

With the Ordovician, caudalization reached its climax and the fashion swept all over the world. It is shown not so much in the proportion of families with large pygidia, as in the very great development of the particular trilobites so equipped. Asaphidæ and Illænidæ were then dominant, and the Proëtidæ, Cyclopygidæ, Goldiidæ, and Lichadidæ had begun their existence. A similar story is told by the Silurian record, except that the burden of the Asaphidæ has been transferred to the Lichadidæ and Goldiidæ. All the really old (Cambrian) families of trilobites with small pygidia had now disappeared. In the general dwindling of the subclass through the Devonian and later Palæozoic, the few surviving species with small pygidia were the first to go, and the proëtids with large abdominal shields the last.

The explanation of this history is probably to be found in the rise of the predatory cephalopods and fishes, the natural enemies of the trilobites, against whom they could have no other protection than their agility in escaping. While the records at present known carry the fishes back only so far as the Ordovician (fishes may have arisen in fresh waters and have gone to sea in a limited way in the Ordovician and more so in Silurian time) and the cephalopods to the Upper Cambrian, the rise of the latter must have begun at an earlier date, and it is probably no more than fair to conjecture that the attempt to escape swimming enemies caused an increase in the swimming powers of the trilobites themselves. At any rate, the time of the great development of the straight cephalopods coincided with the time of greatest development of caudalization; both were initiated in the Pacific realm, and both spread throughout the marine world during the middle Ordovician. And since, in the asaphids, a decrease in swimming power of the appendages accompanied the increase in the size of the pygidium, it seems probable that the swimming function of the one had been transferred to the other. A high-speed, erratic motion which could be produced by the sudden flap of a pygidium would be of more service in escape than any amount of steady swiftness produced by the oar-like appendages of an animal of the shape of a trilobite.

Coxopodites.

The primary function of the endobases of the coxopodites was doubtless the gathering, preparation, and carrying of food to the mouth. Although the endobases of opposite sides could not in all cases meet one another, they were probably spinose or setiferous and could readily pass food from any part of the axial groove forward to the mouth, and also send it in currents of water. The endobases of the cephalic coxopodites were probably modified as gnathites in all cases, but little is known of them except in *Triarthrus,* where they were flattened and worked over one another so as to make excellent shears for slicing up food, either animal or vegetable. In some cases the proximal ends of opposed gnathites were toothed so as to act as jaws, but a great deal still remains to be learned about the oral organs of all species.

The writer has suggested (1910, p. 131) that a secondary function of the endobases of the thorax of *Isotelus* and probably other trilobites with wide axial lobes was that of locomotion. In *Isotelus* the endobases of the thorax are greatly over-developed, each being much stouter and nearly as long as the corresponding endopodite, and the explanation seemed to me to lie in the locomotor or crawling use of these organs instead of the endopodites. Certain trails which I figured seemed to support this view.

POSITION OF THE APPENDAGES IN LIFE.

In almost all the specimens so far recovered the appendages are either flattened by pressure or lie with their flat surfaces in or very near the plane of stratification of the sediment. This flattening is extreme in *Neolenus, Ptychoparia,* and *Kootenia,* moderate in *Triarthrus* and *Cryptolithus,* and apparently slight or not effective in *Isotelus, Ceraurus,* and *Calymene.* These last are, however, from the conditions of preservation, least available for study.

In Part IV, attention is called to a specimen of *Triarthrus* (No. 222) in which some of the endopodites are imbedded nearly at right angles to the stratification of the shale. This specimen is especially valuable because it shows that the appendages in the average specimen of *Triarthrus* have suffered very little compression, and it also suggests the probable position of the endopodites when used for crawling.

In considering the position of the appendages in life, one must always remember one great outstanding feature of trilobites, the thinness and flexibility of the ventral membrane. The appendages were not inserted in any rigid test but were held only by muscular and connective tissue. Hence we must premise for them great freedom of motion, and also relatively little power. The rigid appendifers, and the supporting apodemes discovered by Beecher, supplied fulcra against which they could push, but their attachment to these was rather loose.

Considering, first, the position of the appendages in crawling, it appears that different trilobites used their appendages in different ways. *Neolenus* had compact stocky legs, which allowed little play of one segment on another, as is shown by the wide joints at right angles to the axis of the segment. Such limbs were stiff enough to support the body when the animal was crawling beneath the water, where of course it weighed but little. That such a crawling attitude was adopted by trilobites has been shown by Walcott in his explanation of the trails known as *Protichnites* (1912 B, p. 278). Many trilobites probably crawled in

this way, on the tips of the toes, so to speak. In such the limbs would probably extend downward and outward, with the flattened sides vertical.

The limb of *Triarthrus,* however, is of another type. The endopodites are long, slender, flexibly jointed, the whole endopodite probably too flexible to be used as a unit as a leg must be in walking on the "toes." The proximal segments of the thoracic and pygidial endopodites are, however, triangular instead of straight-sided, and, the spine-bearing apex of the triangle being ventral, it enabled the endopodites to get a grip on the bottom and thus push the animal forward. This method of progression was more clumsy and less rapid than that of *Neolenus,* but it sufficed. The natural position of the endopodite when used in this way would seem to be with the flattened sides of the segments standing at an angle of 30° to 45° with the vertical, thus allowing a good purchase on the bottom and at the same time offering the minimum resistance to the water when moving the appendages forward.

Isotelus has endopodites different from those of either *Neolenus* or *Triarthrus.* They are composed of cylindrical segments, the joints indicating a certain amount of flexibility. Since there is no method by which the segments may get a purchase on the bottom other than by pushing with the distal ends, it would seem at first thought that *Isotelus,* like *Neolenus,* crawled on its "toes." The endopodites of *Isotelus* are however, short and feeble when compared with the size of the test, while the endobases of the coxopodites are extraordinarily developed. These facts, together with certain trails, strongly suggest the use of the coxopodites as the primary ambulatory organs, the endopodites probably assisting. In this event, the position of the endopodites and coxopodites would be downward, both outward and inward from the point of attachment, and the motion both backward and forward. The fact that in the specimens as preserved the coxopodites point backward and the endopodites forward indicates that the limb as a whole swung on a pivot at the appendifer. It is of course natural to suggest that the coxopodites and endopodites of all the trilobites with wide axial lobes, *Nileus, Bumastus, Homalonotus,* etc., were developed in this same way.

Cryptolithus presents still another and very peculiar development of the endopodites where ability to get purchase on the sea floor is obtained by a stout limb of slight flexibility, bowed and turned backward in the middle, where an enlarged segment insures stiffness. The segments are flattened, and since the greatest strength when used in pushing and crawling is in the long axis of the oval section of the flattened limb, it seems probable that these limbs did not hang directly down, with their sides vertical, but that their position in life was very much the same as that in which they are preserved as fossils. By moving these bowed legs forward and backward in a plane at a small angle to the surface of the body, a powerful pushing impetus could be obtained. They may, however, have occupied much the same position as do those of *Limulus.*

In the case of the endopodites, therefore, it is necessary to study the structure and probable method of their use in each individual genus before suggesting what was the probable position in life. In the act of swimming, the position was probably more uniform. When the endopodites were used in swimming, as they undoubtedly could be with more or less effect in all the trilobites now known, those with flattened surfaces probably had them at such an angle as to give the best push against the water on the back stroke, while on the forward stroke the appendage would be turned so that the thin edge opposed the water. The great flexibility of attachment would certainly permit this, though unfortunately nothing

is as yet known of the musculature. The coxopodites of course had less freedom of movement in this respect, and probably could not turn their faces. For this reason, it seems to me likely that those coxopodites which are compressed did not stand with their flattened faces vertical, but in a position which was nearly horizontal or at least not more than 45° from the horizontal. If the flattened faces were vertical, they would be in constant opposition to the water during forward movements and would be of no use in setting up currents of water toward the mouth, as every back stroke would reverse the motion.

The position of the exopodites in life seems to have been rather uniform in all the genera now known. I have set forth on a previous page my reasons for thinking that they took little part in swimming, and I look upon them as being, in effect, leaf-gills. It seems probable that in all genera the exopodites were held rather close to the test, the shaft more or less rigid, the filamentous setæ gracefully pendent, but pendent as a sheet and not individually, there having been some method by which adjoining setæ were connected laterally. Free contact with the water was thus obtained without the mingling of endopodites and exopodites which would have been so disastrous to progression.

PART II.

STRUCTURE AND HABITS OF TRILOBITES.

Internal Organs and Muscles.

Granting that the trilobite is a simple, generalized, ancient crustacean, it appears justifiable to attribute to it such internal organs as seem, from a study of comparative anatomy, to be primitive.

The alimentary canal would be expected to be straight and simple, curving downward to the mouth, and should be composed of three portions, stomodæum, mesenteron, and proctodæum, the first and last with chitinous lining. In modern Crustacea, muscle-bands run from the gut to part of the adjacent body wall, so that scars of attachment of these muscles may be sought. At the anterior end of the stomodæum, they are usually especially strong. From the mesenteron there might be pouch-like or tubular outgrowths.

The heart would probably be long and tubular, with a pair of ostia for each somite.

In modern Crustacea, the chief organs of renal excretion are two pairs of glands in the head, one lying at the base of the antennæ and one at the base of the maxillæ. Only one pair is functional at a time, but these are supposed to be survivors of a series of segmentally arranged organs, so that there might be a pair to each somite of a trilobite.

The nervous system might be expected to consist of a supraœsophageal "brain," comprising at least two pairs of ganglionic centers, and a double ventral chain of ganglia with a ladder-like arrangement.

Besides these organs, a variety of glands of special function might be predicted.

Reproductive organs probably should occur in pairs, and more than one pair is to be expected. There is little to indicate the probable location of the genital openings, but they may have been located all along the body back of the cephalon.

It may be profitable to summarize present knowledge of such traces of these organs as have been found in the fossils, if only to point out what should be sought.

ALIMENTARY CANAL.

Beyrich (1846, p. 30) first called attention to the alimentary canal of a trilobite, (*Cryptolithus goldfussi,*) and Barrande (1852, p. 229) confirmed his observations. A number of specimens of this species have been found which show a straight cylindrical tube or its filling, extending from the glabella back nearly to the posterior end of the pygidium. It lies directly under the median line of the axial lobe, and less than its own diameter beneath the dorsal test. At the anterior end it apparently enlarges to occupy the greater part of the space between the glabella and the hypostoma, but was said by the early observers to extend only a little over halfway to the front. Beyrich thought the position of the median tubercle indicated the location of the anterior end.

Walcott (1881, p. 200) stated that in his experience in cutting sections of trilobites it was a very rare occurrence to find traces of the alimentary canal. The visceral cavity was usually filled with crystalline calcite and all vestiges of organs obliterated. There were, however, some slices which showed a dark spot under the axial lobe, which probably represented the canal. In his restoration he showed it as of practically uniform diameter throughout, and extending but slightly in front of the mouth.

Jaekel (1901, p. 168, fig. 28) has produced a very different restoration. His discussion of this point seems so good, and has been so completely overlooked, that I will append a slightly abridged version of a translation made some years ago for Professor Beecher. The idea was, however, not original with Jaekel, as it was suggested by Bernard (1894, p. 417), but not worked out in detail.

While considering the problem as to what organ could have lain beneath the glabella of the trilobite, and while studying the organization of living Crustacea for the purpose of comparison, I found in the collections of the Geological Institute preparations of *Limulus* which seemed to me to directly solve the entire question.

From the mouth, which lies at about the middle of the head shield, the œsophagus bends forward, swells out at the frontal margin of the animal at a sharp upward bend in order to take a straight course backward after the formation of an enlarged stomach. Still within the head shield there branch out from each side of the canal two small vessels which pass over into the richly branched mass of liver lying under the broad lateral parts of the head shield. After seeing this specimen, I no longer had the least doubt that the head shield of the trilobites is to be interpreted in a similar manner. The position of the hypostoma and gnathopods makes it necessary to assume that the position of the mouth of the trilobite lay pretty far back. If, therefore, this depends upon the secondary ventral deflection of the oral region, as seems to be the case, then it is *a priori* probable that the anterior part of the canal has also shared in this ventral inflection.

The posterior part of the canal in the region of the segmented thorax and pygidium is comparatively narrow, as shown long ago by Beyrich; he represents only a thin tube which shows no swellings whatever, and such are usually missing in Arthropoda.

As the glabella of most trilobites is regularly convex, there must lie beneath it an organ running from front to back, which presses the bases of the cephalic legs away from each other and down from the dorsal test. An organ so extensive and unpaired, running thus from front to back, can, among the Arthropoda, be regarded only as an alimentary canal, for the swellings of the cephalic ganglia and the heart are by far too small to produce such striking elevations on the front and upper surface of the glabella. The canal might then have consisted of a gizzard belonging to the œsophagus, and a stomach proper or main digestive canal.

. . . Among the trilobites there are two pairs of vessels on both sides of the glabella which have precisely the same position with reference to the supposed course of the alimentary canal as the ducts of the hepatic lobes in *Limulus*. One observes in numerous trilobites, although in different degrees of clearness and under various modifications, a dendritic marking of the inner surface of the cheeks which takes its rise at the lateral margins of the glabella and spreads thence like a bush over the entire surface of the cheeks. Exactly the same position is taken by the richly branched hepatic lobes of *Limulus* on the lower surface of the head shield; a fact of special weight in favor of the homology and similar significance of the two phenomena, is that in the trilobites also, the anterior of the two main ducts is the larger, the posterior the smaller. The striking similarity of the two structures is shown by a comparison of the head shield of *Eurycare* [*Elyx*] from the Cambrian of Sweden, in which the course of the canals is shown with remarkable clearness [with those of *Limulus*].

I have been able to convince myself that the existence of the two canals on each side is also the rule in other genera, even though the posterior pair is frequently but feebly developed or completely obscured by the anterior pair. In *Dionide formosa*, for example, I find only the anterior pair, which is very large and divided into two principal branches. From all these considerations it seems to me no longer doubtful that the median elevation was caused by the stomach and gizzard, and that the cheeks have principally served to cover the hepatic appendages of the alimentary canal.

The cause of the incomplete development of the glabellar lobes lies, hence, in the intrusion of the alimentary canal, and it makes naturally the most effect where the gizzard spreads out and bends into the stomach. This spot lies behind the frontal lobe, which is hence increased in size according as the stomach increases in size; in this way not only the foremost segments of the glabella become enlarged, but also the following ones more or less pressed aside. This process is easily followed phylogenetically and ontogenetically.

From the latter point of view, the development of *Paradoxides* is very instructive. In a head shield 2.5 mm. long the whole anterior part of the glabella is broadened, but the five pairs of lateral impressions are clearly marked and the six segments of the head bounded by them are all of about the same size. In a head shield about 13 mm. long, the foremost segment is very much increased in size, the jaw lobes pressed still further apart; in adult forms both anterior segments are combined into the frontal swellings of the glabella. In other groups this process proceeds phylogenetically still further, so that among the Phacopidæ and in *Trinucleus*, behind the frontal swelling of the glabella only the last cephalic segment retains a certain independence. The frontal lobe is thus no definite part, although it is as a rule composed of the mesotergites of the first two cranidial segments.

This idea of an enlarged mesenteron certainly has much to commend it, and such actual evidence as exists seems in favor of rather than against it. The strongest, firmest, best-protected place in the whole body of the trilobite is the cavity between the vaulted glabella and the hypostoma. As Jaekel has said, it is far too large a cavity for the brain, larger than would seem to be required for a heart, and what else could be there but a stomach? As has already been pointed out, Beyrich and Barrande found a pear-shaped enlargement of the alimentary canal under the glabella of *Cryptolithus*. Longitudinal sections through the glabella of *Calymene* and *Ceraurus* practically always show the cavity there filled with clear crystalline calcite. One actual specimen of *Ceraurus* (Walcott 1881, pl. 4, fig. 1) shows the cavity between the glabella and hypostoma entirely empty. The vacant spaces in these two classes of specimens do not, however, necessarily mean anything more than imperfect preservation.

Fig. 21.—Transverse slice through *Ceraurus pleurexanthemus,* to show the dorsal sheath above the abdominal cavity. Specimen 118. Traced from a photographic enlargement. ×4.

Fig. 22.—Transverse section through the cephalon of *Ceraurus pleurexanthemus,* showing the abdominal sheath and the large mud-filled alimentary canal (clear white). Traced from a photographic enlargement. Specimen 97. ×3.3.

Fig. 23.—Transverse section of the thorax of *Calymene senaria,* showing the large size of the mud-filled alimentary canal (clear white). Traced from a photographic enlargement. One appendifer (also clear white) is shown. Specimen 153. ×3.3.

Ceraurus pleurexanthemus.

This species is taken up first, as it is the one shown in Walcott's often-copied figure (1881, pl. 4, fig. 6). It is to be feared that too many have looked at this figure without reading the accompanying explanation, and have taken it for a copy of an actual specimen and not a mere diagram, which it admittedly is. The evidence on which it is based is comprised in eight transverse slices, one through the glabella and seven through the thorax. Three of these have been figured by Walcott: No. 27, 1881, pl. 3, fig. 7; No. 13, 1881, pl. 2, fig. 3, 1918, pl. 26, fig. 14; No. 202, 1918, pl. 27, fig. 8. In all, as can be seen by reference to the figures, the canal is partially collapsed, and is much larger than is indicated in Walcott's restoration. The other sections bear out the testimony of those figured. One of these figured specimens (No. 27) and another figured herewith (No. 118, see fig. 21) show an exceedingly interesting structure which has previously escaped notice. The body cavity seems to have had, in this region at least, a chitinous sheath on the dorsal side. As shown especially in figure 21, this sheath impinges dorsally and laterally against the axial lobe and thus furnishes a special protection for the soft organs beneath, probably protecting them from the strain of the dorsal muscles.

While there is no way in which the location of these sections in the thorax can be positively determined, it is probable that they came from the anterior end. In sections further back, supposed to be in the posterior region of the mesenteron, no sheath is shown, but the canal is nearly if not quite as large in relation to the size of the axial lobe.

The single section through the glabella (specimen 97) is of course important and fortunately well preserved (fig. 22). It shows the dorsal sheath pressed against the inner surface of the axial lobe along its middle portion, but diverging from it at the sides. The section of the canal is oval, nearly twice as wide as high, but it is obviously somewhat depressed. The original canal evidently filled nearly the whole of the dorsal part of the glabella in this particular region. Unfortunately, the connection with the mouth is not shown, and the form of the hypostoma indicates that the section cut the glabella diagonally, either in the anterior or posterior part, probably the latter. In all these cases it should be remembered that the specimens were found lying on their backs, and the canal has fallen in (dorsally) since death.

The sections show that in *Ceraurus pleurexanthemus* the anterior part of the alimentary canal was large, filling the part of the glabella below the heart; that the body cavity was provided with a chitinous dorsal sheath extending back into the thorax; and that the posterior portion of the mesenteron was likewise large and oval in section. Since the alimentary canal must be connected with the mouth and anus, some such restoration as that of Jaekel is indicated. No chitinous lining of the stomodæum or proctodæum was found, but it is not certain that any of the sections cut either of those regions.

Calymene senaria.

Ten transverse sections and one longitudinal slice show the form of the alimentary canal in *Calymene*. One of these has been figured by Walcott (1881, pl. 1, fig. 9) but without showing the organ in question.

The only section cutting the cephalon which shows any trace of the canal is a longitudinal one (No. 141), which is not very satisfactory. It has a large, nearly circular, opaque spot under the anterior part of the glabella which may or may not represent a section across the anterior end of the mesenteron. Three sections (No. 9, 115, 143) show the dorsal sheath, the latter having the mud-filled canal beneath it. The sheath arches across the axial lobe as in *Ceraurus*, leaving room for the dorsal muscles at the sides and above it. In this region the canal is large and oval in section. Six slices cut the mesenteron behind the abdominal sheath (Nos. 39, 117, 148, 153, 62, 65) (see fig. 23). In the first four of these it is oval in section and large, but not so large as in No. 143. In the last two, it is small and circular in section, from which it is inferred that the canal tapers posteriorly.

Cryptolithus goldfussi (Barrande).

Illustrated: Beyrich, Untersuch. über Trilobiten, Berlin, 1846, pl. 4, fig. 1c.—Barrande, Syst. Sil. Bohème, vol. 1, 1852, pl. 30, figs. 38, 39.

Both Beyrich and Barrande have shown that from the posterior end of the axial lobe to the neck-ring on the cephalon, the alimentary canal in *Cryptolithus* has a nearly uniform diameter of less than half the width of the axial lobe. In front of the neck-ring, it enlarges, and while its original describers state that it extends only about halfway to the front of

the glabella, Barrande's figure 39 shows it extending quite to the front, and his figure 38 shows it fully two thirds of the distance to the anterior end, as does Beyrich's figure of 1846.

The Museum of Comparative Zoology contains a single specimen of this species from Wesela, Bohemia, which shows the course of the canal from the middle of the pygidium to the anterior part of the glabella. The enlargement appears to begin about halfway to the front of the glabella and to be greatest at the anterior end. At the anterior end of the glabella, the anterior end of the thorax, and the posterior end of the pygidium, the canal is still packed full of a material somewhat darker in appearance than the matrix, while the remainder of it is open. A well defined constriction is present under the middle of the next to the last thoracic segment, but whether this is accidental or whether it indicates the point where the mesenteron discharges into the proctodæum can not be determined. The inside of the canal has somewhat of a lustre and there are three conical projections into it on the median ventral line, a very small one in front of the neck furrow, a larger one under the anterior part of the second segment, and a third between the fourth and fifth segments.

Summary.

The specimens of *Cryptolithus* from Bohemia and of *Ceraurus* and *Calymene* from New York seem to substantiate the claim of Bernard and Jaekel that at the anterior end

Fig. 24.—Longitudinal section of *Ceraurus pleurexanthemus,* showing the probable outline of the alimentary canal and the heart above it. A restoration based on the slices described above.

of the canal there was an enlarged organ which occupied the greater part of the cavity of the glabella. It appears that it extended into the thorax, and that above it and the heart was a chitinous dorsal sheath. Behind the enlarged portion, the mesenteron appears to have been of practically uniform diameter in *Cryptolithus,* but to have tapered posteriorly in *Ceraurus* and *Calymene.* The proctodæum can not yet be differentiated from the mesenteron, and only in *Cryptolithus* has the posterior portion of the alimentary canal been seen. It is, there, merely a continuation of the mesenteron. The stomodæum likewise has not been identified, but was probably a short gullet leading up from the mouth into the enlarged digestive cavity.

The principle of the enlargement of the latter and its influence on the dorsal shell once established, the significance of different types of glabellæ becomes apparent. It will be remembered that the glabella of the protaspis of most trilobites is narrow, and that the same is true of the glabellæ of most ancient and all primitive trilobites. The free-swimming larvæ and the free-swimming ancestors of the trilobites were probably strictly carnivorous, lived on concentrated food, and needed but a small digestive tract. As the animals "discovered the ocean bottom" and began to be omnivorous or herbivorous, larger stomachs were required, and so in the later and more specialized trilobites the glabella became expanded laterally or dorsally, or both, to meet the requirement for more space, until, in such Devonian genera as *Phacops,* the cephalon was nearly all glabella.

GASTRIC GLANDS.

Jaekel's suggestion, quoted above, that the so called "nervures" seen on the under surfaces of the heads of some trilobites are really glands for the secretion of digestive juices, is at least worthy of consideration. Moberg, however (1902, p. 299), suggested that these markings probably had something to do with the eyes rather than the stomach. He says in part (translation):

> In general we can now say that such features are common to all the eyeless Conocoryphidæ. With the conocoryphs I include *Elyx* and consider *Harpides* as at least closely related. Similar impressions are also found in forms with eyes, as, for instance, in the Olenidæ, but here such radiate partly from the border of the eye, partly from the front end of the glabella, partly from the [visual surface of the] eye, and sometimes from the angle between the occipital ring and the glabella. They therefore go out from such different points that they can not possibly be branches of the liver. It would also be very remarkable if such an important organ should have been developed in a few eyeless forms, but have failed to leave the least trace in the rest of the trilobites.

Lindstroem (1901, pp. 18, 19, 33; pl. 5, figs. 29, 31; pl. 6, figs. 43-45) has discussed these markings and given beautiful figures showing their appearance in *Olenus, Parabolina, Elyx, Conocoryphe,* and *Solenopleura.* He decided that they were to be explained as branches of the circulatory system, comparing them with the veins and arteries of *Limulus.* He pointed out that there was a coincidence between these markings and the position of the eyes, and suggested a causal connection with the latter.

Beecher (1895 B, p. 309), also from a comparison with *Limulus,* suggested that the eye-lines of *Cryptolithus, Harpes, Conocoryphe, Olenus, Ptychoparia, Arethusina,* etc., probably represented the optic nerves, and since the eye-lines are usually the main trunks of the dendritic markings, it is fair to assume that he considered the whole as due to branches of nerves.

Reed has recently (1916, pp. 122, 173) discussed these lines as developed in the Trinucleidæ, and seems to accept Beecher's explanation.

Three explanations of the "nervures" are thus current, and the authors of all of them refer us to *Limulus* as proving their claims! So far as general appearance goes, the markings on the trilobites more closely resemble the veins of a *Limulus* than either the nerves or "liver" of that animal. The veins, however, are not in contact with the dorsal shell, but are buried in the liver and muscles, while the arrangment of the arteries, which are dorsal in position, is quite unlike what is seen in the trilobites.

The term nervures, as applied to these markings, is not only misleading, but an incorrect use of one of Barrande's words, for by nervures he meant delicate surface markings. Until the real function of the organs which made these markings is definitely established, it may be well to call them *genal cæca,* for they obviously were open tunnels ending blindly, whatever they contained.

The question of the function of the genal cæca can not, in any case, be settled by an appeal to *Limulus,* and it is doubtful if it can be settled at all at the present time. Certain things tend to show that Jaekel's explanation is the most plausible, and these may be briefly set forth.

Walcott (1912 A, pp. 176, 179, pls. 27, 28) has described specimens of *Naraoia* and *Burgessia* in which similar markings are well shown, and where they are obviously connected with the alimentary canal just at the anterior end of the mesenteron. In *Burgessia,* which seems to be a notostracan branchiopod, the trunk sinuses are very wide, and the ap-

pearance is on the whole unlike that of any known trilobite. In *Naraoia,* however, the markings are much finer and directly comparable with those of *Elyx.* If my contention that *Naraoia* is a trilobite should be sustained, it might almost settle the question of the "nervures." In *Burgessia* these lateral trunks enter the main canal behind the fifth pair of appendages. In the trilobites they debouch much further forward.

The principal argument in favor of the interpretation of these markings as nerves lies in their connection with the eyes. There is considerable evidence to indicate that the eye-lines and the genal cæca are two distinct structures, but because both originate from the sides of the anterior lobe of the glabella, and both extend outward at nearly right angles to the axis, or obliquely backward, they are, when both present, coincident. Genal cæca occur on blind trilobites, on trilobites with simple eyes, and on trilobites with compound eyes. Eye-lines occur on trilobites with both simple and compound eyes, and genal cæca may or may not be present in both cases. The morphology of the ridge forming the eye-line in trilobites with compound eyes is well known. It is abundantly proved by ontogeny that it is the continuation of the palpebral lobe, and a development of the pleura of the first dorsal segment of the cephalon. Lake, Swinnerton, and Reed have tried to show that the eye-lines of the Harpedidæ and Trinucleidæ are homologous with the eye-lines of the trilobites with compound eyes, and that the ocelli on the cheeks are therefore degenerate compound eyes.

The simplest form of the genal cæcum is seen in the blind *Elyx* (Lindstroem 1901, pl. 6, fig. 43). The main trunk is at nearly right angles to the axis, the increase in its width is gradual in approaching the glabella, and an equal number of branches diverge from both sides.

Ptychoparia striata (Barrande 1852, pl. 14, figs. 1, 3) is an excellent example of a trilobite with compound eyes and genal cæca. It will be noted that the main trunk and the eye-line are coincident, and that both on the free and fixed cheeks the branches are all on the anterior side of the eye-line. Compare this with the condition in *Conocoryphe* (Barrande, pl. 14, fig. 8; Lindstroem, pl. 6, fig. 44), and one sees there a main branch having the same direction as in *Ptychoparia* and likewise with all the branches on the anterior side. At first sight this would seem to support the contention that these lines do lead out to the eyes, since *Conocoryphe* is blind, and the main trunk leads practically to the margin. But although *Conocoryphe* is blind, it has free cheeks, and the main trunk does not lead to the point on those free cheeks where eyes are to be expected, but back into the genal angles. And this direction holds in such diverse genera (as to eyes and free cheeks) as *Harpes, Cryptolithus, Dionide,* and *Endymionia.* In all these the genal cæca fade out in the genal angles, and in none of them would compound eyes be expected in that region. The coincidence of the eye-lines with the trunks of the genal cæca in *Ptychoparia* seems to be merely a coincidence. That the markings which radiate from the eyes of *Ptychoparia* and *Solenopleura* are not impressions made by nerves is obvious. That they are of the same nature as the similar markings in the eyeless trilobites is equally obvious. *Ergo,* they can not be nerves in either case, and that they have anything to do with the eyes is highly improbable. The eye was merely superimposed upon these structures.

The relation of the genal cæca to the ocelli on the cheeks is best shown in the Trinucleidæ. In all species of *Tretaspis* simple eyes are present, and in most of them there are very narrow eye-lines. The latter are occasionally continued beyond the ocular tubercle back to the genal angle. A similar course is seen in *Harpes.* If the simple eye is the homologue

of the compound eye, and the eye-line here the homologue of the eye-line in *Ptychoparia,* why does it continue beyond the eye? In any case, it can not be interpreted as a nerve. *Cryptolithus tessellatus,* when the cephalon is 0.45 mm. to 0.65 mm. long, shows short eye-lines and a small simple eye on each cheek. In some half-grown specimens, traces of the ocelli can be seen, but the eye-lines are absent. In the adult, both the eye-lines and the ocelli are entirely wanting. Reed states that "nervures" are also absent, and so they are from most specimens, but well preserved casts of the interior from the Upper Trenton opposite Cincinnati show them, and one cheek is here figured (fig. 25). As apparent from the figure, the main trunk is very short and gives rise to two principal branches, the first of which in its turn sends off lines from the anterior side. It was a specimen showing these lines which Ruedemann (1916, p. 147) figured as showing facial sutures. The interest lies in the fact that while the ocelli and eye-lines were lost in development, the genal cæca are present in the adult, showing that they are different structures.

Fig. 25.— *Cryptolithus tessellatus* Green. Side view of the cheek of a specimen from the top of the Trenton opposite Cincinnati, Ohio, to show the branching genal cæca. These are the "facial sutures" of Ruedemann.

Harpides is another genus in which genal cæca are strikingly shown, and in this case they completely cover the huge cheeks, radiating from two main trunks to the front and sides. I have seen no good specimens, but it would appear from Angelin's figure (1854, pl. 41, fig. 7) that the rather large, simple eyes are not situated exactly on the vascular trunks. In the *Harpides* from Bohemia, the main trunks extend out with many branches beyond the simple eyes. It should be stated that the courses of the genal cæca are not correctly figured by Barrande (Supplement, 1872, pl. 1, fig. 11), as shown by casts of the original specimen in the Museum of Comparative Zoology. From Barrande's figure, one would suppose that the eye-lines and their continuation beyond the "ocelli" were superimposed upon the genal cæca without having any definite connection with them, but as a matter of fact the radial markings really diverge from the main trunks as in *Elyx* and similar forms.

Summary.

As Reed has said, these lines are not mere ornamentation, but rather represent traces of structures of some functional importance. They probably can not be explained as traces of nerves and more likely represent either traces of the gastric cæca or of the circulatory

system. While they are known chiefly in Cambrian and Lower Ordovician trilobites, there is no evidence that the organs represented were not present in later forms, even if the shell may not have been affected by them. While they indicate very fine, thread-like canals, the present evidence seems to be in favor of assigning to them the function of lodging the glands which secreted the principal digestive fluids.

HEART.

Illænus.

Volborth (1863, pl. 1, fig. 12 = our fig. 26) has described the only organ in a trilobite which suggests a heart. A Russian specimen of *Illænus* with the shell removed shows a somewhat flattened, tubular, chambered organ extending from under the posterior end of the cephalon to the anterior end of the pygidium. The posterior nine chambers were each 1.5 mm. long and 1.5 mm. wide, while the two anterior chambers were respectively 2.5 mm.

Fig. 26.—Copy of Volborth's figure of the heart of *Illænus*.

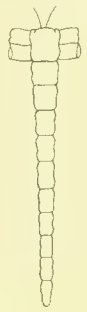


Fig. 27. — Heart of *Apus*. Copied from Gerstäcker.

and 3 mm. wide. These were all under the thorax, and at least two more chambers are shown under the cephalon, but rather obscurely. The species of the *Illænus* is not stated, but since no *Illænus* has more than ten segments in the thorax, and this tube has at least thirteen chambers, it is evident that its constrictions are inherent in it, and are not due to the segmentation of the thorax. Beecher has made a passing allusion to this organ as an alimentary canal. This was the original opinion of Volborth. Pander, however, suggested to him that it might be a heart. The alimentary canal of *Cryptolithus* does not show any constrictions, while the heart of *Apus* (see fig. 27) and other branchiopods does show them. It should be noted, further, that while this heart enlarges toward the front, it is everywhere very small as compared with the width of the axial lobe, and much narrower than sections of *Ceraurus* and *Calymene* would lead one to expect the alimentary canal of *Illænus* to be. Where the heart is 1.5 mm. to 3 mm. wide, the axial lobe is 11 mm. wide.

While this may be merely a cast of the alimentary canal it is sufficiently like a heart to deserve consideration as such an organ.

Ceraurus and Calymene.

Nothing suggesting a heart has been seen in the sections of *Ceraurus* and *Calymene*. The mesenteron and its sheath crowd so closely against the dorsal test in the anterior part

of the thorax that there seems to be no room for the heart, but it must have been located beneath the sheath and above the alimentary canal. If the latter were filled with mud, and the animals lay on their backs, as most of them did at death, the canal would drop down into the axial lobe and the soft heart would naturally disappear and leave no trace of its presence in the fossils.

The Median "Ocellus" or "Dorsal Organ."

Many trilobites, otherwise smooth, bear on the glabella a median pustule which is usually referred to as a simple eye or median ocellus, but whose function can not be said to have been certainly demonstrated. Ruedemann (1916, p. 127), who has recently made a careful study of this problem, lists about thirty genera, members of ten families, Agnostidæ, Eodiscidæ, Trinucleidæ, Harpedidæ, Remopleuridæ, Asaphidæ, Illænidæ, Goldiidæ, Cheiruridæ, and Phacopidæ, in which this tubercle is present, and had he wished he might have cited more, for it is of almost universal occurrence in Ordovician trilobites.

I have not especially searched the literature for references to this median tubercle. It is often mentioned by writers in descriptions of species, but apparently few have tried to explain it. Beyrich (1846, p. 30) suggested that it indicated the beginning of the alimentary canal. Barrande mentioned it, but if he gave any explanation, it has escaped me. McCoy (Syn. Pal. Foss. 1856, p. 146) called it an ocular (?) tubercle, and that seems to have been the interpretation which most writers on trilobites have assigned to it, if they suggested any function at all. Beecher (1895 B, p. 309) concurred in this opinion.

Bernard (1894, p. 422) ascribed to this tubercle, as well as to the median tubercle on the nuchal segment, an excretory function, comparing it with the "dorsal organ" in *Apus*.

Reed (1916, p. 174) states that it may be either the representative of the "dorsal" organ of the branchiopods, or a median unpaired ocellus.

Ruedemann (1916) has made the only real investigation of the subject. He came to the conclusion that it was a parietal eye, without a crystalline lens, but corresponding to the "parietal eye of other crustaceans, and especially of the phyllopods, which is a lens-shaped or pear-shaped sac, usually filled with sea water." He found that above the "ocellus" the test was usually thin or even absent, and in a few cases a dark line beneath seemed to outline the original form of the sac. His summary follows:

> It is claimed that most, if not all, trilobites possessed a median or parietal eye on the glabella. [In proof of this assertion the following facts are stated:]
>
> 1. A great number of species, belonging to more than thirty genera, possess a distinct tubercle on the glabella. This tubercle occurs alone in many genera, otherwise smooth, as in the Asaphidæ, and is hence of functional importance.
>
> 2. In certain cases, as in *Cryptolithus tessellatus,* distinct lenticular bodies [not lenses] were recognized; in others, as in *Asaphus expansus,* only a thinner, probably transparent test. Many other species show a distinct pit in interior casts of the tubercle, indicating a lens-like thickening of the top of the tubercle. The median eye therefore probably possessed all the different stages of development seen in other crustaceans.
>
> 3. As in the parietal eyes of the crustaceans and the eurypterids, the tubercles are most prominent and distinct in the earlier growth-stages, notably so in *Isotelus gigas.*
>
> 4. The tubercle is especially well developed in the so called blind forms where the lateral eyes are abortive, as in *Cryptolithus* (*Trinucleus*), *Dionide, Ampyx.*
>
> 5. The tubercles always appear on the apex on the highest part of the glabella, where their visual function would be most useful.
>
> 6. The tubercle is generally situated between the lateral eyes, like the parietal eye in crustaceans and eurypterids, on account of its close connection with the brain.
>
> 7. Frequently it forms the posterior termination of a short crest, also as in certain eurypterids (*Stylonurus*), indicating the direction of the nerve.

8. The median eye is borne on a tubercle or mound in the Ordovician and Silurian trilobites, while the tubercle is rarely noticed in the Devonian and in few Cambrian forms. In the Devonian forms, similarly as in many crustaceans and in later growth-stages of some asaphids, the strong development of the lateral eyes may have led to a loss of the parietal eyes. In the Cambrian genera evidence is present to suggest that the parietal eyes consisted only of transparent spots or lens-like thickenings of the exoskeleton, hardly noticeable from the outside.

9. It is *a priori* to be inferred that the trilobites should, as primitive crustaceans, have possessed median or parietal eyes.

As a student, I accepted Professor Beecher's dictum that this tubercle represented a median ocellus, but more recently a number of things have led me to the view that it is the point of attachment of the ligament by which the heart is supported.

The chief arguments against its interpretation as a parietal eye seem to be that its structure is not absolute proof, being capable of other explanation; its position is variable, in front, between, or back of the eyes; it is exactly like other tubercles on the median line, especially the nuchal spine or tubercle, and the similar ones along the axial lobe of the thorax; and it is not present in the protaspis or very young trilobites.

1. The structure disclosed by Ruedemann's sections, a sort of sac-like cavity beneath a thinned test, can be explained as a gland, a ligamentary attachment, or a vestigial spine, as well as an eye. In a section of *Asaphus expansus,* which I made some years ago when trying to get some light on this problem, there is a similar cavity under the pustule, but a secondary layer of shell lay beneath it and apparently cut it off from the glabellar region, thus indicating that it had lost its function in the adult of this animal. Sections through the tubercles of the glabella of *Ceraurus* show all of them hollow, with very thin upper covering or none at all, and their structure is not unlike that of the tubercle of *Cryptolithus.* In fact, sections can be seen in Doctor Walcott's slices which are practically identical with the one Ruedemann obtained from *Cryptolithus.* Since it is obvious that not all of the pustules of a *Ceraurus* could have been eyes, the evidence from structure is rather against than for the interpretation of the median pustule as such an organ.

2. The position of the tubercle varies greatly in different genera. Where furthest forward (*Tretaspis, Goldius*), it is just back of the frontal lobe, while in some species of asaphids it is in the neck furrow. In species with compound eyes it is frequently between the eyes, but more often back of them. If its history be traced in a single family, it is generally found farthest forward in the more ancient species and moves backward in the more recent ones. The eyes do this same thing, but the median tubercle goes back further than the eyes. This can be seen, for example, in the American Asaphidæ, where the pustule is up between the eyes of *Hemigyraspis* and *Symphysurus* of the Beekmantown and back of the eyes of the *Isotelus* of the Trenton. Turning now to the under side of the head, it appears that the tubercle bears a rather definite relation to the hypostoma. If the hypostoma is short, the tubercle is well forward. If long, it is far back on the head. It seems in many cases to be just back of the posterior tip of the hypostoma, or just behind the position of the mouth, while in others it is not as far back as the tip of the hypostoma.

The median tubercle is in many cases developed into a long spine. This is usually in an ancient member of a tubercle-bearing family, and suggests that in most cases the tubercle is a vestigial organ. An example of this occurs in *Trinucleoides,* the most ancient of the Trinucleidæ. *Trinucleoides reussi* (Barrande) (Supplement, 1872, pl. 5, figs. 17, 18) has a very long slender spine in this position. It could be explained as an elevated median eye, but it also very strongly suggests the zoæal spine of modern brachyuran Crustacea.

Gurney (Quart. Jour. Mic. Sci., vol. 46, 1902, p. 462) supports Weldon in the conclusion that the long spines of the zoæa are directive, and states that the animal swims in the direction of the long axis of the spine. He also suggests that, since the period of their presence corresponds to the period before the development of the "auditory" organs, the spines may perform the functions of balancing and orientation. It is generally admitted that the spine of the zoæa is also protective, and the obvious function, first pointed out by Spence Bate in 1859, is that it contains a ligament which helps suspend the heart, which lies beneath the spine. This latter function may have been that of the median tubercle in the trilobite. Such an explanation would account for the backward migration mentioned above, for as the stomach enlarged and the mouth moved backward on the ventral side, the heart may have been pushed backward on the upper side.

There is also a curious parallelism between the ontogenetic history of the zoæal spine and the phylogenetic history of the Trinucleidæ or Cheiruridæ (*Nieszkowskia* is the ancient member of this family in which the spine replaces the tubercle). When first hatched, the larval crab shows no trace of the spine, but very quickly it evaginates, lying dorsally on the median line, pointing forward (Faxon, Bull. Mus. Comp. Zool., vol. 6, 1880, pl. 2). With the splitting of the original envelope, the spine becomes erect, but persists only a short time, and is reduced to a vestigial tubercle toward the end of the zoæal stages, its disappearance being, as pointed out by Gurney, coincident with the development of the balancing organs. This manner of suspension of the heart by a long tendon certainly does suggest that Gurney is right in his interpretation of the function. Briefly, the zoæal spine served for a short time a function later taken over by other organs. It was not present in the youngest stages, it became prominent at a very early stage, was soon vestigial, and then lost.

Take now the trilobites. There is no trace of the median pustule in the protaspis of any form, and in many primitive trilobites it is absent. It appears first as a long spine in certain families, and later becomes vestigial and disappears. Very few trilobites of Silurian and later times show it at all.

In the particular case of the Trinucleidæ, which were burrowers, the spine is present on only the oldest and most primitive of the group, a form which has only a most rudimentary fringe. It is obvious from the large size of the pygidium in the larval trinucleid that this family is derived from a group of free swimmers. *Trinucleoides reussi* was perhaps in the transitional stage, just leaving the swimming mode of life, and belonged to a group which had not developed any other "statocyst" than the median spine. Among the later Trinucleidæ the spine became a vestigial tubercle, and in some cases entirely disappeared. A similar history can be traced in the Cheiruridæ, starting from some such forms as the American Lower Ordovician *Nieszkowskia* (*N. perforator* p. ex.).

Another example of a median spine instead of a tubercle is in *Goldius rhinoceros* (Barrande). Since this species is not from the oldest *Goldius*-bearing rocks, but from the Lower Devonian, it does not follow what seems to be the general rule, but makes an interesting exception. *Goldius rhinoceros* (Barrande) (Supplement, 1872, pl. 9, figs. 12, 13) has the median tubercle elevated into a stubby, recurved spine very suggestive of the horn of a rhinoceros. Since the eyes of this species are very well developed, there seems no especial reason for the elevation of a parietal eye, and the example certainly does not support that interpretation.

3. This tubercle is essentially similar to other tubercles on the median line of cephalon, thorax, and even pygidium. This has been discussed sufficiently under section 1 above, but

it may perhaps be justifiable to point out that in some of the Agnostidæ there is a median tubercle on both shields, and since it has not yet been demonstrated beyond question which shield is the cephalon, to say which one is a parietal eye and which one is a tubercle is impossible. In other words, the parietal eye can not be differentiated from any other tubercle except by its position.

4. One of the as yet unexplained features of the protaspis of trilobites is the absence of the "nauplius eye." Beecher (1897 B, p. 40) explained this on the ground of the extremely small size of the protaspis and the imperfection of the preservation. If the median tubercle were really a median eye, it should be present in the protaspis and the earlier stages of the ontogeny, even if not in the adult, and should certainly appear before the compound eyes. (In *Limulus,* however, the compound eyes appear first.) The median eye has not so far been seen in any young trilobite in any stage previous to that in which compound eyes are present. The full ontogeny is not known of any species with compound eyes in which the median tubercle is present in the adult, but theoretically the median eye should be most prominent in the young of just those primitive trilobites about whose development most is known.

NERVOUS SYSTEM.

There has been a rather general impression among students of trilobites that the eye-lines, which should be differentiated from the genal cæca, denote the course of the optic nerves, but no other evidence of the nervous system has been found, save the so called nervures which have been discussed above. In *Apus* the nerves leading to the eyes come off from the anterior ganglion or "brain" and run directly to the eyes. If conditions were similar in the trilobites, the "brain" was beneath the anterior glabellar lobe, provided, of course, that the eye-lines do indicate the course of the optic nerve.

The ontogenetic history of the eye-lines of trilobites with compound eyes is instructive, and has already been discussed by Lindstroem (1901, pp. 12-25), but he did not cite the case of *Ptychoparia,* which is particularly interesting, because in this genus both eye-lines and "nervures" are present. Beecher (1895 C, p. 171, pl. 8, figs. 5-7) has shown that in *Ptychoparia kingi* the eye-lines of a specimen in the metaprotaspis stage run forward at a low angle with the glabella, while in the adult their course is nearly at right angles to it. They have therefore swung through an arc of at least 60° and in so doing have had ample opportunity to become coincident with the primary trunks of the genal cæca. Once that was accomplished, it is quite likely that the one fold in the shell would continue to house both structures. In other trilobites, there is a similar backward progression of the eye-lines.

As would be expected, the ventral ganglia and the longitudinal cords left no trace in the test. Since each segment has appendages, there was probably a continuous chain of ganglia back to the posterior end of the pygidium.

VARIOUS GLANDS.

Dermal glands.—The surface of many trilobites is "ornamented" with pustules and spines which on sectioning are nearly always found to be hollow, and in many cases have a fine opening at the tip. While it is generally believed that the purpose of these spines was protective, yet it is possible that many of them were merely outgrowths which increased the area through which the respiratory function could be carried on. It will be recalled

that most of the smooth trilobites are punctate, some of them very conspicuously so, and the spines and pustules of ornamented trilobites may merely subserve the same function as the pores of smooth ones.

If the spines were protective, it would not be surprising if some of them, hollow and open at the top, were poisonous also, and had glands at the base. These are, however, purely matters of speculation so far.

Renal excretory organs.—Nothing has been seen of any such organs, unless the genal cæca may possibly be of that nature. The main trunks of these always lead to the sides of the anterior glabellar lobe, which is not the point of attachment of either antennæ or biramous limbs, so that there seems little chance that they will bear this interpretation.

Reproductive organs.—Nothing is yet positively known about the reproductive organs or the position of their external openings. If the "exites" of *Neolenus* could be interpreted as brood-pouches, which does not seem probable, then the genital openings were located near the base of some pair of anterior thoracic appendages.

The Panderian Organs: Internal Gills or Poison Glands?

At a meeting of the Mineralogical Society at St. Petersburg, Volborth (1857) announced that Doctor Pander had two years before discovered certain organs on the lower side of the doublure of the pleural lobes of the thorax of a specimen of *Asaphus expansus.* These organs were oval openings in the doublure, one near the posterior margin of the cephalon, and one on each thoracic segment of the half-specimen figured by Volborth in 1863. They were explained by Volborth and by Eichwald (1860, 1863) as the points of attachment of appendages. Billings (1870) described and figured the "Panderian organs" of *"Asaphus platycephalus"* and stated that he had seen them in *Asaphus* [*Ogygites*] *canadensis* and *A. megistos* [*Isotelus maximus*] as well. He thought some sort of organ was attached to them, but could not suggest its function. Woodward (1870) thought that the openings were "only the fulcral points on which the pleuræ move." Their position outside the fulcra shows that this explanation is impossible.

So far as I am aware, the Panderian organs have been seen only in the Asaphidæ. Barrande figured them in *"Ogygia"* [*Hemigyraspis*] *desiderata* (1872) and Schmidt in two species of *Pseudasaphus.* They seem to occupy the same position in Bohemian, Russian, and American specimens. There is always one pair of openings on each thoracic segment, and one pair in line with them on the posterior margin of the cephalon. They occur near the anterior margin of the segment, and near the inner end of the doublure. In some cases they are surrounded by a ventrally projecting rim, while in others they have a thin edge. There seem to be no markings on the interior of the shell which are connected with them.

While thinking over the trilobites in connection with the origin of insects, it occurred to me that these hitherto unexplained Panderian organs might possibly be openings to internal gills and that the Asaphidæ might have been tending toward an amphibious existence. On mentioning this to Doctor R. V. Chamberlin of the Museum of Comparative Zoology, he called my attention to the possibility that they might be openings similar to those of the repugnatorial glands of Diplopoda. While no definite decision as to the function can be made, the explanation offered by Doctor Chamberlain seems more plausible than my own, and has suggested still a third, namely, that they might be the openings of poison glands.

If one were to argue that these apertures are really connected with respiration, it might be pointed out that they are ventral in position, while the *foramina repugnatoria* are always

dorsal or lateral, even in diplopods with broad lateral expansions. If offensive secretions were poured out beneath a concave shell like that of a trilobite, they would be so confined as to be but slightly effective against an enemy. This would indicate that if these openings were the outlets of glands, the substance secreted might be a poison used to render prey helpless. On the other hand, openings to gills are normally ventral in position, and if the pleural lobes were folded down against the body, they would be brought very close to the bases of the legs.

A further curious circumstance is that so far no traces of exopodites have been found on *Isotelus*. The endopodites of both *Isotelus latus* and *I. maximus* are fairly well preserved in the single known specimen of each, yet no authentic traces of exopodites have been found with them. Moreover, Walcott sliced specimens of *Isotelus* from Trenton Falls and found only endopodites. It may also be recalled that the finding of the specimen of *Isotelus arenicola* at Britannia and the tracks which I attributed to it, suggested to me that it was a shore-loving animal (1910). It offers a field for further inquiry, whether the

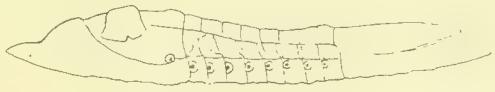


Fig. 28.—Side view of a specimen of *Isotelus gigas* Dekay, from which the test of the pleural lobes has been broken to show the position of the Panderian organs. Natural size. Specimen in the Museum of Comparative Zoology.

Asaphidæ may not have had internal gills, and whether some primitive member of the family may not have given rise to tracheate arthropods.

The explanation of the Panderian organs as openings of poison glands is less radical than the one just set forth, and so possibly lies nearer the truth. One would expect poison glands to lie at the bases of fangs, and so they do in specialized animals like chilopods and scorpions, but the trilobites may have had the less effective method of pouring out the poison from numerous glands. The purpose may have been merely to paralyze the brachiopod or pelecypod which was incautious enough to open its shell in proximity to the asaphid.

MUSCULATURE.

This is a field which is rather one for investigation than for exposition. Very little has been done, though probably much could be. The chief obstacle to a clearer understanding of the muscular system lies in the difficulty of getting at the inner surface of the test without obscuring the faint impressions in the process.

There exist in the literature a number of references to scars of attachment of muscles, and any study of the subject should of course begin by the collection of such data. I shall at this time refer to only a few observations on the subject.

The structure and known habits of trilobites make it obvious that strong flexor and extensor muscles must have been present, and some trace of them and of their points of attachment should be found. It is likely that their proximal ends were tough tendons. The muscles holding up the heart and alimentary canal would be less likely to reveal their pres-

ence by scars, but there must have been at least one pair of strong muscles extending from the under side of the head across to the hypostoma. Judging from the method of attachment, the muscles moving the limbs were short ones, chiefly within the segments of the legs themselves.

Flexor Muscles.

Since the majority of trilobites had the power of enrollment, and seem also to have used the pygidia in swimming, the flexors must have been important muscles. Beecher (1902, p. 170) appears to have been the only writer to point out any tangible evidence of their former presence. Walcott (1881, p. 199) had shown that the ventral membrane was reinforced in each segment by a slightly thickened transverse arch. Beecher showed that on this thickened arch in *Triarthrus, Isotelus, Ptychoparia,* and *Calymene,* there are low longitudinal internal ridges or folds. One of these is central, and there is a pair of diagonal ridges on either side. Beecher interpreted these ridges as separating the strands of the flexor muscles, and believed that a line of median ridges divided a pair of longitudinal muscles, while the outer ridges showed the place of attachment of the pair of strands which was set off to each segment. He did not discuss the question as to where the anterior and posterior ends were attached. In trilobites with short pygidia, the attachment would probably have been near the posterior end, and it is possible that the two scars beneath the doublure and back of the last appendifers in *Ceraurus* may indicate the point of attachment in that genus.

There is as yet no satisfactory evidence as to where the anterior ends of the flexors were attached. In *Apus* these muscles unite in an entosternal sinewy mass above the mouth, but no evidence of any similar mass has been found in the trilobites and it is likely that the muscles were anchored somewhere on the test of the head.

Extensor Muscles.

The exact position of these muscles has not been previously discussed. The interior of the dorsal test shows no such apodemes as are found on the mesosternites, but, as I have shown in the discussion of the alimentary canal of *Calymene* and *Ceraurus,* there is an opening on either side of the axial lobe between the dorsal test and the abdominal sheath, and it is entirely probable that an extensor muscle passed through each of these. The abdominal sheath extends only along the posterior region of the glabella and the anterior part of the thorax, and probably served to protect the soft organs from the strain of the heavy muscles. The extensors (see fig. 29) probably lay along the top of the axial lobe on either side of the median line of the thorax to the pygidium, where they appear to have been attached chiefly on the under side of the anterior ring of the axial lobe, although strands probably continued further back. This is above and slightly in front of the fulcral points on the pleura, and meets the mechanical requirements. *Ceraurus* (Walcott, 1875, and 1881, p. 222, pl. 4, fig. 5) shows a pair of very distinct scars on the under side of the first ring of the pygidium, and in many other trilobites (*Illænus, Goldius,* etc.) distinct traces of muscular attachment can be seen in this region, even from the exterior. The anterior ends were probably attached by numerous small strands to the top of the glabella, and, principally, to the neck-ring.

On enrolling, the sternites of all segments are pulled forward and the tergites backward. In straightening out, the reverse process takes place. The areas available for muscular at-

tachment are so disposed as to indicate longitudinal flexor and extensor muscles rather than short muscles extending from segment to segment. Indeed, the tenuity of the ventral membrane is such as to preclude the possibility of enrollment by the use of muscles of that sort, while powerful longitudinal flexors could have been anchored to cephalon and pygidium. The strongly marked character of the neck-ring of trilobites is probably to be explained as due

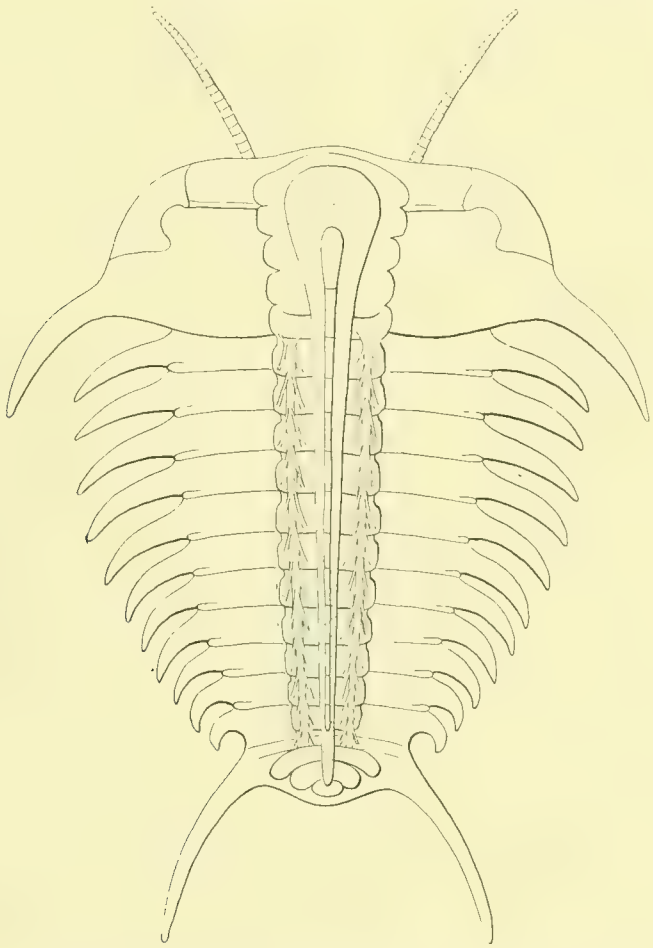


Fig. 29.—Restoration of a part of the internal organs of *Ceraurus pleurexanthemus* as seen from above. At the sides are the extensor muscles, and in the middle, the heart overlying the alimentary canal. Drawn by Doctor Elvira Wood, under the supervision of the author.

to the attachment of the extensor muscles, rather than to its recent incorporation in the cephalon. The same is true of the anterior ring on the pygidium.

Possible preservations of extensors and flexors in Ceraurus.—Among Doctor Walcott's sections are four slices which I should not like to use in proving the presence of longitudinal muscles, but which may be admitted as corroborative evidence. Two of these transverse sections (Nos. 114 and 199) show a dorsal and a ventral pair of dark spots in positions which suggest that they represent the location of the dorsal and ventral muscles, while two others (Nos. 131 and 140) show only the upper pair of spots. The chief objection to this

interpretation is that it is difficult to imagine how the muscles could be so replaced that they happen to show in the section. Both the sections showing all four spots are evidently from the anterior part of the thorax, as they show traces of the abdominal sheath, which seems to be squeezed against the inside of the axial lobe, with the muscles (?) forced out to the sides. The ventral pair lie just inside the appendifers, but even if they are sections of muscles, all four are probably somewhat out of place.

Hypostomial Muscles.

The hypostoma fits tightly against the epistoma, or the doublure when the epistoma is absent, but in no trilobite has it ever been seen ankylosed to the dorsal test, and its rather frail connection therewith is evidenced by the relative rarity of specimens found with it in position. That the hypostoma was movable seems very probable, and that it was held in place by muscles, certain. The maculæ were always believed to be muscle scars until Lindstroem (1901, p. 8) announced the discovery by Liljevall of small granules on those of *Goldius polyactin* (Angelin). These were interpreted as lenses of eyes by Lindstroem, who tried to show that the maculæ of all trilobites were functional or degenerate eyes. Most palæontologists have not accepted this explanation, and since the so called eyes cover only a part of the surface of the maculæ, it is still possible to consider the latter as chiefly muscle-scars.

In Lindstroem's summary (1901, pp. 71, 72) it is admitted that the globular lenses are found only in *Bronteus* (*Goldius*) (three Swedish species only) and *Cheirurus spinulosus* Nieszkowski, while the prismatic structure supposed to represent degenerate eyes was found in eleven genera (Asaphidæ, Illænidæ, Lichadidæ). All of these are forms with well developed eyes, and Lindstroem himself points out that the appearance of actual lenses in the hypostoma was a late development, long after the necessity for them would appear to have passed.

The use of the hypostoma has been discussed by Bernard (1892, p. 240) and extracts from his remarks are quoted:

> The earliest crustacean-annelids possessed large labra or prostomia projecting backward, still retained in the Apodidæ and trilobites. This labrum almost necessitated a very deliberate manner of browsing. The animal would creep along, and would have to run some way over its food before it could get it into its mouth, the whole process, it seems to us, necessitating a number of small movements backwards and forwards. Small living prey would very often escape, owing to the fact that the animal's mouth and jaws were not ready in position for them when first perceived. The labrum necessitates the animal passing forwards over its prey, then darting backward to follow it with its jaws. We here see how useful the gnathobases of *Apus* must be in catching and holding prey which had been thus passed over. Indeed the whole arrangement of the limbs of *Apus* with the sensory endites forms an excellent trap to catch prey over which the labrum has passed.

In alcoholic specimens of *Apus* the labrum is not in a horizontal plane, as it is in most well preserved trilobites, but is tipped down at an angle of from 30° to 45°, and the big mandibles lie under it. It has considerable freedom of motion and is held in place by muscles which run forward and join the under side of the head near its posterior margin. It seems entirely possible that the hypostoma of the trilobite had as much mobility as the labrum of *Apus*, and that by opening downward it brought the mouth lower and nearer the food. It will be recalled that the hypostomata of practically all trilobites are pointed at the posterior margin, there being either a central point or a pair of prongs. By dropping down the hypostoma until the point or prongs rested on or in the substratum, and sending food forward

to the mouth by means of the appendages, a trilobite could make of itself a most excellent trap, and if the animal could dart backward as well as forward, the hypostoma would be still more useful. There is no reason to suppose that they could not move backward, and the "pygidial antennæ" of *Neolenus* indicate that animals of that genus at least did so. This habit of dropping down the hypostoma would also permit the use of those anterior gnathobases which seem too far ahead of the mouth in the trilobites with a long hypostoma.

For actual evidence on this point, it is necessary to have recourse once more to Doctor Walcott's exceedingly valuable slices. From such sections of *Ceraurus* as his Nos. 100, 106, 108, 170, and 173, it is evident that the hypostoma of that form could be dropped considerably without disrupting the ventral membrane (fig. 30). Sections of *Calymene* already published (Walcott 1881, pl. 5, figs. 1, 2) show the hypostoma turned somewhat downward, and the slices themselves show sections of the anterior pair of gnathobases beneath the

Fig. 30.—Longitudinal section of cephalon of *Ceraurus pleurexanthemus,* to show position of the mouth and folds of the ventral membrane between the glabella and the hypostoma. The test is in solid black and the part within the ventral membrane dotted. From a photographic enlargement. Specimen 169. ×3.9.

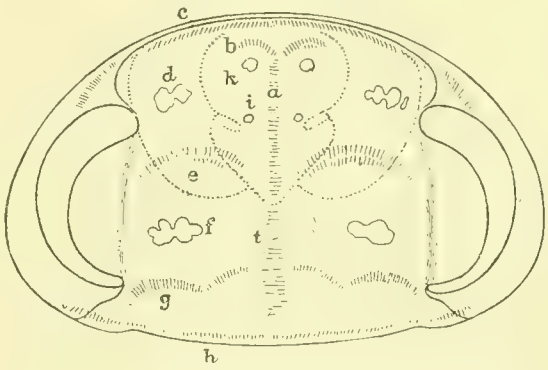


Fig. 31.—A copy of Doctor Moberg's figure of *Nileus armadillo,* showing the position of the muscle scars.

hypostoma. When the hypostoma was horizontal, these gnathobases were crowded out at the sides.

If the hypostoma were used in the manner indicated, the muscles must have been more efficient than those of the labrum of *Apus,* and it is probable that they crossed to the dorsal test. Just where they were attached is an unsolved problem. Barrande (1852, pl. 1, fig. 1) has indicated an anterior pair of scars and a single median one on the frontal lobe of *Dalmanites* that may be considered in this connection, and also three pairs of scars on the last two lobes of the glabella of *Proëtus* (1852, pl. 1, fig. 7). Moberg (1902, p. 295, pl. 3, figs. 2, 3, text fig. 1) has described in some detail the muscle-scars of a rather remarkable specimen of *Nileus armadillo* Dalman. While, as I shall point out, I do not agree wholly with Professor Moberg's interpretation, I give here a translation (made for Professor Beecher) of his description, with a copy of his text figure:

The well preserved surface of the shell permits one to note not only the tubercle (t) but a number of symmetrically arranged glabellar impressions. And because of their resemblance to the muscular insertions of recent crustaceans, I must interpret them as such. They appear partly as rounded hollows (k and i), also as elongate straight or curved areas (a, b, c, e, g, h) made up of shallow impressions or furrows about 1 mm. long, sub-parallel, and standing at an angle to the trend of the areas. Impression e is especially well

marked, inasmuch as the perpendicular furrows are arranged in a shallow crescentic depression; and impression d shows besides the obscure furrows a number of irregularly rounded depressions. Larger similar ones occur at f, and in part extend over toward g.

The meaning of these impressions, or their myologic significance, could be discussed, although such discussion might rather be termed guessing.

Inner organs, such as the heart and stomach, might have been attached to the shell along impressions a and b. Also along or behind c and h, which both continue into the free cheeks, ligaments or muscular fibers may have been inserted. From d, e, f, and g, muscles have very likely gone out to the cephalic appendages. Against this it may be urged that impression d is too far forward to have belonged to the first pair of feet. Again, the impression h may in reality represent two confluent muscular insertions, from the first of which, in that case, arose the muscles of the fourth pair of cephalic feet. Were this the case, the muscles of the first pair of cheek feet should be attached at e. And d in turn may be explained as the attachment of the muscles of the antennæ, k those of the hypostoma, and from i possibly those of the epistoma. That k is here named as the starting point of the hypostomial muscles and not those of the antennæ, depends partly on the analogous position of i and partly on the fact that the hypostoma of *Nileus armadillo* (text figure, in which the outline of the hypostoma is dotted), by reason of its wing-like border, could not have permitted the antennæ to reach forward, but rather only outward or backward.

My own explanation would be that impressions e, f, and g correspond to the glabellar furrows, h the neck furrow, and all four show the places of attachment of the appendifers. Those at d may possibly be connected with the antennæ, although I should expect those organs to be attached under the dorsal furrows at the sides of the hypostoma. It will be noted that either b, k, or i correspond well with the maculæ of the hypostoma and some or all of them may be the points of attachment of hypostomial muscles. They correspond also with the anterior scars of *Dalmanites*.

Eyes.

While I have nothing to add to what has been written about the eyes of trilobites, this sketch of the anatomy would be incomplete without some reference to the little which has been done on the structure of these organs.

Quenstedt (1837, p. 339) appears to have been the first to compare the eyes of trilobites with those of other Crustacea. Johannes Müller had pointed out in 1829 (Meckel's Archiv) that two kinds of eyes were found in the latter group, compound eyes with a smooth cornea, and compound eyes with a facetted coat. Quenstedt cited *Trilobites esmarkii* Schlotheim (= *Illænus crassicauda* Dalman) as an example of the first group, and *Calymene macrophthalma* Brongniart (= *Phacops latifrons* Bronn) for the second. Misreading the somewhat careless style of Quenstedt, Barrande (1852, p. 133) reverses these, one of the few slips to be found in the voluminous writings of that remarkable savant.

Burmeister (1843; 1846, p. 19) considered the two kinds of eyes as essentially the same, and accounted for the conspicuous lenses of Phacops on the supposition that the cornea was thinner in that genus than in the trilobites with smooth eyes.

Barrande (1852, p. 135) recognized three types of eyes in trilobites, adding to Quenstedt's smooth and facetted compound eyes the groups of simple eyes found in *Harpes*. In his sections of 1852, pl. 3, figs. 15-25, which are evidently diagrammatic, he shows separated biconvex lenses in both types of compound eyes, *Phacops* and *Dalmanites* on one hand, and *Asaphus, Goldius, Acidaspis,* and *Cyclopyge* on the other. Clarke (1888), Exner (1891) and especially Lindstroem (1901) have since published much more accurate figures and descriptions. The first person to study the eye in thin section seems to have been Packard (1880), who published some very sketchy figures of specimens loaned him by Walcott. He

studied the eyes of *Isotelus gigas, Bathyurus longispinus, Calymene,* and *Phacops,* and decided that the two types of eyes were fundamentally the same. He also compared them with the eyes of *Limulus.*

Clarke (1888), in a careful study of the eye of *Phacops rana,* found that the lenses were unequally biconvex, the curvature greater on the inner surface. The lens had a circular opening on the inner side, leading into a small pear-shaped cavity. The individual lenses were quite distinct from one another, and separated by a continuation of the test of the cheek.

Exner (1891, p. 34), in a comparison of the eyes of *Phacops* and *Limulus,* came to the opinion that they were very unlike, and that the former were really aggregates of simple eyes.

Lindstroem (1901, pp. 27-31) came to the conclusion that besides the blind trilobites there were trilobites with two kinds of compound eyes, trilobites with aggregate eyes, and trilobites with stemmata and ocelli. His views may be briefly summarized.

I. Compound eyes.

1. Eyes with prismatic, plano-convex lenses.

"A pellucid, smooth and glossy integument, a direct continuation of the common test of the body, covers the corneal lenses, quite as is the case in so many of the recent Crustacea. The lenses are closely packed, minute, usually hexagonal in outline, flat on the outer and convex on the inner surface. Such eyes are best developed in *Asaphus, Illænus, Nileus, Bumastus, Proëtus,* etc."

2. Eyes with biconvex lenses.

The surface of the eye is a mass of contiguous lenses, covered by a thin membrane which is frequently absent from the specimens, due to poor preservation. The lenses are biconvex, and being in contact with one another, are usually hexagonal, although in some cases they nearly retain their globular shape. Such eyes are found in *Eurycare, Peltura, Sphæropthalmus, Ctenopyge, Goldius, Cheirurus,* and probably others.

II. Aggregate eyes.

The individual lenses are comparatively large, distinct from one another, each lying in its own socket. There is, however, a thin membrane, which covers all those in any one aggregate, and is a continuation of the general integument of the body. This membrane is continued as a thickened infolding which forms the sockets of the lenses.

Such eyes are known in the Phacopidæ only.

III. Stemmata and ocelli.

The stemmata are present only in *Harpes,* where there may be on the summit of the cheek two or three ocelli lying near one another. Each, viewed from above, is nearly circular in outline, almost hemispheric, glossy and shining. In section they prove to be convex above and flat or slightly concave beneath. The test covers and separates them, as in the case of the aggregate eyes.

The ocelli of the Trinucleidæ and *Eoharpes* are smaller, and the detailed structure not yet investigated.

Lindstroem concludes that so far as its facets or lenses are concerned, the eye of the trilobite shows the greatest analogy with the Isopoda, and the least with *Limulus.*

SUMMARY.

The simplest eyes found among the Trilobita are the ocelli. These consist of a simple thickening of the test to form a convex surface capable of concentrating light. The similarity in position of the paired ocelli of trilobites and the simple eyes of copepods has perhaps a significance.

The schizochroal eyes may well be compared with the aggregate eyes of the chilopods and scorpions. The mere presence of a common external covering is not sufficient to prove this a true compound eye, especially as the covering is merely a continuation of the general test.

The holochroal eyes are of two kinds, one with plano-convex and one with biconvex lenses. The latter would seem to be mechanically the more perfect of the two, and it is worthy of note that the trilobites possessing the biconvex lenses have, in general, much smaller eyes than those with the other type.

If, as some investigators claim, the parietal eye of Crustacea originates by the fusion of two lateral ocelli, trilobites show a primitive condition in lacking this eye, which may have originated through the migration toward the median line of ocelli like those of the Trinucleidæ.

Sex.

That the sexes were separate in the Trilobita there can be very little doubt, but the study of the appendages has as yet revealed nothing in the way of sexual differences. One of the most important points still to be determined is the location of the genital openings.

In many modern Crustacea, the antennæ or antennules are modified as claspers, and it is barely possible that the curious double curvature of the antennules of *Triarthrus* indicates a function of this sort. The antennules of many specimens have the rather formal double curvature, turning inward at the outer ends, and retain this position of the frontal appendages, no matter what may be the condition of those on the body. Other specimens have the antennules variously displaced, indicating that they are quite flexible. It is conceivable that the individuals with rigid antennules are males, the others females.

It is interesting to note that the antennules of *Ptychoparia permulta* Walcott (1918, pl. 21, fig. 1) have the same recurved form. All the specimens of *Neolenus,* however, show very flexible antennæ.

Barrande and Salter laid great stress upon the "forme longue" and "forme large" as indicating male and female. This was based upon the supposition that the female of any animal would probably have a broader test than the male, a hypothesis which seems to be very little supported by fact. In practical application it was found that the apparent difference was so often due to the state of preservation or the confusion of two or more species, that for many years little reference has been made to this supposed sex difference.

Eggs.

In his classic work on the trilobites of Bohemia, Barrande described three kinds of spherical and one of capsule-shaped bodies which he considered to be the eggs of trilobites. After a review of the literature and a study of specimens in the collections of the Museum of Comparative Zoology, it can be said that none of these fossils has proved to be a trilobite egg, but that they may be plants. A full account of them will be published elsewhere.

Walcott (1881) and Billings (1870) have described similar bodies within the tests of *Calymene* and *Ceraurus,* but without showing positive evidence as to their nature.

Methods of Life.

This is a subject upon which much can be inferred, but little proved. Without trying to cover all possibilities, it may be profitable to see what can be deduced from what is known of the structure of the external test, the internal anatomy, and the appendages. This can, to a certain extent, be controlled by what is inferred from the strata in which the specimens are found, the state of preservation, and the associated animals. (For other details, see the discussion of "Function of the Appendages" in Part I.)

HABITS OF LOCOMOTION.

The methods of locomotion may be deduced with some safety from a study of the appendages, and, as has repeatedly been pointed out, all trilobites could probably swim by their use. This swimming was evidently done with the head directed forward, and could probably be accomplished indifferently well with either the dorsal (gastronectic, Dollo) or the ventral (notonectic) side up. If food were sought on the bottom by means of sight, the animal would probably swim dorsal side up, for by canting from side to side it could see the bottom just as easily as though it were ventral side up, and at the same time it would be in position to drop quickly on the prey. In collecting food at the surface, it might swim ventral side up.

All trilobites could probably crawl by the use of the appendages, and, as has already been pointed out, there are great differences in the adjustment of the appendages to different methods of crawling. Some crawled on their "toes," some by means of the entire endopodites, and some apparently used the coxopodites to push themselves along. That the normal direction of crawling was forward is indicated by the position of the eyes and sensory antennules. There is no evidence that their mechanism was irreversible, however, and the position of the mouth and the shape of the hypostoma indicate that they usually backed into feeding position. The caudal rami of *Neolenus* were evidently sensory, and the animal was prepared to go in either direction.

The use of the pygidium as a swimming organ, suggested by Spencer (1903, p. 492) on theoretical grounds, developed by Staff and Reck (1911, p. 141) from a mechanical standpoint, and elaborated in the present paper by evidence from the ontogeny, phylogeny, and musculature, provided the animal with a swifter means of locomotion. By a sudden flap of this large fin, a backward darting motion could be obtained, which would be invaluable as a means of escape from enemies. Staff and Reck seem to think that in this movement the two shields were clapped together, and that the animal was projected along with the hinge-like thorax forward. This might be a very plausible explanation in the case of the bivalve-like Agnostidæ, and it is one I had suggested tentatively for that family before I read Staff and Reck's paper. In the case of the large trilobites with more segments, however, it would be more natural to think of a mode of progression in which there was an undulatory movement of the body and the pygidium, up-and-down strokes being produced by alternately contracting the dorsal and ventral muscles. Bending the pygidium down would tend to pull the animal backward, while bringing it back into position would push it forward. It follows, therefore, that one of these movements must have been accomplished very quickly, the other slowly. If the muscle scars have been interpreted properly, the ventral muscles were probably the more powerful, an indication that the animal swam backward, using the cephalon and antennules as rudders.

The chief objection to the theory of swimming by clapping the valves together is that where the thorax consists of several segments it no longer acts like the hinge of a bivalve, and a sudden downward flap of the pygidium would impart a rotary motion to the animal. Take, for example, such nearly spherical animals as the Illænidæ, and it will readily be seen that there is nothing to give direction to the motion if the pygidium be brought suddenly against the lower surface of the cephalon. A lobster, it is true, progresses very well by this method, but it depends upon its great claws and long antennæ to direct its motions. The whole shape of the trilobite is of course awkward for a rapidly swimming animal. It could keep afloat with the minimum of effort and paddle itself about with ease, but it was not built on the correct lines for speed.

Dollo (1910, p. 406), and quickly following his lead, Staff and Reck (1911, p. 130), have published extremely suggestive papers, showing that by the use of the principle of correlation of parts, much can be inferred about the mode of life of the trilobites merely from the structure of the test.

Dollo studied the connection between the shape of the pygidium and the position and character of the eyes. As applied by him, and later by Clarke and Ruedemann, to the eurypterids, this method seems most satisfactory. He pointed out that in Eurypterida like *Stylonurus* and *Eurypterus,* where there is a long spine-like telson, the eyes are back from the margin, so that a *Limulus*-like habit of pushing the head into the sand by means of the limbs and telson was possible. *Erettopterus* and *Pterygotus,* on the other hand, have the eyes on the margin, so that the head could not be pushed into the mud without damage, and have a fin-like telson, suggesting a swimming mode of life.

In carrying this principle over to the trilobites, Dollo was quite successful, but Staff and Reck have pointed out some modifications of his results. The conclusions reached in both these papers are suggestive rather than final, for not all possible factors have been considered. The following are given as examples of interesting speculations along this line.

Homalonotus delphinocephalus, according to Dollo, was a crawling animal adapted to benthonic life in the euphotic region, and an occasional burrower in mud. This is shown by well developed eyes in the middle of the cephalon, a pointed pygidium, and the plow-like profile of the head. This was as far as Dollo went. From the very broad axial lobe of *Homalonotus* it is fair to infer that, like *Isotelus,* it had very long, strong coxopodites which it probably used in locomotion, and also very well-developed longitudinal muscles, to be used in swimming. From the phylogeny of the group, it is known that the oldest homalonotids had broad unpointed pygidia of the swimming type, and that the later species of the genus (Devonian) are almost all found in sandstone and shale, and all have wider axial lobes than the Ordovician forms. It is also known that the epistoma is narrower and more firmly fused into the doublure in later than in earlier species. These lines of evidence tend to confirm Dollo's conclusion, but also indicate that the animals retained the ability to swim well.

On the same grounds, *Olenellus thompsoni* and *Dalmanites limulurus* were assigned the same habitat and habits. Both were considered to have used the terminal spine as does *Limulus.*

Olenellus thompsoni is generally considered to be unique among trilobites in having a *Limulus*-like telson in place of a pygidium. This "telson" has exactly the position and characteristics of the spine on the fifteenth segment of *Mesonacis,* and so long ago as 1896, Marr (Brit. Assoc. Adv. Sci., Rept. 66th Meeting, page 764) wrote:

> The posterior segments of the remarkable trilobite *Mesonacis vermontana* are of a much more delicate character than the anterior ones, and the resemblance of the spine on the fifteenth "body segment" of this species to the terminal spine of *Olenellus* proper, suggests that in the latter subgenus posterior segments of a purely membranous character may have existed devoid of hard parts.

This prophecy was fulfilled by the discovery of the specimens which Walcott described as *Pædeumias transitans,* a species which is said by its author to be a "form otherwise identical with *O. thompsoni,* [but] has rudimentary thoracic segments and a *Holmia*-like pygidium posterior to the fifteenth spine-bearing segment of the thorax." A good specimen of this form was found at Georgia, Vermont, associated with the ordinary specimens of *Olenellus thompsoni,* and I believe that it is merely a complete specimen of that species.

Olenellus gilberti, which was formerly supposed to have a limuloid telson, has now been shown by Walcott (Smithson. Misc. Coll., vol. 64, 1916, p. 406, pl. 45, fig. 3) to be a *Mesonacis* and to have seven or eight thoracic segments and a small plate-like pygidium back of the spine-bearing fifteenth segment. All indications are that the spine was not in any sense a pygidium. Walcott states that *Olenellus* resulted from the resorption of the rudimentary segments of forms such as *Mesonacis* and *Pædeumias,* leaving the spine to function as a pygidium. This would mean the cutting off of the anus and the posterior part of the alimentary canal, and developing a new anal opening on the spine of one of the thoracic segments!

If the spine of the fifteenth segment is not a pygidium, could it be used, as Dollo postulates, as a pushing organ? Presumably not, for though in entire specimens of *Olenellus* (*Pædeumias*) it extends back beyond the pygidium, it probably was borne erect, like the similar spines in *Elliptocephala,* and not in the horizontal plane in which it is found in crushed specimens.

While this removes some of the force of Dollo's argument, his conclusion that *Olenellus* was a crawling, burrowing animal living in well lighted shallow waters was very likely correct. The long, annelid-like body indicates numerous crawling legs, there is no swimming pygidium, and the fusion of the cheeks in the head makes a stiff cephalon well adapted for burrowing.

Staff and Reck have pointed out that *Dalmanites limulurus* was not entirely a crawler, but, as shown by the large pygidium, a swimmer as well. This kind of trilobite probably represents the normal development of the group in Ordovician and later times. The Phacopidæ, Proëtidæ, Calymenidæ, and other trilobites of their structure could probably crawl or swim equally well, and could escape enemies by darting away or by "digging themselves in."

Cryptolithus tessellatus (*Trinucleus concentricus*) is cited by Dollo as an example of an adaptation to life in the aphotic benthos, permanently buried in the mud. In this case he appealed to Beecher's interpretation of the appendages, and pointed out that while the adult is blind, the young have simple eyes and probably passed part of their life in the lighted zone. It needs only a glance at the very young to convince one that the embryos had swimming habits, so that in this form one sees the adaptation of the individual during its history to all modes of life open to a trilobite. The habits of the Harpedidæ may have been similar to those of the Trinucleidæ, but the members of this family are supplied with broad flat genal spines. It has been suggested that these served like pontoons, runners, or snow-shoes, to enable the animal to progress over soft mud without sinking into it. Some such explanation might also be applied to the similar development in the wholly unrelated Bathyuridæ. The absence of compound eyes and the poor development of ocelli in the Harpedidæ suggest that they were burrowers, and from these two families, Trinucleidæ and Harpedidæ, it becomes evident that a pygidial point or spine is not a necessary part of the equipment of a burrowing trilobite. In fact, from the habits of *Limulus* it is known that the appendages are relied upon for digging, and that the telson is a useful but not indispensable pushing organ.

Deiphon is an interesting trilobite from many points of view. Its pleural lobes are reduced to a series of spines on either side of the body, and its pygidium is a mere spinose vestige. Dollo considered this animal a swimmer in the euphotic zone, because its eyes are on the anterior margin, its body depressed, its glabella globose, and its pygidium flat

and spinose. That such a method of life was secondary in a cheirurid was indicated to him by the fact that the more primitive members of the family seemed adapted for crawling. Staff and Reck have gone further and shown that the pygidium is only the vestige of a swimming pygidium, and that the great development of spines suggests a floating rather than a swimming mode of life. They therefore argue for a planktonic habitat. A similar explanation is suggested for *Acidaspis* and other highly spinose species.

The Aeglinidæ, or Cyclopygidæ as they are more properly called, present the most remarkable development of eyes among the trilobites. In this, Dollo saw, as indeed earlier writers have, an adaptation to a region of scanty light. The cephalon is not at all adapted to burrowing, but the pygidium is a good swimming organ, and one is apt to agree that this animal was normally an inhabitant of the ill lighted dysphotic region, but also a nocturnal prowler, making trips to the surface at night. Similar habits and habitat are certainly indicated for *Telephus* and the Remopleuridæ, but whether *Nileus* and the large-eyed *Bumastus* are capable of the same explanation is doubtful.

Finch (1904, p. 181) makes the suggestion that *"Nileus"* (*Vogdesia*) *vigilans,* an abundant trilobite in the calcareous shale of the Maquoketa, was in the habit of burying itself, posterior end first. He found a slab containing fifteen entire specimens, all of which had the cephalon extended horizontally near the surface of the stratum, and the thorax and pygidium projecting downward. The rock showed no evidence that they were in burrows, and the fact that all were in the same position indicates that the attitude was voluntarily assumed. They appear to have entrenched themselves by the use of the pygidia, which are incurved plates readily adapted for such use, and, buried up to the eyes, awaited the coming of prey, but were, apparently, smothered by a sudden influx of mud. The form of the eye in *Vogdesia vigilans* bears out this supposition of Finch's. Not only are the eyes unusually tall, but the palpebral lobe is much reduced, so that many of the lenses look upward and inward, as well as outward, forward and backward. The particular food required by *V. vigilans* must have been very plentiful in the Maquoketa seas of Illinois and Iowa, for the species was very abundant, but that its habits were self-destructive is also shown by the great number of complete enrolled specimens of all ages now found there. The soft mud was apparently fatal to the species before the end of the Maquoketa, for specimens are seen but very rarely in the higher beds.

Vogdesia vigilans is shaped much like *Bumastus, Illænus, Asaphus, Onchometopus,* and *Brachyaspis,* and it may be that these trilobites with incurved pygidia had all adopted the habit of digging in backward. As noted above, their pygidia are not very well adapted for swimming, and most of them have large or tall eyes.

Dollo's comparison of the Cyclopygidæ to the huge-eyed modern amphipod *Cystosoma* is instructive. This latter crustacean, which has the greater part of the dorsal surface of the carapace transformed into eyes, is said to live in the dysphotic zone, at depths of from 40 to 100 fathoms, and to come to the surface at night. It swims ventral side down.

The kinds of sediments in which trilobites are entombed have so far afforded little evidence as to their habitat. Frech (Lethæa palæozoica, 1897-1902, p. 67 *et seq.*) who has collected such evidence as is available on this subject, places as deeper water Ordovician deposits the "Trinucleus-Schiefer" of the upper Ordovician of northern Europe and Bohemia, the "Triarthrus-Schiefer" of America, the "Asaphus-Schiefer" of Scandinavia, Bohemia, Portugal, and France, and the Dalmania quartzite of Bohemia.

Cryptolithus and *Triarthrus,* although not confined to such deposits, are apt to occur

chiefly in very fine-grained shales, in company with graptolites. These latter are distributed by currents over great distances within short periods. It is somewhat curious that the nearly blind burrowing Trinucleidæ, the dysphotic, large-eyed Remopleuridæ and *Telephus*, the blind nektonic Agnostidæ and *Dionide*, and the planktonic graptolites should go together and make up almost the entire fauna of certain formations. Yet, when the life history of each type is studied, a logical explanation is readily at hand, for all have free-swimming larvæ.

A list of the methods of life noted above is given by way of summary, with examples.

- Pelagic
  - Planktonic
    - Primarily — Earliest protaspis of all trilobites
    - Secondarily — *Deiphon, Odontopleura,* etc.
  - Nektonic
    - Primarily — Later protaspis of all trilobites. *Naraoia*
    - Secondarily
      - Probably many thin-shelled trilobites with large pygidia (only partially nektonic)
      - Cyclopygidæ, Remopleuridæ — (nektonic dysphotic)
- Benthonic
  - Crawlers and slow swimmers — Most trilobites with small pygidia. *Triarthrus, Paradoxides,* etc.
  - Crawlers and active swimmers — Most trilobites with large pygidia. *Isotelus, Dalmanites,* etc.
  - Crawlers, slow swimmers, and burrowers — Trinucleidæ, Harpedidæ, some Mesonacidæ, etc.

FOOD AND FEEDING METHODS.

This subject has been less discussed than the methods of locomotion. The study of the appendages has shown that while the mouth parts were not especially powerful, they were at least numerous, and sufficiently armed with spines to shred up such animal and vegetable substances as they were liable to encounter. It having been ascertained that the shape of the glabella and axial lobe furnishes an indication of the degree of development of the alimentary canal it is possible to infer something of the kind of food used by various trilobites.

The narrow glabellæ and axial lobes of the oldest trilobites would seem to indicate a carnivorous habit, while the swollen glabellæ and wider lobes of later ones probably denote an adaptation to a mixed or even a vegetable diet. This can not be relied upon too strictly, of course, for the swollen glabellæ of such genera as *Deiphon* or *Sphærexochus* may be due merely to the shortening up of the cephalon.

Walcott (1918, p. 125) suggests that the trilobites lived largely upon worms and conceives of them as working down into the mud and prowling around in it in search of such prey. While there can be no doubt that many trilobites had the power of burying themselves in loose sand or mud, a common habit with modern crustaceans, most of them were of a very awkward shape for habitual burrowers, and how an annelid could be successfully pursued through such a medium by an animal of this sort is difficult to understand. In fact, the presence of the large hypostoma and the position of the mouth were the great handicaps of the trilobite as a procurer of live animal food, and coupled with the relatively slow means of locomotion, almost compel the conclusion that errant animals of any size were fairly safe from it. This restricts the range of animal food to small inactive creatures and the remains of such larger forms as died from natural causes. The modern Crustacea are effective scavengers, and it is probable that their early Palæozoic ancestors were equally so. It is a common saying that in the present stressful stage of the world's history, very few wild animals die a natural death. In Cambrian times, competition for

animal food was less keen, and with the exception of a few cephalopods, a few large annelids, and a few Crustacea like *Sidneyia,* there seem to have been no aggressive carnivores. In consequence, millions of animals must have daily died a natural death, and had there been no way of disposing of their remains, the sea bottom would soon have become so foul that no life could have existed. For the work of removal of this decaying matter, the carnivorous annelids and the Crustacea, mostly trilobites, were the only organisms, and it is probable that the latter did their full share. After prowling about and locating a carcass, the trilobite established himself over it, the cephalon and hypostoma on one end and the pygidium on the other enclosing and protecting the prey, which was shredded off and passed to the mouth at leisure by means of the spinose endobases.

Even in Middle Cambrian times some trilobites (e. g., *Paradoxides*) seem to have enlarged the capacity of the stomach and taken vegetable matter, but later, in the Upper Cambrian and Ordovician, when the development of cephalopods and fishes caused great competition for all animal food, dead or alive, most trilobites seem to have become omnivorous. This is of course shown by the swollen glabella, with reduced lateral furrows, and, in the case of a few species (*Calymene, Ceraurus*), the known enlargement of the stomach.

Cryptolithus is the only trilobite which has furnished any actual evidence as to its food. From the fact that the alimentary tract is found stuffed from end to end with fine mud, and because it is known to have been a burrower, it has been suggested by several that it was a mud feeder, passing the mud through the digestive tract for the sake of what organic matter it contained. Spencer (1903, p. 491) has suggested a modification of this view:

> The phyllopods appear to feed by turning over whilst swimming and seizing with their more posterior appendages a little mud which swarms with infusoria, etc. This mud is then pushed along the ventral groove to the mouth. Casts of the intestine of trilobites are still found filled with the mud.

Ceraurus and *Calymene* also must have occasionally swallowed mud in quantity, otherwise the form of the alimentary canal could not have been preserved as it is in a few of Doctor Walcott's specimens.

TRACKS AND TRAILS OF TRILOBITES.

Tracks and trails of various sorts have been ascribed by authors to trilobites since these problematic markings first began to attract attention, but as the appendages were until recently quite unknown, all the earlier references were purely speculative. The subject is a difficult one, and proof that any particular track or trail could have been made in only one way is not easily obtained. Since the appendages have actually been described, comparatively little has been done, Walcott's work on *Protichnites* (1912 B, p. 275) being the most important. Since the first description of *Protichnites* by Owen (Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, 1852, vol. 8, p. 247), it has been thought that these trails were made by crustaceans, and the only known contemporaneous crustaceans being trilobites, these animals were naturally suggested. Dawson (Canadian Nat. Geol., vol. 7, 1862, p. 276) ascribed them, with reserve, to *Paradoxides,* and Billings (1870, p. 484) suggested *Dikelocephalus* or *Aglaspis.* Walcott secured well preserved specimens which showed trifid tracks, and these were readily explained when he found the legs of *Neolenus,* which terminated with three large spines. Similar trifid terminations had already been described by Beecher, and clearly pictured in his restoration of *Triarthrus,* but the spines and the tracks had somehow not previously been connected in the mind of any observer. Walcott concluded that the tracks had been made

by a species of *Dikelocephalus,* possibly by *D. hartti,* which occurs both north and south of the Adirondacks. In a recent paper, Burling (Amer. Jour. Sci., ser. 4, vol. 44, 1917, p. 387) has argued that *Protichnites* was not the trail of a trilobite, but of a "short, low-lying, more or less heavy set, approximately 12-legged, crab-like animal," which had an oval shape, toed in, and was either extremely flexible or else short and more or less flexible in outline. This seems to describe a trilobite.

Climactichnites, the most discussed single trail of all, has also been ascribed to trilobites,—by Dana (Manual of Geology, 1863, p. 185), Billings (1870, p. 485), and Packard (Proc. Amer. Acad. Arts and Sci., vol. 36, 1900, p. 64),—though less frequently than to other animals. The latest opinion (see paper by Burling cited above) seems to be against this theory.

Miller (1880, p. 217) described under the generic name *Asaphoidichnus* two kinds of tracks which were such as he supposed might be made by an *Asaphus* (*Isotelus*). In referring to the second of the species, he says: "Some of the toe-tracks are more or less fringed, which I attribute to the action of water, though Mr. Dyer is impressed with the idea that it may indicate hairy or spinous feet." The type of this species, *A. dyeri,* is in the Museum of Comparative Zoology, and while it may be the trail of a trilobite, it would be difficult to explain how it was produced.

Ringueberg (1886, p. 228) has described very briefly tracks found in the upper part of the Medina at Lockport, New York. These consisted of a regularly succeeding series of ten paired divergent indentations arranged in two diverging rows, with the trail of the pygidium showing between each series. The ten pairs of indentations he considered could have been made by ten pairs of legs like those shown by the specimen of *Isotelus* described by Mickleborough, and the intermittent appearance of the impression of the pygidium suggested to him that the trilobite proceeded by a series of leaps.

Walcott (1918, pp. 174-175, pl. 37-42) has recently figured a number of interesting trails as those of trilobites, and has pointed out that a large field remains open to anyone who has the patience to develop this side of the subject.

PART III.

RELATIONSHIP OF THE TRILOBITES TO OTHER ARTHROPODA.

It can not be said that the new discoveries of appendagiferous trilobites have added greatly to previous knowledge of the systematic position of the group. Probably none will now deny that trilobites are Crustacea, and more primitive and generalized than any other group in that class. The chief interest at present lies in their relation to the most nearly allied groups, and to the crustacean ancestor.

Trilobites have been most often compared with Branchiopoda, Isopoda, and Merostomata, the present concensus of opinion inclining toward the notostracan branchiopods (Apodidæ in particular) as the most closely allied forms. It seems hardly worth while to burden these pages with a history of opinion on this subject, since it was not until the appendages were fully made out, from 1881 to 1895, that zoologists and palæontologists were in a position to give an intelligent judgment. The present status is due chiefly to Bernard (1894), Beecher (1897, 1900, *et seq.*), and Walcott (1912, *et seq.*).

The chief primitive characteristics of trilobites are: direct development from a protaspis common to the subclass; variability in the number of segments, position of the mouth, and type of eyes; and serially similar biramous appendages.

The recent study has modified the last statement slightly, since it appears that in some trilobites there was a modification of the appendages about the mouth, suggesting the initiation of a set of tagmata.

In comparing the trilobites with other Crustacea, the condition of the appendages must be especially borne in mind, for while these organs are those most intimately in contact with the environment, and most subject to modification and change, yet they have proved of greatest service in classification.

Appendages have been found on trilobites from only the Middle Cambrian and Middle and Upper Ordovician, but as the Ordovician was the time of maximum development of the group, it is probable that trilobites of later ages would show degradational rather than progressive changes. All the genera which are known show appendages of the same plan, and although new discoveries will doubtless reveal many modifications of that plan, general inferences may be drawn now with some assurance.

The chief characteristics of the appendages are: first, simple antennules, a primitive feature in all Crustacea, as shown by ontogeny; second, paired biramous appendages, similar to each other all along the body, the youngest and simplest in front of the anal segment, the oldest and most modified on the cephalon. The endobases are retained on all the coxopodites, except possibly, in some species, the anterior ones, and these gnathobases are modified in some genera as mouth-parts, while in others they are similar throughout the series. With these few fundamentals in mind, other Crustacea may be examined for likenesses. The differences are obvious.

Crustacea.

BRANCHIOPODA.

The early idea that the trilobites were closely related to the Branchiopoda was rejuvenated by the work of Bernard on the Apodidæ (1892) and has since received the support

of most writers on the subject. Fundamentally, a great deal of the argument seems to be that *Apus* lies the nearest of any modern representative of the class to the theoretical crustacean ancestor, and as the trilobites are the oldest Crustacea, they must be closely related. Most writers state that the trilobites could not be derived from the Branchiopoda (see, however, Walcott 1912 A), nor the latter from any known trilobite, but both subclasses are believed to be close to the parent stem.

Viewed from the dorsal side, there is very little similarity between any of the branchiopods and the trilobites, and it is only in the Notostraca, with their sessile eyes and depressed form, that any comparison can be made. The chief way in which modern Branchiopoda and Trilobita agree is that both have a variable number of segments in the body, that number becoming very large in *Apus* on the one hand and *Mesonacis* and *Pœdeumias* on the other. In neither are the appendages, except those about the mouth, grouped in tagmata. Other likenesses are: the Branchiopoda are the only Crustacea, other than Trilobita, in which gnathobases are found on limbs far removed from the mouth; the trunk limbs are essentially leaf-like in both, though the limb of the branchiopod is not so primitive as that of the trilobite; caudal cerci occur in both groups.

If the appendages be compared in a little more detail, the differences prove more striking than the likenesses.

In the Branchiopoda, the antennules are either not segmented or only obscurely so. In trilobites they are richly segmented.

In Branchiopoda, the antennæ are variable. In the Notostraca they are vestigial, while in the males of the Anostraca they are powerful and often complexly developed claspers. Either condition might develop from the generalized biramous antennæ of Trilobita, but the present evidence indicates a tendency toward obsolescence. Claus' observations indicate that the antennæ of the Anostraca are developments of the exopodites, rather than of the endopodites.

The mandibles and maxillæ of the Branchiopoda are greatly reduced, and grouped closely about the mouth. Only the coxopodites of the Trilobita are modified as oral appendages.

The trunk limbs of *Apus* are supposed to be the most primitive among the Branchiopoda, and comparison will be made with them. Each appendage consists of a flattened axial portion, from the inner margin of which spring six endites, and from the outer, two large flat exites (see fig. 34). This limb is not articulated with the ventral membrane, but attached to it, and, if Lankester's interpretation of the origin of schizopodal limbs be correct, then the limb of *Apus* bears very little relation to that of the Trilobita. In *Apus* there is no distinct coxopodite and the endobases which so greatly resemble the similar organs in the Trilobita are not really homologous with them, but are developments of the first endite. Beecher's comparison of the posterior thoracic and pygidial limbs of *Triarthrus* with those of *Apus* can not be sustained. Neither *Triarthrus* nor any other trilobite shows any trace of phyllopodan limbs. Beecher figured (1894 B, pl. 7, figs. 3, 4) a series of endopodites from the pygidium of a young *Triarthrus* beside a series of limbs from a larval *Apus*. Superficially, they are strikingly alike, but while the endopodites of *Triarthrus* are segmented, the limbs of *Apus* are not, and the parts which appear to be similar are really not homologous. The similarity of the thoracic limbs in the two groups is therefore a case of parallelism and does not denote relationship.

Geologically, the Branchiopoda are as old as the Trilobita, and while they did not have the development in the past that the trilobite had, they were apparently differentiated fully as early. Anostraca, Notostraca and Conchostraca, three of the four orders, are represented in the Cambrian by forms which are, except in their appendages, as highly organized as the existing species. Brief notes on the principal Middle Cambrian Branchiopoda follow:

Burgessia bella Walcott.

Illustrated: Walcott, Smithson. Misc. Coll., vol. 57, 1912, p. 177, pl. 27, figs. 1-3; pl. 30, figs. 3, 4.

This is the most strikingly like the modern Branchiopoda of any species described by Walcott from the Middle Cambrian, and invites comparison with *Apus*. The carapace is long, loosely attached to the body, and extends over the greater part of the thorax. The eyes are small, sessile, and close to the anterior margin.

The appendages of the head consist of two pairs of antennæ, and three pairs of slender, jointed legs. Both pairs of antennæ are slender and many-jointed, the antennules somewhat smaller than the antennæ. The exact structure of the limbs about the mouth has not yet been made out, but they are slender, tapering, endopodite-like legs, with at least three or four segments in each, and probably more.

There are eight pairs of thoracic appendages, each limb having the form of the endopodite of a trilobite and consisting of seven segments and a terminal spine. The proximal three segments of each appendage are larger than the outer ones, and have a flattened triangular expansion on the inner side. Walcott also states that "One specimen shows on seven pairs of legs, small, elongate, oval bodies attached near the first joint to the outer side of the leg. These bodies left but slight impression on the rock and are rarely seen. They appear to represent the gills." They are not figured, but taken in connection with the endopodite-like appearance of the segmented limbs, one would expect them to be vestigial exopodites.

A small hypostoma is present on the ventral side, and several of the specimens show wonderfully well the form of the alimentary canal and the hepatic cæca. The main branches of the latter enter the mesenteron just behind the fifth pair of cephalic appendages.

Behind the thorax the abdomen is long, limbless, and tapers to a point. It is said to consist of at least thirty segments.

Compared with *Apus, Burgessia* appears both more primitive and more specialized. The carapace and limbless abdomen are *Apus*-like, but there are very few appendagiferous segments, and the appendages are not at all phyllopodan, but directly comparable with those of trilobites, except, of course, for the uniramous character of the cephalic limbs. A closer comparison may be made with *Marrella*.

Waptia fieldensis Walcott.

Illustrated: Walcott, Smithson. Misc. Coll., vol. 57, 1912, p. 181, pl. 27, figs. 4, 5.

The carapace is short, covering the head and the anterior part of the thorax. The latter consists of eight short segments with appendages, while the six abdominal segments, which are similar to those of the thorax, are without limbs except for the last, which bears a pair of broad swimmerets. The eyes are marginal and pedunculate. The antennules are imperfectly known, but apparently short, while the antennæ are long and slender, with relatively few, long, segments. The mandibles appear to be like endopodites of trilobites and show at least six segments. As so often happens in these specimens from British Columbia,

the preservation of the other appendages is unsatisfactory. As illustrated (Walcott, 1912 A, pl. 27, fig. 5), both endopodites and exopodites appear to be present, and the shaft of the exopodite seems to be segmented as in *Triarthrus*.

Walcott considers *Waptia* as a transitional form between the Branchiopoda and the Malacostraca.

Yohoia tenuis Walcott.

Illustrated: Walcott, Smithson. Misc. Coll., vol. 57, 1912, p. 172, pl. 29, figs. 7-13.

This species, though incompletely known, has several interesting characteristics. The head shows, quite plainly in some specimens, the five segments of which it is composed. The eyes are small, situated in a niche between the first and second segments, and are described as being pedunculate. The eight segments of the thorax all show short triangular pleural extensions, somewhat like those of *Remopleurides* or *Robergia*. The abdomen consists of four cylindrical segments, the last with a pair of expanded caudal rami.

The antennules appear to be short, while the antennæ are large, with several segments, ending in three spines, and apparently adapted for serving as claspers in the male. The third, fourth, and fifth pairs of cephalic appendages are short, tapering, endopodite-like legs similar to those of *Burgessia*.

The appendages of the thorax are not well preserved, and there seem to be none on the abdomen.

This species is referred by Walcott to the Anostraca.

Opabina regalis Walcott.

Illustrated: Walcott, Smithson. Misc. Coll., vol. 57, 1912, p. 167, pl. 27, fig. 6; pl. 28, fig. 1.

This most remarkably specialized anostracan is not well enough known to allow comparison to be made with other contemporaneous Crustacea, but it is worthy of mention.

There is no carapace, the eyes are pedunculated, thorax and abdomen are not differentiated, and the telson is a broad, elongate, spatulate plate. There seem to be sexual differences in the form of the anterior cephalic and caudal appendages, but this is not fully established. The most remarkable feature is the long, large, median cephalic appendage which is so suggestive of the proboscis of the recent *Thamnocephalus platyurus* Packard. The appendages are not well enough preserved to permit a determination as to whether they are schizopodal or phyllopodan.

Summary.

Walcott referred *Burgessia* and *Waptia* to new families under the Notostraca, while *Yohoia* and *Opabina* were placed with the Anostraca. Except for the development of the carapace, there is a striking similarity between *Waptia* and *Yohoia*, serving to connect the two groups.

The Branchiopoda were very highly specialized as early as Middle Cambrian time, the carapace of the Notostraca being fully developed and the abdomen limbless. Some (*Burgessia*) had numerous segments, but most had relatively few. The most striking point about them, however, is that so far as is known none of them had phyllopodan limbs. While the preservation is in most cases unsatisfactory, such limbs as are preserved are trilobite-like, and in the case of *Burgessia* there can be no possible doubt of the structure. Another interesting feature is the retention by *Yohoia* of vestiges of pleural lobes. The Middle

Cambrian Branchiopoda are more closely allied to the Trilobita than are the modern ones, but still the subclass is not so closely related to that group as has been thought. Modern *Apus* is certainly much less like a trilobite than has been supposed, and very far from being primitive. The Branchiopoda of the Middle Cambrian could have been derived from the trilobites by the loss of the pleural lobes, the development of the posterior margin of the cephalon to form a carapace, and the loss of the appendages from the abdominal segments. Modern branchiopods can be derived from those of the Middle Cambrian by the modification of the appendages through the reduction of the endopodite and exopodite and the growth of the endites and exites from the proximal segments.

Carpenter (1903, p. 334), from his study of recent crustaceans, has already come to the conclusion that the Branchiopoda are not the most primitive subclass, and this opinion is strengthened by evidence derived from the Trilobita and from the Branchiopoda of the Middle Cambrian.

COPEPODA.

The non-parasitic Eucopepoda are in many ways much nearer to the trilobites than any other Crustacea. These little animals lack the carapace, and the body is short, with typically ten free segments and a telson bearing caudal furcæ. The head is composed of five segments (if the first thoracic segment is really the fused first and second), is often flattened, and lacks compound eyes. Pleural lobes are well developed, but instead of being flattened as in the trilobite, they are turned down at the sides or even incurved. A labrum is present.

The antennules, antennæ, and mandibles are quite like those of trilobites. The antennules are very long and made up of numerous segments. The antennæ are biramous, the junction between the coxopodite and basipodite is well marked, and the endopodite consists of only two segments.

The mandibles are said to "retain more completely than in any other Crustacea the form of biramous swimming limbs which they possess in the nauplius." The coxopodites form jaws, while both the reduced endopodite and exopodite are furnished with long setæ. The maxillulæ are also biramous, but very different in form from those of the trilobite, and the maxillæ are phyllopodan.

The first thoracic limb is uniramous and similar to the maxillæ, but the five following pairs are biramous swimming legs with coxopodite, basipodite, exopodite, and endopodite. Both the exopodite and endopodite are shorter than in the trilobites, but bear setæ and spines.

The last pair of thoracic limbs are usually modified in the male into copulatory organs. In some females they are enlarged to form plates for the protection of the eggs, in others they are unmodified. In still others they are much reduced or disappear. The abdomen is without appendages.

The development in Copepoda is direct, by the addition posteriorly to the larval form (nauplius) of segments, and the appendages remain nearly unmodified in the adult.

Altogether, the primitive Copepoda seem much more closely allied to the Trilobita than any other modern Crustacea, but unfortunately no fossil representative of the subclass has been found. This is not so surprising when one considers the habits and the habitat of most of the existing species. Many are parasitic, many pelagic in both fresh and marine waters, and many of those living on the bottom belong to the deep sea or fresh water. Most free-living forms are minute, and all have thin tests.

The eyes of copepods are of interest, in that they suggest the paired ocelli of the Harpedidæ and Trinucleidæ. In the Copepoda there are, in the simplest and typical form of these organs, three ocelli, each supplied with its own nerve from the brain. Two of these are dorsal and look upward, while the third is ventral. In some forms the dorsal ocelli are doubled, so that five in all are present (cf. some species of *Harpes* with three ocelli on each mound). In some, the cuticle over the dorsal eyes is thickened so as to form a lens, as appears to be the case in the trilobites. These peculiar eyes may be a direct inheritance from the Hypoparia.

ARCHICOPEPODA.

Professor Schuchert has called my attention to the exceedingly curious little crustacean which Handlirsch (1914) has described from the Triassic of the Vosges. Handlirsch erected a new species, genus, family, and order for this animal, which he considered most closely allied to the copepods, hence the ordinal name. *Euthycarcinus kessleri,* the species in question, was found in a clayey lens in the Voltzia standstone (Upper Bunter). Associated with the new crustacean were specimens of *Estheria* only, but in the Voltzia sandstone itself land plants, fresh and brackish water animals, and occasionally, marine animals are found. The clayey lens seems to have been of fresh or brackish water origin.

All of the specimens (three were found) are small, about 35 mm. long without including the caudal rami, crushed flat, and not very well preserved. The head is short, not so wide as the succeeding segments, and apparently has large compound eyes at the posterior lateral angles. The thorax consists of six segments which are broader than the head or abdomen. The abdomen, which is not quite complete in any one specimen, is interpreted by Handlirsch as having four segments in the female and five in the male. Least satisfactory of all are traces of what are interpreted by the describer as a pair of long stiff unsegmented cerci or stylets on the last segment.

The ventral side of one head shield shows faint traces of several appendages which must have presented great difficulty in their interpretation. A pair of antennules appear to spring from near the front of the lower surface, and the remainder of the organs are grouped about the mouth, which is on the median line back of the center. Handlirsch sees in these somewhat obscure appendages four pairs of biramous limbs, antennæ, mandibles, maxillulæ, and maxillæ, both branches of each consisting of short similar segments, endopodites and exopodites being alike pediform.

Each segment of the thorax has a pair of appendages, and those on the first two are clearly biramous. The endopodites are walking legs made up of numerous short segments (twelve or thirteen according to Handlirsch's drawing), while the exopodite is a long breathing and rowing limb, evidently of great flexibility and curiously like the antennules of the same animal. The individual segments are narrow at the proximal end, expand greatly at the sides, and have a concave distal profile. A limb reminds one of a stipe of *Diplograptus.* Both branches are spiniferous.

No appendages are actually present on the abdomen, but each segment has a pair of scars showing the points of attachment. From the small size of these, it is inferred that the limbs were poorly developed.

This species is described in so much detail because, if it is a primitive copepod, it has a very important bearing on the ancestry of that group and is the only related form that has been found fossil.

The non-parasitic copepods have typically ten (eleven) free segments, including the telson, and the four abdominal segments are much more slender than the six in front of them. In this respect the agreement is striking, and the presence of five pairs of appendages in the head and six free segments in the thorax is a more primitive condition than in modern forms where the first two thoracic segments are apparently fused (Calman, 1909, p. 73).

The large compound eyes of this animal are of course not present in the copepods, but as vestiges of eyes have been found in the young of *Calanus,* it is possible that the ancestral forms had eyes.

The greatest difficulty is in finding a satisfactory explanation of the appendages. The general condition is somewhat more primitive than in the copepods, for all the appendages are biramous, while in the modern forms the maxillipeds are uniramous and the sixth pair of thoracic appendages are usually modified in the male as copulatory organs. In the copepods the modification is in the direction of reduction, both endopodites and exopodites usually possessing fewer segments than the corresponding branches in the trilobites. The endopodite of *Euthycarcinus,* on the contrary, possesses, if Handlirsch's interpretation is correct, twice as many segments as the endopodite of a trilobite. If the Copepoda are descended from the trilobites, as everything tends to indicate, then *Euthycarcinus* is certainly not a connecting link. The only truly copepodan characteristic of this genus is the agreement in number and disposition of free segments. The division into three regions instead of two, the compound eyes, and the structure of the appendages are all foreign to that group.

With the Limulava fresh in mind, one is tempted to compare *Euthycarcinus* with that ancient type. The short head and large marginal eyes recall *Sidneyia,* and the grouping of the appendages about the mouth also suggests that genus and *Emeraldella.* In the Limulava likewise there is a contraction of the posterior segments, although it is behind the ninth instead of the sixth. There is no likeness in detail between the appendages of the Limulava and those of *Euthycarcinus,* but the composite claws of *Sidneyia* show that in this group there was a tendency toward the formation of extra segments.

If this fossil had been found in the Cambrian instead of the Triassic, it would probably have been referred to the Limulava, and is not at all impossible that it is a descendant from that group. As a connecting link between the Trilobita and Copepoda it is, however, quite unsatisfactory.

OSTRACODA.

The bivalved shell of the Ostracoda gives to this group of animals an external appearance very different from that of the trilobites, but the few appendages, though highly modified, are directly comparable. The development, although modified by the early appearance of the bivalved shell within which the nauplius lies, is direct. Imperfect compound eyes are present in one family.

The antennules are short and much modified by functioning as swimming, creeping, or digging organs. They consist of eight or less segments. The antennæ are also locomotor organs, and in most orders are biramous. The mandibles are biramous and usually with, but sometimes without, a gnathobase. The maxillulæ are likewise biramous but much modified.

The homology of the third post-oral limb is in question, some considering it a maxilla and others a maxilliped. It has various forms in different genera. It is always much modi-

fied, but exopodite and endopodite are generally represented at least by rudiments. The fourth post-oral limb is a lobed plate, usually not distinctly segmented, and the fifth a uniramous pediform leg. The sixth, if present at all, is vestigial.

Very little comparison can be made between the Ostracoda and Trilobita, other than in the ground-plan of the limbs, but the presence of biramous antennæ is a primitive characteristic.

CIRRIPEDIA.

Like the ostracod, the adult cirriped bears little external resemblance to the trilobite. The form of the nauplius is somewhat peculiar, but it has the typical three pairs of appendages, to which are added in the later metanauplius stages the maxillæ and six pairs of thoracic appendages. In the adult, the antennules, which serve for attachment of the larva, usually persist in a functionless condition, while the antennæ disappear. The mandibles, maxillulæ, and maxillæ are simple and much modified to form mouth parts, and the six pairs of thoracic appendages are developed into long, multisegmented, biramous appendages bearing numerous setæ which serve for catching prey. Paired eyes are present in later metanauplius stages, but lost early in the development. The relationship to the trilobite evidently is not close.

MALACOSTRACA.

1. Phyllocarida.

The oldest malacostracans whose appendages are known are species of *Hymenocaris*. One, described as long ago as 1866 by Salter, has what seem to be a pair of antennæ and a pair of jaw-like mouth-parts. Another more completely known species has recently been reported by Walcott (1912 A, p. 183, pl. 31, figs. 1-6). This latter form is described as having five pairs of cephalic appendages: a pair of minute antennules beside the small pedunculated eyes, a pair of large uniramous antennæ, slender mandibles and maxillulæ, and large maxillæ composed of short stout segments. There are eight pairs of biramous thoracic limbs, the exopodites setiferous, the endopodites composed of short wide segments and ending in terminal claw-like spines. These appendages are like those of trilobites.

Hymenocaris belongs to the great group of extinct ceratocarid Crustacea which are admitted to the lowest of the malacostracan orders, Phyllocarida, because of their resemblance to *Nebalia, Paranebalia, Nebaliopsis,* and *Nebaliella,* the four genera which are at present living. The general form of the recent and fossil representatives of the order is strikingly similar. The chief outward difference is that in many of the fossils the telson is accompanied by two furcal rami, while in the modern genera it is simple. It now becomes possible to make some comparison between the appendages of *Hymenocaris* of the Middle Cambrian and the Nebaliidæ of modern seas.

In both there are five pairs of cephalic and eight of thoracic appendages, while those of the abdomen of *Hymenocaris* are not known.

In both, the antennules are less developed than the antennæ. In the Nebaliidæ the antennules show evidence of having been originally double (they are obviously so in the embryo), while they are single in *Hymenocaris.* In both, the antennæ are simple. The remaining cephalic organs are too little shown by the specimen from the Middle Cambrian to allow detailed comparison. The mandibles, maxillulæ, and maxillæ of *Nebalia* are, however, of types which could be derived from the trilobite.

In three of the genera of the Nebaliidæ, the eight pairs of thoracic limbs are all similar to one another, though those of the genera differ. All are biramous. The limbs of *Hymenocaris* can apparently be most closely correlated with those of *Nebalia antarctica,* in which the endopodite consists of short flattened segments, and the exopodite is a long setiferous plate. Epipodites are present in both *Nebalia* and *Hymenocaris.*

So far as the appendages of *Hymenocaris* are known, they agree very well with those of the Nebaliidæ, and since they are of the trilobite type, it may safely be stated that the Trilobita and Malacostraca are closely related.

2. Syncarida.

Walcott (1918, p. 170) has compared the limbs of *Neolenus* with those of the syncarid genera *Anaspides* and *Koonunga.* These are primitive Malacostraca without a carapace, but as they have a compressed test and *Anaspides* has stalked eyes, their gross anatomy does not suggest the trilobite. The thoracic appendages are very trilobite-like, since the endopodite has six segments (in *Anaspides*) and a multisegmented setiferous exopodite. The coxopodites, except of the first thoracic segment, do not, however, show endobases, and those which are present are peculiar articulated ones. The cephalic appendages are specialized, and the antennules double as in most of the Malacostraca. External epipodites are very numerous on the anterior limbs.

This group extends back as far as the Pennsylvanian and had then probably already become adapted to fresh-water life. It may be significant that the Palæozoic syncarids appear to have lacked epipodites. While differing very considerably from the Trilobita, the Syncarida could have been derived from them.

3. Isopoda.

Since the earliest times there has been a constant temptation to compare the depressed shields of the trilobites with the similar ones of isopods. Indeed, when *Serolis* with its Lichadian body was first discovered about a hundred years ago, it was thought that living trilobites had been found at last. The trilobate body, cephalic shield, sessile eyes, abdominal shield, and pleural extensions make a wonderful parallel. This similarity is, however, somewhat superficial. The appendages are very definitely segregated in groups on the various regions of the body, and while the pleopods are biramous, the thoracic legs are without exopodites (except in very early stages of development of one genus). The Isopoda arose just at the time of the disappearance of the Trilobita, and there seems a possibility of a direct derivation of the one group from the other. It should be pointed out that while the differences of Isopoda from Trilobita are important, they are all of a kind which could have been produced by the development from a trilobite-like stock. For example:

Isopoda have a definite number of segments. There is less variation in the number of segments among the later than the earlier trilobites.

Isopoda have no facial suture. In at least three genera of trilobites the cheeks become fused to the cranidium and the sutures obliterated.

Isopoda have one or two segments of the thorax annexed to the head. While this is not known to occur in trilobites, it is possible that it did.

Most Isopoda have a fairly stiff ventral test. The ventral membrane of trilobites would probably have become stiffened by impregnation of lime if the habit of enrollment had been given up.

In Isopoda the antennæ are practically uniramous sensory organs. The second cephalic appendages of trilobites are capable of such development through reduction of the exopodite.

In the Isopoda the coxopodites are usually fused with the body, remaining as free, movably articulated segments only in a part of the thoracic legs of one suborder, the Asellota. Endobases are entirely absent. This is of course entirely unlike the condition in Trilobita, but a probable modification.

In Isopoda there is a distinct grouping of the appendages, with specialization of function. The trilobites show a beginning of tagmata, and such development would be expected if evolution were progressive.

In both groups, development from the embryo is direct. Rudiments of exopodites of thoracic legs have been seen in the young of one genus.

The oldest known isopod is *Oxyuropoda ligioides* Carpenter and Swain (Proc. Royal Irish Acad., vol. 27, sect. B, 1908, p. 63, fig. 1), found in the Upper Devonian of County Kilkenny, Ireland. The appendages are not known, but the test is in some ways like that of a trilobite. The thorax, abdomen, and pygidium are especially like those of certain trilobites, and there is no greater differentiation between thorax and abdomen than there is between the regions before and behind the fifteenth segment of a *Pædeumias* or *Mesonacis*. The anal segment is directly comparable to the pygidium of a *Ceraurus*, the stiff unsegmented uropods being like the great lateral spines of that genus.

The interpretation of the head offered by Carpenter and Swain is very difficult to understand, as their description and figure do not seem to agree. What they consider the first thoracic segment (fused with the head) seems to me to be the posterior part of the cephalon, and it shows at the back a narrow transverse area which is at least analogous to the nuchal segment of the trilobite. If this interpretation can be sustained, *Oxyuropoda* would be a very primitive isopod in which the first thoracic segment (second of Carpenter and Swain) is still free. According to the interpretation of the original authors, the species is more specialized than recent Isopoda, as they claim that two thoracic segments are fused in the head. The second interpretation was perhaps made on the basis of the number of segments (nineteen) in a recent isopod.

MARRELLA SPLENDENS WALCOTT.

Illustrated: Walcott, Smithson. Misc. Coll., vol. 57, 1912, p. 192, pls. 25, 26.

Among the most wonderful of the specimens described by Doctor Walcott is the "lace crab." While the systematic position was not satisfactorily determined by the describer, it has been aptly compared to a trilobite. The great nuchal and genal spines and the large marginal sessile eyes, coupled with the almost total lack of thoracic and abdominal test, give it a bizarre appearance which may obscure its real relationships.

The cephalon appears to bear five pairs of appendages, antennules, and antennæ, both tactile organs with numerous short segments, mandibles, and first and second maxillæ. The last three pairs are elongate, very spinose limbs, of peculiar appearance. They seem to have seven segments, but are not well preserved. These organs are attached near the posterior end of the labrum.

There are twenty-four pairs of biramous thoracic appendages, which lack endobases. The endopodites are long and slender, with numerous spines; the exopodites have narrow, thin shafts, with long, forward pointed setæ. The anal segment consists of a single plate.

Further information about this fossil will be eagerly awaited. None of the illustrations so far published shows biramous appendages on the cephalon. This, coupled with the presence of tactile antennæ, makes its reference to the Trilobita impossible, but the present interpretation indicates that it was closely allied to them.

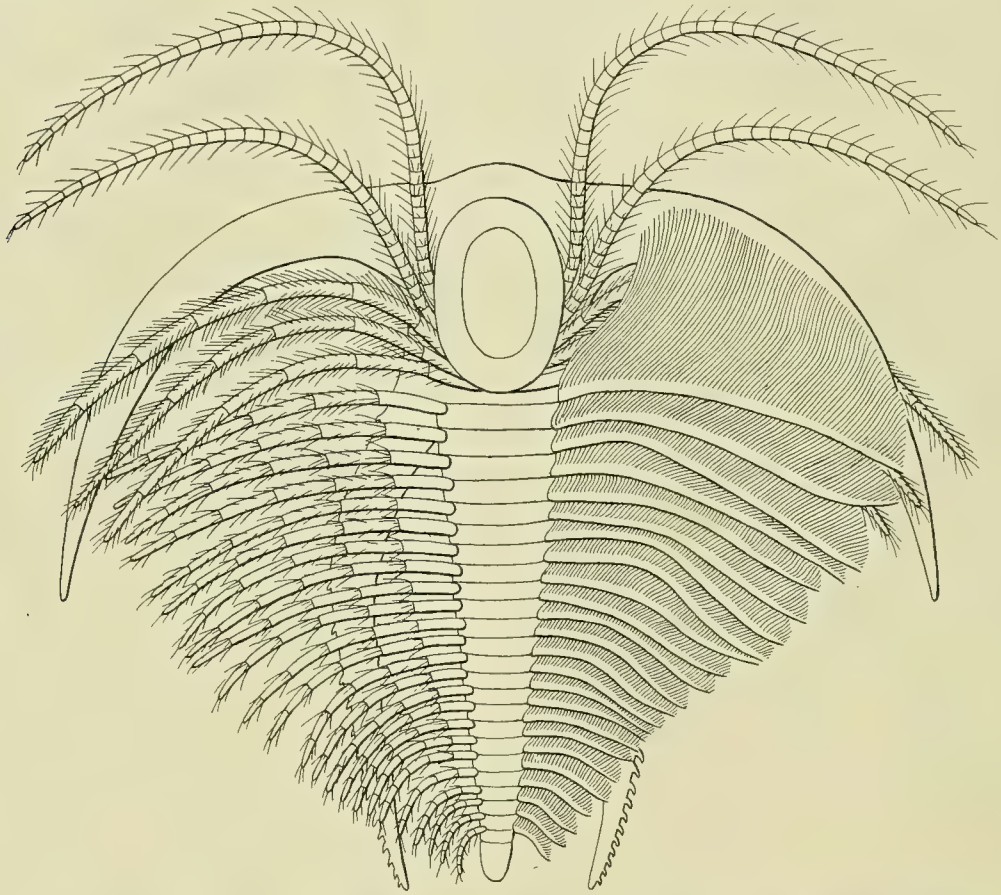


Fig. 32.—*Marrella splendens* Walcott. Restoration of the ventral surface, based upon the photographs and descriptions published by Walcott. Although all the limbs of the trunk appear to be biramous, only endopodites are placed on one side and exopodites on the other, for the sake of greater clearness in the illustration. Drawn by Doctor Elvira Wood, under the supervision of the writer. × about 6.

Restoration of Marrella.

(Text fig. 32.)

The accompanying restoration of the ventral surface of *Marrella* is a tentative one, based on Doctor Walcott's description and figures. The outline is taken from his plate 26, figure 1; the appendages of the head from plate 26, figures 1-3, 5, and plate 25, figures 2, 3; the endopodites, shown on the left side only, from figures 3 and 6, plate 25. I have not studied actual specimens, and the original description is very incomplete. The restoration is therefore subject to revision as the species becomes better known.

ARACHNIDA.

No attempt will be made to pass in review all of the subclasses of the arachnids. Some of the Merostomata are so obviously trilobite-like that it would seem that their relationship could easily be proved. The task has not yet been satisfactorily accomplished, however, and new information seems only to add to the difficulties.

So far as I know, the Araneæ have not previously been compared directly with trilobites, although such treatment consists merely in calling attention to their crustacean affinities, as has often been done.

Carpenter's excellent summary (1903, p. 347) of the relationship of the Arachnida to the trilobites may well be quoted at this point:

> The discussion in a former section of this essay on the relationship between the various orders of Arachnida led to the conclusion that the primitive arachnids were aquatic animals, breathing by means of appendicular gills. Naturally, therefore, we compare the arachnids with the Crustacea rather than with the Insecta. The immediate progenitors of the Arachnida appear to have possessed a head with four pairs of limbs, a thorax with three segments, and an abdomen with thirteen segments and a telson, only six of which can be clearly shown by comparative morphology to have carried appendicular gills. But embryological evidence enables us to postulate with confidence still more remote ancestors in which the head carried well developed compound eyes and five pairs of appendages, while it may be supposed that all the abdominal segments, except the anal, bore limbs. In these very ancient arthropods, all the limbs, except the feelers, had ambulatory and branchial branches; and one important feature in the evolution of the Arachnida must have been the division of labour between the anterior and posterior limbs, the former becoming specialized for locomotion, the latter for breathing. Another was the loss of feelers and the degeneration of the compound eyes. Thus we are led to trace the Arachnida (including the Merostomata and Xiphosura) back to ancestors which can not be regarded as arachnids, but which were identical with the primitive trilobites, and near the ancestral stock of the whole crustacean class.

TRILOBITES NOT ARACHNIDA.

While no one having any real knowledge of the Trilobita has adopted Lankester's scheme of the inclusion of the group as the primitive grade in the Arachnida, reference to it may not be amiss. This theory is best set forth in the Encyclopædia Britannica, Eleventh Edition, under the article on Arachnida. It is there pointed out that the primitive arachnid, like the primitive crustacean, should be an animal without a fixed number of somites, and without definitely grouped tagmata. As Lankester words it, they should be anomomeristic and anomotagmatic. The trilobites are such animals, and he considers them Arachnida and not Crustacea for the following reasons:

Firstly and chiefly, because they have only one pair (apart from the eyes) of pre-oral appendages. "This fact renders their association with the Crustacea impossible, if classification is to be the expression of genetic affinity inferred from structural coincidence."

Secondly, the lateral eyes resemble no known eyes so closely as the lateral eyes of *Limulus*.

Thirdly, the trilobation of the head and body, due to the expansion and flattening of the sides or pleura, is like that of *Limulus*, but "no crustacean exhibits this trilobite form."

Fourthly, there is a tendency to form a pygidial or telsonic shield, "a fusion of the posterior somites of the body, which is precisely identical in character with the metasomatic carapace of *Limulus*." No crustacean shows metasomatic fusion of segments.

Fifthly, a large post-anal spine is developed "in some trilobites" (he refers to a figure of *Dalmanites*).

Sixthly, there are frequently lateral spines on the pleura as in *Limulus*. No crustacean has lateral pleural spines.

These points may be taken up in order.

1. If trilobites have one appendage-bearing segment in front of the mouth, they are Arachnida; if two, Crustacea. This is based on the idea that in the course of evolution of the Arthropoda, the mouth has shifted backward from a terminal position, and that as a pair of appendages is passed, they lose their function as mouth-parts and eventually become simple tactile organs. Thus arise the cheliceræ of most arachnids, and the two pairs of tactile antennæ of most Crustacea. This theory is excellent, and the rule holds well for modern forms, but as shown by the varying length of the hypostoma in different trilobites, the position of the mouth had not become fixed in that group. In some trilobites, like *Triarthrus,* the gnathobases of the second pair of appendages still function, but in all, so far as known, the mouth was back of the points of attachment of at least two pairs of appendages, and in some at least, back of the points of attachment of four pairs. As pointed out in the case of *Calymene* and *Ceraurus,* the trilobites show a tendency toward the degeneration of the first and second pairs of biramous appendages, particularly of the gnathobases. They are in just that stage of the backward movement of the mouth when the function of the antennæ as mandibles has not yet been lost. If the presence of functional gnathobases back of the mouth, rather than the points of attachment in front of the mouth, is to be the guide, then *Triarthrus* might be classed as an arachnid and *Calymene* and *Isotelus* as crustaceans. In other words, the rule breaks down in this primitive group.

2. Superficially, the eyes of some trilobites do look like those of *Limulus,* but how close the similarity really was it is impossible to say. The schizochroal eyes were certainly very different, and Watase and Exner both found the structure of the eye of the trilobite unlike that of *Limulus.*

3. The importance of the trilobate form of the trilobite is very much overestimated. It and the pygidium are due solely to functional requirements. The axial lobe contained practically all the vital organs and the side lobes were mechanical in origin and secondarily protective. That the crustacean is not trilobate is frequently asserted by zoologists, yet every text-book contains a picture of a segment of a lobster with its axial and pleural lobes. It is a fundamental structure among the Crustacea, obscured because most of them are compressed rather than depressed.

4. The pygidium of trilobites is compared with the metasomatic shield of *Limulus.* No homology, if homology is intended, could be more erroneous. The metasomatic shield of *Limulus* is, as shown by ontogeny and phylogeny, formed by the fusion of segments formerly free, and includes the segments between the cephalic and anal shields, or what would be known as the thorax of a trilobite. No trilobite has a metasomatic shield. The pygidium of a trilobite, as shown by ontogeny, is built up by growth in front of the anal region, and since the segments were never free, it can not strictly be said to be composed of fused segments. Some Crustacea do form a pygidial shield, as in certain orders of the Isopoda.

5. The post-anal spine of *Dalmanites* and some other trilobites is similar to that of *Limulus,* but this seems a point of no especial significance. That a similar spine has not been developed in the Crustacea is probably due to the fact that they do not have the broad depressed shape which makes it so difficult for a *Limulus* to right itself when once turned on its back. Relatively few trilobites have it, and it is probably correlated with some special adaptation.

6. There is nothing among the trilobites comparable to the movable lateral spines of the metasoma of *Limulus*.

While, as classifications are made up, the Trilobita must be placed in the Crustacea rather than the Arachnida, there is no reason why both the modern Crustacea and the Arachnida should not be derived from the trilobites.

MEROSTOMATA.

It has been a custom of long standing to compare the trilobite with *Limulus*. Packard (1872) gave great vitality to the theory of the close affinity of the two when he described the so called trilobite-stage in the development of *Limulus polyphemus*. His influence on Walcott's ideas (1881) is obvious. Lankester has gone still further, and associated the Trilobita with the Merostomata in the Arachnida.

The absence of antennules at any stage in development allies *Limulus* so closely with the Arachnida and separates it so far from the Trilobita that in recent years there has been a tendency to give up the attempt to prove a relationship between the merostomes and trilobites, especially since Clarke and Ruedemann, in their extensive study of the Eurypterida, found nothing to indicate the crustacean nature of that group. A new point of view is, however, presented by the curious *Sidneyia inexpectans* and *Emeraldella brocki* described by Walcott from the Middle Cambrian.

Sidneyia inexpectans Walcott.

Illustrated: Walcott, Smithson. Misc. Coll., vol. 57, 1911, p. 21, pl. 2, fig. 1 (not figs. 2, 3); pls. 3-5; pl. 6, fig. 3; pl. 7, fig. 1.

The body of this animal is elongate, somewhat eurypterid-like, but with a broad telson supplied with lateral swimmerets. The cephalon is short, with lateral compound eyes. The trunk consists of eleven segments, the anterior nine of which are conspicuously wider than the two behind them, and the telson consists of a single elongate plate.

On the ventral side of the head there is a large hypostoma and five pairs of appendages. The first pair are multisegmented antennules. The second pair have not been adequately described. The third are large, complex claws, and the fourth and fifth suggest broad, stocky endopodites. Broad gnathobases are attached to the coxopodites of the third to fifth pairs of appendages and form very strong jaws.

The first nine segments of the thorax have one pair each of broad filiform branchial appendages, suggestive of the exopodites of trilobites, but no endopodites have been seen. The tenth and eleventh segments seem to lack appendages entirely.

Emeraldella brocki Walcott.

Illustrated: *Sidneyia inexpectans* Walcott *partim*, Smithson. Misc. Coll., vol. 57, 1911, pl. 2, figs. 2, 3 (not fig. 1);—Ibid., 1912, p. 206, text fig. 10.

Emeraldella brocki Walcott, Ibid., 1912, p. 203, pl. 30, fig. 2; text fig. 8;—Ibid., vol. 67, 1918, p. 118 (correction).

Emeraldella has much the same shape as *Sidneyia* and the same number of segments, but instead of a broad flat telson, it has a long *Limulus*-like spine. The cephalon is about as wide as long, and eyes have not yet been seen. The body consists of eleven segments and a telson (Walcott says twelve and a telson but shows only eleven in the figures). Nine of the segments, as in *Sidneyia*, are broad, the next two narrow.

The ventral side of the cephalon has a long hypostoma, and five pairs of appendages. The first pair are very long multisegmented antennules and the next four pairs seem to be rather slender, spiniferous, jointed endopodites. Whether or not gnathobases were present is not shown by the figures, but owing to the long hypostoma the appendages are grouped about the mouth. All the segments of the body, unless it were the telson, seem to have borne appendages. On the anterior end, they were clearly biramous (1912, p. 206, text fig. 10), and that they were present along the body is shown by figure 2, plate 30, 1912.

The present state of knowledge of both these peculiar animals leaves much to be desired. The indications are that the cephalic appendages are not biramous, and that only one pair of antennæ, the first, are developed as tactile organs. The thoracic appendages of *Emeraldella* are biramous, and also possibly those of *Sidneyia*. In the latter, the last two abdominal segments seem to have been without appendages, while in *Emeraldella* at least one branch of each appendage, and possibly both, is retained.

These animals, which may be looked upon as the last survivors of an order of pre-Cambrian arthropods, have the appearance of an eurypterid, but their dominant characteristics are crustacean. The features which suggest the Eurypterida are: elongate, obovate, non-trilobate, tapering body; telson-like posterior segment; marginal, compound, sessile eyes; claw-like third cephalic appendages; and, more particularly, the general resemblance of the test to that of an eurypterid like *Strabops*. In form, *Sidneyia* agrees with the theoretical prototype of the Eurypterida reconstructed by Clarke and Ruedemann (Mem. 14, N. Y. State Mus., vol. 1, 1912, p. 124) in its short wide head with marginal eyes, and its undifferentiated body. There is, moreover, no differentiation of the postcephalic appendages.

The crustacean characteristics are seen in the presence of five, instead of six, pairs of appendages on the head, the first of which are multisegmented antennules, and in the biramous appendages on the body of *Emeraldella*. It should be noted that these latter are typically trilobitic, each consisting of an endopodite with six segments and a setiferous exopodite.

Clarke and Ruedemann (1912, p. 406) have discussed *Sidneyia* briefly, and conclude:

> It seems to us probable that the Limulava [*Sidneyia* and *Amiella*] as described are not eurypterids but constitute a primitive order, though exhibiting some remarkable adaptive features. This order possibly belongs to the Merostomata, but is distinctly allied to the crustaceans in such important characters as the structure of the legs and telson, and is therefore much generalized.

The specialization of *Sidneyia* consists in the remarkable development of a highly complex claw on each of the third cephalic appendages, and in the compound tail-fin, built up of the last segment and one or more pairs of swimmerets. These two characteristics seem to preclude the possibility of deriving the eurypterids from *Sidneyia* itself, but it seems entirely within reason that they may have been derived from another slightly less specialized member of the same order.

That *Sidneyia* is descended from any known trilobite seems highly improbable, but that it was descended from the same ancestral stock as the trilobites is, I believe, indicated by the presence of five pairs of appendages on the cephalon and trilobitic legs on the abdomen.

Molaria and Habelia.

Other so called Merostomata found by Walcott in the Middle Cambrian are the genera *Molaria* and *Habelia*, both referred to the Cambrian family Aglaspidæ. These genera seem to conform with *Aglaspis* of the Upper Cambrian in having a trilobite-like cephalon without

facial sutures, a trilobite-like thorax of a small but variable (7-12) number of segments, and a *Limulus*-like telson. Neither of them has yet been fully described or figured, but (Walcott 1912 A, p. 202) *Habelia* appears to have five pairs of cephalic appendages, the first two pairs of which are multisegmented antennæ. The thoracic appendages are likewise none too well known, but they appear to have been biramous. The endopodites are better preserved than the exopodites, but in at least one specimen of *Molaria* the exopodites are conspicuous.

If these genera are properly described and figured, their appendages are typically crustacean, and fundamentally in agreement with those of *Marrella.* The relation to the Trilobita is evidently close, the principal differences being the absence of facial sutures and the presence of true antennæ. I am therefore transferring the Aglaspidæ from the Merostomata to a new subclass under the Crustacea.

ARANEÆ.

The spiders have the head and thorax fused, the abdomen unsegmented except in the most primitive suborder, and so appear even less trilobite-like than the insects. The appendages likewise are highly specialized. The cephalothorax bears six pairs of appendages, the first of which are the preoral cheliceræ, while behind the mouth are the pedipalpi and four pairs of ambulatory legs. The posterior pairs of walking legs belong to the thorax, but the anterior ones are to be homologized with the maxillæ of Crustacea, so that the spiders are like the trilobites in having functional walking legs on the head.

The chief likenesses are, however, seen in the very young. On the germ band there appear a pair of buds in front of the rudiments of the cheliceræ which later unite to form the rostrum of the adult. At the time these buds appear, the cheliceræ are postoral, but afterward move forward so that both rostrum and cheliceræ are in front of the mouth. The rostrum is therefore the product of the union of the antennules, and the cheliceræ are to be homologized with the antennæ. There seems to be some doubt about the homology of the pedipalps with the mandibles, as at least one investigator claims to have found rudiments of a segment between the one bearing the cheliceræ and that with the pedipalps.

Jaworowski (Zool. Anzeiger, 1891, p. 173, fig. 4) has figured the pedipalp from the germ band of *Trochosa singoriensis,* and called attention to the fact that it consists of a coxopodite and two segmented branches which may be interpreted as exopodite and endopodite. He designated as exopodite the longer branch which persists in the adult, but since the ambulatory legs of Crustacea are endopodites, that would seem a more likely interpretation. As the figure is drawn, the so called endopodite would appear to spring from the proximal segment of the "exopodite." If the two terms were interchanged, the homology with the limb of the trilobite or other crustacean would be quite perfect.

In the young, the abdomen is segmented and the anterior segments develop limb-buds, the first pair of which become the lung books and the last two pairs the spinnerets of the adult. There seems to be some question about the number of segments. Montgomery (Jour. Morphology, vol. 20, 1909, p. 337), reviewing the literature, finds that from eight to twelve have been seen in front of the anal segment. The number seem to vary with the species studied. This of course suggests connection with the anomomeristic trilobites.

The oldest true spiders are found in the Pennsylvanian, and several genera are now known. The head and thorax are fused completely, but the abdomen is distinctly seg-

mented. Some of the Anthracomarti resemble the trilobites more closely than do the Araneæ, as they lack the constriction between the cephalothorax and abdomen. The spiders of the Pennsylvanian have this constriction less perfectly developed than do modern Araneæ, and occupy an intermediate position in this respect. In the Anthracomarti, the pedipalpi are simple, pediform, and all the appendages have very much the appearance of the coxopodites and endopodites of trilobites. Cheliceræ are not known, and pleural lobes are well developed in this group. Anthracomarti have not yet been found in strata older than the Pennsylvanian, but they seem to be to a certain extent intermediate between true spiders and the marine arachnid.

Insecta.

Handlirsch (in several papers, most of which are collected in "Die Fossilen Insekten," 1908) has attempted to show that all the Arthropoda can be derived from the Trilobita, and has advocated the view that the Insecta sprang directly from that group, without the intervention of other tracheate stock. At first sight, this transformation seems almost an impossibility, and the view does not seem to have gained any great headway among entomologists in the fourteen years since it was first promulgated. If an adult trilobite be compared with an adult modern insect, few likenesses will be seen, but when the trilobite is stripped of its specializations and compared with the germ-band of a primitive insect, the theory begins to seem more possible.

Handlirsch really presented very little specific evidence in favor of his theory. In fact, one gets the impression that he has insisted on only two points. Firstly, that the most ancient known insects, the Palæodictyoptera, were amphibious, and their larvæ, which lived in water, were very like the adult. Secondly, that the wings of the Palæodictyoptera probably worked vertically only, and the two main wings were homologous with rudimentary wing-like outgrowths on each segment of the body. These outgrowths have the appearance of, and might have been derived from, the pleural lobes of trilobites.

He figured (1908, p. 1305, fig. 7) a reconstructed larva of a palæodictyopterid as having biramous limbs on each segment, but so far as I can find, this figure is purely schematic, for there seems to be no illustration or description of any such larva in the body of his work.

That the insects arose directly from aquatic animals is of course possible, and Handlirsch's first argument has considerable force. It may, however, be purely a chance that the oldest insects now known to us happen to be an amphibious tribe. The Palæodictyoptera are not yet known to antedate the Pennsylvanian, but there can be no doubt that insects existed long before that time, and the fact that their remains have not been found is good evidence that the pre-Pennsylvanian insects were not aquatic. Comstock, who has recently investigated the matter, does not believe that the Palæodictyoptera were amphibious (The Wings of Insects, Ithaca, N. Y., 1918, p. 91).

The second argument, that wings arose from the pleural lobes of trilobites, is exceedingly weak. Where most fully set forth (1907, p. 157), he suggests that trilobites may occasionally have left the water, climbed a steep bank or a plant, and then glided back into their native element, taking advantage of the broad flat shape to make a comfortable and gentle descent! This sport apparently became so engaging that the animal tried experiments with flexible wing tips, eventually got the whole of the pleural lobes in a flexible condition, and selected those of the second and third thoracic segments for preservation, while discarding the remainder. The pleural lobes of trilobites are not only too firmly joined to the axial portion

of the test to be easily transformed into movable organs, but they are structurally too unlike the veined wings of insects to make the suggestion of this derivation even worthy of consideration.

Tothill (1916) has recently reinvestigated the possible connection between insects, chilopods, and trilobites, and, from the early appearance of the spiracles in the young, came to the conclusion that the insects were derived from terrestrial animals. He suggested that they may have come through the chilopods from the trilobites. The hypothetical ancestor of the insects, as restored by Tothill from the evidence of embryology and comparative anatomy, is an animal more easily derived from the Chilopoda than from the Trilobita. Five pairs of appendages are present on the head, and the trunk is made up of fourteen similar segments, each with a pair of walking limbs and a pair of spiracles.

Only the maxillæ and maxillulæ are represented as biramous. If the ancestor of the Insecta was, as seems possible, tracheate, this fact alone would rule out the trilobites. Among tracheates, the Chilopoda are certainly more closely allied to the Insecta than are any other wingless forms. If the ancestors of the insects were not actually chilopods, they may have been chilopod-like, and there can be little doubt that both groups trace to the same stock.

As to the ancestry of the Chilopoda, it is probable that they had the same origin as the other Arthropoda. Tothill has pointed out that in the embryo of some chilopods there are rudiments of two pairs of antennæ and that the two pairs of maxillæ and the maxillipeds are biramous. This would point rather to the Haplopoda than directly to the trilobites as possible ancestors, and may explain why the former vanish so suddenly from the geological record after their brief appearance in the Middle Cambrian. They may have gone on to the land.

There seem to be no insuperable obstacles to prevent the derivation, indirectly, of the insects from some trilobite with numerous free segments, and small pygidium. The antennules and pleural lobes must be lost, the antennæ and trunk limbs modified by loss of exopodites. Wings and tracheæ must be acquired.

Handlirsch places the date of origin of the Insecta rather late, just at the end of the Devonian and during the "Carboniferous." By that time most families of trilobites had died out, so that the possibilities of origin of new stocks were much diminished. If the haplopod-chilopod-insect line is a better approximation to the truth, then the divergence began in the Cambrian.

Chilopoda.

The adult chilopod lacks the antennules, and all of the other appendages, with the exception of the maxillulæ, are uniramous. The walking legs are similar to the endopodites of trilobites, and usually have six or seven segments. The appendages are therefore such as could be derived by modification of those of trilobites by the almost complete loss of the exopodites and shortening of the endopodites of the head. The position of the postoral appendages, the posterior ones outside those closest the mouth, is perhaps foreshadowed in the arrangement of those of *Triarthrus*.

The Chilopoda differ from the Hexapoda in developing the antennæ instead of the antennules as tactile organs, but this can not be used with any great effect as an argument that the latter did not arise from the ancestors of the former, since it is entirely possible that in early Palæozoic times the pre-Chilopoda possessed two pairs of antennæ. The first pair are still recognizable in the embryo of certain species.

The oldest chilopods are species described by Scudder (Mem. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., vol. 4, 1890, p. 417, pl. 38) from the Pennsylvanian at Mazon Creek, Grundy County, Illinois. Only one of these, *Latzelia primordialis* Scudder (pl. 38 fig. 3), is at all well preserved. This little animal, less than an inch long, had a depressed body, with a median carina, exceedingly long slender legs, and about nineteen segments. The head is very nearly obliterated.

Diplopoda.

The diplopods, especially the polydesmids with their lateral outgrowths, often have a general appearance somewhat like that of a trilobite, but on closer examination few likenesses are seen. The most striking single feature of the group, the possession by each segment of two pairs of appendages, is not in any way foreshadowed in the trilobites, none of which shows any tendency toward a fusion of pairs of adjacent segments. The antennules are short, antennæ absent, mandibles and maxillulæ much modified, the latter possibly biramous, and the maxillæ absent. The trunk appendages are very similar to those of chilopods, and could readily be derived from the endopodites of trilobites.

The oldest diplopods are found in the Silurian (Ludlow) and Devonian (Lower Old Red) of Scotland, and three species belonging to two genera are known. The oldest is *Archidesmus loganensis* Peach (1889, p. 123, pl. 4, fig. 4), and the Devonian species are *Archidesmus macnicoli* Peach and *Kampecaris forfarensis* Page (Peach 1882, p. 182, pl. 2, fig. 2, 2a, and p. 179, pl. 2, figs. 1-1g). All of these species show lateral expansions like the recent Polydesmidæ, and these of course suggest the pleural lobes of trilobites. All three of the species are simpler than any modern diplopod, for there is only a single pair of appendages on each segment. No *foramina repugnatoria* were observed, and the eyes of *Kampecaris forfarensis* as described are singularly like those of a phacopid.

Peach says: "The eye itself is made up of numerous facets which are arranged in oblique rows, the posterior end of each row being inclined downwards and outwards, the facets being so numerous and so close together that the eye simulates a compound one." There is also a protecting ridge which somewhat resembles a palpebral lobe (1882, pl. 7, fig. 1a). Peach comments on the strength of the test, and from his description it appears that it must have been preserved in the same manner as the test of trilobites. It was punctate, and granules and spines were also present. The presence of the lateral outgrowths in these ancient specimens would seem to indicate that they are primitive features, and may have been inherited. While possibly not homologous with the pleural extensions of trilobites, they may be vestiges of these structures.

The limbs are made up of seven segments which are circular in section and expand at the distal end. The distal one bears one or two minute spines. They are most readily compared with the endopodites of *Isotelus*. The resemblance is, in fact, rather close. The sternal plates are wider and the limbs of opposite sides further apart than in modern diplopods. Except for one pair of antennæ, no cephalic appendages are preserved.

While these specimens do not serve to connect the Diplopoda with the Trilobita, they do show that most of the specializations of the former originated since Lower Devonian times, and lead one to suspect that the derivation from marine ancestors took place very early, perhaps in the Cambrian. If no very close connection with the trilobites is indicated, there is also nothing to show that the diplopods could not have been derived from that group.

Primitive Characteristics of Trilobites.

TRILOBITES THE MOST PRIMITIVE ARTHROPODS.

The Arthropoda, to make the simplest possible definition, are invertebrate animals with segmented body and appendages. The most primitive arthropod would appear to be one composed of exactly similar segments bearing exactly similar appendages, the segments of the appendages themselves all similar to one another. It is highly improbable that this most primitive arthropod imaginable will ever be found, but after a survey of the whole phylum, it appears that the simpler trilobites approximate it most closely.

That the trilobites are primitive is evidenced by the facts that they have been placed at the bottom of the Crustacea by all authors and claimed as the ancestors of that group by some; that Lankester derived the Arachnida from them; and that Handlirsch has considered them the progenitors of the whole arthropodan phylum.

Specializations among the Arthropoda, even among the free-living forms, are so numerous that it would be difficult to make a complete list of them. In discussing the principal groups, I have tried to show that the essential structures can be explained as inherited from the Trilobita, changed in form by explainable modifications, and that new structures, not present in the Trilobita, are of such a nature that they might be acquired independently in even unrelated groups.

The chief objections to the derivation of the remainder of the Crustacea from the trilobites have been: first, that the trilobites had broad pleural extensions; second, that they had a large pygidium; and lastly, that they had only one pair of tactile antennæ.

It has now been pointed out that many modern Crustacea have pleural extensions, but that they usually bend down at the sides of the body, and also that in the trilobites and more especially in Marrella, there was a tendency toward the degeneration of the pleural lobes. A glance at the Mesonacidæ or Paradoxidæ should be convincing proof that in some trilobites the pygidium is reduced to a very small plate.

In regard to the second antennæ standard text-books contain statements which are actually surprising. A compilation shows that the antennæ are entirely uniramous in but a very few suborders, chiefly among the Malacostraca; that they are biramous with both exopodite and endopodite well developed in most Copepoda, Ostracoda, and Branchiopoda; and that the exopodite, although reduced in size, still has a function in some suborders of the Malacostraca. The Crustacea could not possibly be derived from an ancestor with two pairs of uniramous antennæ.

Although I have defended the trilobites, perhaps with some warmth, from the imputation that they were Arachnida, my argument does not apply in the opposite direction, and I believe Lankester was right in deriving the Arachnida from them. If the number of appendages in front of the mouth is fundamental, then the trilobites were generalized, primitive, and capable of giving rise to both Crustacea and Arachnida. As shown on a previous page (p. 119), the "connecting links" so far found tend to disprove rather than to prove the thesis, but the present finds should be looked upon as only the harbingers of the greater ones which are sure to come.

LIMBS OF TRILOBITES PRIMITIVE.

The general presence, in an adult or larva, of some sort of biramous limbs throughout the whole class Crustacea has led most zoologists to expect such a limb in the most

primitive crustaceans, and apparently the appendage of the trilobite satisfies the expectation. It is well, perhaps, as a test, to consider whether by modification this limb could produce the various types of limbs seen in other members of the class. In the first place, it is necessary to have clearly in mind the peculiarities of the appendage to be discussed.

It should first of all be remembered that the limb is articulated with the dorsal skeleton in a manner which is very peculiar for a crustacean. The coxopodite swings on a sort of ball-and-socket joint, and at the outer end both the exopodite and the basipodite articulate with it. Since the exopodite articulates with the basipodite as well as with the coxopodite, the two branches are closely connected with one another and there is little individual freedom of movement. This is, of course, a necessary consequence of their articulation with a segment which is itself too freely movable to provide a solid base for attachment of muscles. The relation of the appendifer, coxopodite, and two rami is here shown diagrammatically (fig. 33), the exopodite branching off from the proximal end of the basipodite at the junction with the coxopodite.

In all trilobites the endopodite consists of six segments, and the coxopodite of a single segment the inner end of which is prolonged as an endobase. There does not seem to be any variation from this plan in the subclass, although individual segments are variously

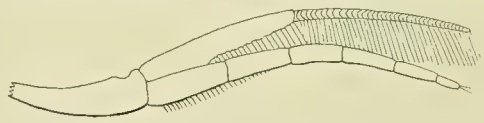


Fig. 33.—Diagrammatic representation of an appendage of the anterior end of the thorax of *Triarthrus becki* Green, to show relation of exopodite and endopodite to each other and to the coxopodite. Much enlarged.

modified. The exopodites are more variable, but all consist of a flattened shaft with setæ on one margin. No other organs such as accessory gills, swimming plates, or brood pouches have yet been found attached to the appendages, the evidence for the existence of the various epipodites and exites described by Walcott being unsatisfactory (see p. 23).

In the Ostracoda the appendages are highly variable, but it is easily seen that they are modifications of a limb which is fundamentally biramous. In most species, both exopodite and endopodite suffer reduction. The exopodite springs from the basipodite and that segment is closely joined to the coxopodite, producing a protopodite. In some cases the original segments of the endopodites fuse to form a stiff rod. While highly diversified, these appendages are very trilobite-like, and some Ostracoda even have biramous antennæ.

The non-parasitic Copepoda have limbs exceedingly like those of trilobites. Many of them are biramous, the endopodites sometimes retaining the primitive six segments. Coxopodite and basipodite are generally united, and endopodite and exopodite variously modified. Like some of the Ostracoda, the more primitive Copepoda have biramous antennæ.

As would be expected, the appendages of the Cirripedia are much modified, although those of the nauplius are typical. The thoracic appendages of many are biramous, but both branches are multisegmented.

In the modern Malacostraca the ground plan of the appendages is biramous, but in most orders they are much modified. In many, however, the appendages of some part of the body are biramous, and in many the endopodites show the typical six segments. From the coxopodites arise epipodites, some of which assist in swimming, and some in respiration.

Because of the many instances in which such extra growths arise, and because of the form of the appendages of the Branchiopoda, it has been suggested that the primitive crustacean leg must have been more complex than that of the trilobite. In looking over the Malacostraca, however, one is struck by the fact that epipodites generally arise where the exopodites have become aborted or are poorly developed, and seem largely to replace them. The coxopodite and basipodite are usually fused to form a protopodite, and a third segment is sometimes present in the proximal part of the appendage.

In the Branchiopoda are found the most complex crustacean limbs, and the ones most difficult to homologize with those of trilobites. In recent years, Lankester's homologies of the parts of the limbs of *Apus* with those of the Malacostraca have been quite generally accepted, and the appendages of the former considered primitive. Now that it is known that the Branchiopoda of the Middle Cambrian (*Burgessia et al.*) had simple trilobite-like appendages, it becomes necessary to exactly reverse the opinion in this matter. The same homologies stand, but the thoracic limbs of *Apus* must be looked upon as highly specialized instead of primitive.

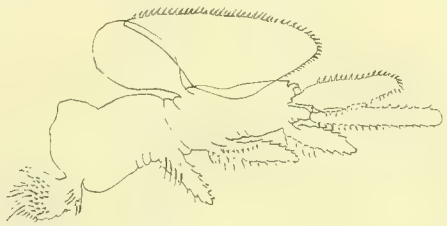


Fig. 34.—One of the appendages of the anterior part of the trunk of Apus, showing the endites (beneath) and exites (above). The proximal endite forms a gnathobase which is not homologous with the gnathobase (or endobase) of the trilobite. Copied from Lankester. Much enlarged.

Lankester (Jour. Micros. Sci., vol. 21, 1881) pointed out that the axial part of the thoracic limb of *Apus* (fig. 34) is homologous with the protopodite in the higher Crustacea, that the two terminal endites corresponded to the exopodite and endopodite, and that the other endites and exites were outgrowths from the protopodite analogous to the epipodites of Malacostraca. There seems to be no objection to retaining this interpretation, but with the meaning that both endopodite and exopodite are much reduced, and their functions transferred to numerous outgrowths of the protopodite. One of the endites grows inward to form an endobase, the whole limb showing an attempt to return to the ancestral condition of the trilobite. The limbs of some other branchiopods are not so easy to understand, but students of the Crustacea seem to have worked out a fairly satisfactory comparison between them and *Apus*.

The discovery that the ancestral Branchiopoda had simple biramous appendages instead of the rather complex phyllopodan type is another case in which the theory of "recapitulation" has proved to hold. It had already been observed that in ontogeny the biramous limb preceded the phyllopodan, but so strong has been the belief in the primitive character of the Apodidæ that the obvious suggestion has been ignored. Even in such highly specialized Malacostraca as the hermit crabs the development of certain of the limbs illustrates the change from the schizopodal to the phyllopodan type, and Thompson (Proc. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., vol. 31, 1903, pl. 5, fig. 12) has published an especially good series of drawings

showing the first maxilliped. In the first to fourth zoeæ the limb is biramous but in the glaucothoe a pair of broad processes grow out from the protopodite, while the exopodite and particularly the endopodite become greatly reduced. In the adult the endopodite is a mere vestige, while the flat outgrowths from the protopodite have become very large and bear setæ.

Summary.

The limbs of most Crustacea are readily explained as modifications of a simple biramous type. These modifications usually take the form of reduction by the loss or fusion of segments and quite generally either the entire endopodite or exopodite is lacking. Modification by addition frequently occurs in the growth of epipodites, "endites," and "exites" from the coxopodite, basipodite, or both. A protopodite is generally formed by the fusion of coxopodite and basipodite, accompanied by a transference of the proximal end of the exopodite to the distal end of the basipodite. A new segment, not known in the trilobites (precoxal), is sometimes added at the inner end.

Among modern Crustacea, the anterior cephalic appendages and thoracic appendages of the Copepoda and the thoracic appendages of certain Malacostraca, Syncarida especially, are most nearly like those of the trilobite. The exact homology, segment for segment, between the walking legs of the trilobite and those of many of the Malacostraca, even the Decapoda, is a striking instance of retention of primitive characteristics in a specialized group, comparable to the retention of primitive appendages in man.

NUMBER OF SEGMENTS IN THE TRUNK.

Various attempts have been made to show that despite the great variability, trilobites do show a tendency toward a definite number of segments in the body.

Emmrich (1839), noting that those trilobites which had a long thorax usually had a short pygidium, and that the reverse also held true, formulated the law that the number of segments in the trunk was constant (20 + 1). Very numerous exceptions to this law were, however, soon discovered, and while the condition of those with less than twenty-one segments was easily explained, the increasing number of those with more than twenty-one soon brought the idea into total disrepute.

Quenstedt (1837) had considered the number of segments of at least specific importance, and both he and Burmeister (1843) considered that the number of segments in the thorax must be the same for all members of a genus. As first shown by Barrande (1852, p. 191 *et seq.*), there are very many genera in which there is considerable variation in the number of thoracic segments, and a few examples can be cited in which there is variation within a species, or at least in very closely related species.

Carpenter (1903, p. 333) has tabulated the number of trunk segments of such trilobites as were listed by Zittel in 1887 and finds a steady increase throughout the Palæozoic. His table, which follows, is, however, based upon very few genera.

Period	No. of Genera	Average No. of body-segments
Cambrian	12	17.66
Ordovician	23	18.58
Silurian	16	19.34
Devonian	10	20.70
Carboniferous	2	20.75

Due chiefly to the efforts of Walcott, an increasingly large number of Cambrian genera are now represented by entire specimens, and since these most ancient genera are of greatest importance, a few comments on them may be offered.

The total number of segments can be fairly accurately determined in at least nineteen genera of trilobites from the Lower Cambrian. These include eight genera of the Mesonacidæ (*Olenellus* was excluded) and *Eodiscus, Goniodiscus, Protypus, Bathynotus, Atops, Olenopsis, Crepicephalus, Vanuxemella, Corynexochus, Bathyuriscus,* and *Poliella.* The extremes of range in total segments of the trunk is seen in *Eodiscus* (9) and *Pædeumias* (45+), and these same genera show the extremes in the number of thoracic segments, there being 3 in the one and 44+ in the other. *Pædeumias* probably shows the greatest variation of any one genus of trilobites, various species showing from 19 to 44+ thoracic segments. The average for the nineteen genera is 13.9 segments in the thorax, 3.7 segments in the pygidium, or a total average of 17.6 segments in the trunk. *Crepicephalus* with 12-14 segments in the thorax and 4-6 in the pygidium, and *Protypus,* with 13 in the thorax and 4-6 in the pygidium, are the only genera which approach the average. All of the Mesonacidæ, except one, *Olenelloides,* have far more thoracic and fewer pygidial segments than the average, while the reverse is true of the Eodiscidæ, *Vanuxemella, Corynexochus, Bathyuriscus,* and *Poliella.*

The eight genera of the Mesonacidæ, *Nevadia, Mesonacis, Elliptocephala, Callavia, Holmia, Wanneria, Pædeumias,* and *Olenelloides,* have an average of 20.25 segments in the thorax and 1.5 in the pygidium, a total of 21.75. If, however, the curious little *Olenelloides* be omitted, the average for the thorax rises to 22.14 and the total to 23.84. *Olenelloides* is, in fact, very probably the young of an *Olenellus.* Specimens are only 4.5 to 11 mm. long, and occur in the same strata with *Olenellus* (see Beecher 1897 A, p. 191).

Thirty-three genera from the Middle Cambrian afford data as to the number of segments, the Agnostidæ being excluded. The extreme of variation there is smaller than in the Lower Cambrian. The number of thoracic segments varies from 2 in *Pagetia* to 25 in *Acrocephalites,* and these same genera show the greatest range in total number of trunk segments, 8 and 29 respectively.

The average of thoracic segments for the entire thirty-three genera is 10.5, of pygidial segments 5.9, a total average of 16.4. It will be noted that the thorax shows on the average less and the pygidium more segments than in the Lower Cambrian. If the Agnostidæ could be included, this result would doubtless be still more striking. Of the genera considered, *Asaphiscus* with 7-11 thoracic and 5-8 pygidial segments, *Blainia* with 9 thoracic and 6-11 pygidial, *Zacanthoides* with 9 thoracic and 5 pygidial, and *Anomocare* with 11 thoracic and 7-8 pygidial segments came nearest to the average. Only a few departed widely from it. The genera tabulated were *Acrocephalites, Alokistocare, Crepicephalus, Karlia, Hamburgia, Corynexochus, Bathyuriscus, Poliella, Agraulos, Dolichometopus, Ogygopsis, Orria, Asaphiscus, Neolenus, Burlingia, Blainia, Blountia, Marjumia, Pagetia, Eodiscus, Goniodiscus, Albertella, Oryctocara, Zacanthoides, Anomocare, Anomocarella, Coosia, Conocoryphe, Ctenocephalus, Paradoxides, Ptychoparia, Sao,* and *Ellipsocephalus.*

Enough genera of Upper Cambrian trilobites are not known from entire specimens to furnish satisfactory data. Excluding from the list the Proparia recently described by Walcott, the average total trunk segments in ten genera is 18, but as most of the genera are Olenidæ or olenid-like, not much weight can be attached to these figures.

For the Cambrian as a whole, the average for sixty-two genera is between 17 and 18 trunk segments, which is surprisingly like the result obtained by Carpenter from only twelve

genera, and tends to indicate that it must be somewhere near the real average. If the 5 or 6 segments of the head be added, it appears that the "average" number of segments is very close to the malacostracan number 21. Genera with 16 to 18 trunk segments are *Callavia, Protypus, Bathynotus, Crepicephalus, Bathyuriscus, Ogygopsis, Burlingia, Orria, Asaphiscus, Blainia, Zacanthoides, Neolenus, Anomocare, Conocoryphe, Saukia, Olenus,* and *Eurycare.*

The order Proparia originated in the Cambrian, and Walcott has described four genera, one from the Middle, and three from the Upper. The number of segments in these genera is of interest. *Burlingia,* the oldest, has 14 segments in the thorax and 1 in the pygidium. Of the three genera in the Upper Cambrian, *Norwoodia* has 8-9 segments in the thorax and 3-4 in the pygidium; *Millardia* 23 in thorax and 3-4 in pygidium; and *Menomonia* 42 in thorax and 3-4 in pygidium. It is of considerable interest and importance to note that the very elongate ones are not from the Middle but from the Upper Cambrian.

Forty genera of Ordovician trilobites known from entire specimens were tabulated, and it was found that the range in the number of segments in the thorax and pygidium was surprisingly large. *Agnostus,* which was not included in the table, has the fewest, and *Eoharpes,* with 29, the most. While the range in number of segments in the thorax is 2 to 29, the range of the number in the pygidium, 2 to 26, is almost as great. A species of *Dionide* has 26 in the pygidium, while *Remopleurides* and *Glaphurus* have evidence of only 2. The average number of segments in the thorax for the forty genera was 10.15, in the pygidium 8.81, and the average number for the trunk 19.

Genera with just 19 segments in the trunk appear to be rare in the Ordovician, a species of *Ampyx* being the only one I have happened to notice. *Calymene, Tretaspis, Triarthrus, Asaphus, Ogygites,* and *Goldius* come with the range of 18 to 20. *Goldius,* with 10 segments in the thorax and (apparently) 8 in the pygidium, comes nearest to the averages for these two parts of the trunk. *Goldius, Amphilichas, Bumastus, Acidaspis, Actinopeltis,* and *Sphærexochus* are among the genera having 10 segments in the thorax, and there are many genera which have only one or two segments more or less than 10.

In most Ordovician genera, thirty-five out of the forty tabulated, the number of segments in the thorax is fixed, and the variation is in any case small. In four of the five genera where it was not fixed, there was a variation of only one segment, and the greatest variation was in *Pliomerops,* where the number is from 15 to 19. This of course indicates that the number of segments in the thorax tends to become fixed in Ordovician time. The variation in the number of segments in the pygidium is, however, considerable. It is difficult in many cases to tell how many segments are actually present in this shield, as it is more or less smooth in a considerable number of genera. Extreme cases of variation within a genus are found in *Encrinurus,* species of which have from 7 to 22 segments in the pygidium, *Cybeloides* with 10 to 20, and *Dionide* with 10 to 26. As the number in the thorax became settled, the number in the pygidium became more unstable, so that not even in the Ordovician can the total number of segments in the trunk be said to show any tendency to become fixed.

The genera used in this tabulation were: *Eoharpes, Cryptolithus, Tretaspis, Trinucleus, Dionide, Raphiophorus, Ampyx, Endymionia, Anisonotus, Triarthrus, Remopleurides, Bathyurus, Bathyurellus, Ogygiocaris, Asaphus, Ogygites, Isotelus, Goldius, Cyclopyge, Amphilichas, Odontopleura, Acidaspis, Glaphurus, Encrinurus, Cybele, Cybeloides, Ectenonotus, Calymene, Ceraurus, Pliomera, Pliomerops, Pterygometopus, Chasmops, Eccoptochile, Actinopeltis, Sphærexochus, Placoparia, Pilekia, Selenopeltis,* and *Calocalymene.*

Only sixteen genera of Devonian trilobites were available for tabulation, and it is not always possible to ascertain the exact number of segments in the pygidium, although genera with smooth caudal shields had nearly all disappeared. The number of segments in the thorax had become pretty well fixed by the beginning of the Devonian, *Cyphaspis* with a range of from 10 to 17 furnishing the only notable exception. The range for the sixteen genera is from 8 to 17, the average 11, the number exhibited by the Phacopidæ which form so large a part of the trilobites of the Devonian. The greater part of the species have large pygidia, and while the range is from 3 to 23, the average is 11.2. *Probolium,* with 11 in the thorax and 11-13 in the pygidium, and *Phacops,* with 11 in the thorax and 9-12 in the pygidium, approach very closely to the "average" trilobite, and various species of other genera of the Phacopidæ have the same number of segments as the norm. In every genus, however, the number of segments in the pygidium is variable, the greatest variation being in *Dalmanites,* with a range of from 9 to 23. The number of segments in the pygidium was therefore not fixed and was on the average higher than in earlier periods.

The genera used in the tabulation were: *Calymene, Dipleura, Goldius, Proëtus, Cyphaspis, Acidaspis, Phacops, Hausmania, Coronura, Odontochile, Pleuracanthus, Calmonia, Pennaia, Dalmanites, Probolium,* and *Cordania.*

The trilobites of the late Palæozoic (Mississippian to Permian) belong, with two possible exceptions, to the Proëtidæ, and only three genera, *Proëtus, Phillipsia,* and *Griffithides,* appear to be known from all the parts. I am, however, assuming that both *Brachymetopus* and *Anisopyge* have 9 segments in the thorax, and so have tabulated five genera. The range in the number of segments in the pygidium is large, from 10 in some species of *Proëtus* to 30 in *Anisopyge,* and the average, 17.3, is high, as is the average for total number in the trunk, 26.3. *Anisopyge,* a late Permian trilobite described by Girty from Texas, is perhaps the last survivor of the group. It seems to have had 39 segments in the trunk, making it, next to the Cambrian *Pædeumias* and *Menomonia,* the most numerously segmented of all the trilobites.

The above data may be summarized in the following table:

Period	No. of genera	Av. No. of segments in thorax	Av. No. of segments in pygidium	Av. No. of trunk segments
Lower Cambrian	19	13.9	3.7	17.6
Middle Cambrian	33	10.5	5.9	16.4
Entire Cambrian	62	..	..	17–19
Ordovician	40	10.15	8.81	18.96
Devonian	16	11	11.2	22.2
Late Palæozoic	5	9	17.3	26.3

This table confirms that made up by Carpenter, and shows even more strikingly the progressive increase in the average number of segments in the trunk throughout the Palæozoic.

While the two trilobites with the greatest number of segments are Cambrian, yet on the average, the last of the trilobites had the more numerously segmented bodies. The multisegmented trilobites are:

Period	Genus	No. of segments in thorax	No. of segments in pygidium	No. of segments in trunk
Lower Cambrian	*Pædeumias*	44+	1	45+
Upper Cambrian	*Menomonia*	42	4	46
	Ectenonotus	12	22	34
Ordovician	*Encrinurus*	11	22	33
	Dionide	6	26	32
Silurian	*Harpes*	29	3	32
Devonian	*Coronura*	11	23	34
	Dalmanites	11	23	34
Permian	*Anisopyge*	7+(9?)	30	39?

Anisopyge, the last of the trilobites, stands third on the list of those having great numbers of segments, and in each period there are a few which have considerably more than the average number. It may be of some significance that of these nine genera only *Pædeumias* and *Anisopyge* belong to the Opisthoparia, the great central group, and that five are members of the Proparia, the latest and most specialized order.

FORM OF THE SIMPLEST PROTASPIS.

It would naturally be expected that the young of the Cambrian trilobites should be more primitive than the young of species from later formations, and Beecher (1895 C) has shown that this is the case. He had reference, however, chiefly to the eyes, free cheeks, and spines, and by comparison of ontogeny and phylogeny, demonstrated the greater simplicity of the protaspis which lacked these organs. It remains to inquire which among the other characteristics are most fundamental.

Among the trilobites of the Lower Cambrian, no very young have been seen except of Mesonacidæ. Of these, the ontogeny of *Elliptocephala asaphoides* Emmons is best known, thanks to Ford, Walcott, and Beecher, but, as the last-named has pointed out, the actual protaspis or earliest shield has not yet been found. The youngest specimen is the one roughly figured by Beecher (1895 C, p. 175, fig. 6). It lacks the pygidium, but if completed by a line which is the counterpart of the outline of the cephalon, it would have been 0.766 mm. long. The pygidium would have been 0.183 mm. long, or 23 per cent of the whole length. The axial lobe was narrow, of uniform width along the cephalon, showed a neck-ring and four indistinct annulations, but did not reach quite to the anterior end, there being a margin in front of the glabella about 0.1 mm. wide. The greatest width of the cephalon was 0.66 mm., and of the glabella 0.233 mm., or practically 35 per cent of the total width. Other young *Elliptocephala* up to a length of 1 mm., and young *Pædeumias, Mesonacis,* and *Holmia* (see Kiær, Videnskaps, Skrifter, I Mat.-Naturv. Klasse, 1917, No. 10) show about the same characteristics, but all these have large compound eyes on the dorsal surface and specimens in still younger stages are expected. It may be pointed out, however, that in these specimens the pygidium is proportionately larger than in the adult. Walcott cites one adult 126 mm. long in which the pygidium is 6 mm. long, or between 4 and 5 per cent of the total length, while in the incomplete specimen described above, it was apparently 23 per

cent. In a specimen 1 mm. long figured by Walcott, the pygidium is 0.15 mm. long, or 15 per cent of the whole length.

The development of several species of trilobites from the Middle Cambrian is known. Barrande (1852) described the protaspis of *Sao hirsuta, Peronopsis integer, Phalacroma bibullatum, P. nudum,* and *Condylopyge rex.* Broegger figured that of a *Liostracus* (Geol. För. Förhandl., 1875, pl. 25, figs. 1-3) and Lindstroem (1901, p. 21) has reproduced the same. Matthew (Trans. Roy. Soc. Canada, vol. 5, 1888, pt. 4, pls. 1, 2) has described the protaspis of a *Liostracus, Ptychoparia linnarssoni* Broegger, and *Solenopleura robbi* Hartt. Beecher (1895 C, pl. 8) has figured the protaspis of *Ptychoparia kingi* Meek, and the writer that of a *Paradoxides* (Bull. Mus. Comp. Zool., vol. 58, No. 4, 1914, pl. 1).

Sao, Liostracus, Ptychoparia, and *Solenopleura* all have the same sort of protaspis. In all, the axial lobe reaches the anterior margin and is somewhat expanded at that end; in all, the glabella shows but slight trace of segmentation; and in all, the pygidium occupies from one fifth to one fourth the total length. There is considerable variation in the width of the axial lobe. It is narrowest in *Ptychoparia,* where in the middle it is only 14 per cent of the whole width, and widest in *Solenopleura,* where it is 28 per cent. In *Ptychoparia* the pygidium of the protaspis occupies from 18 to 22 per cent of the whole length. In the adult it occupies 10 to 12 per cent. In *Solenopleura* it makes up about 26 per cent of the protaspis, and in the adult about 8 per cent.

In the youngest stages of all these trilobites, the pygidium is incompletely separated from the cephalon. The first sign of segmentation is a transverse crack which begins to separate the cephalon and pygidium, and by the time this has extended across the full width the neck segment has become rather well defined. In this stage the animal is prepared to swim by means of the pygidium, and first becomes active. The coincident development of the free pygidium and the neck-ring strongly suggests that the dorsal longitudinal muscles are attached beneath the neck-furrow.

The single protaspis of *Paradoxides* now known, while only 1 mm. long, is not in the youngest stage of development. It is like the protaspis of Olenellus in having large eyes on the dorsal surface and a narrow brim in front of the glabella. The glabella is narrower than in the adult.

The initial test of no agnostid has probably as yet been seen, as all the young now known show the cephalon and pygidium distinctly separated. *Phalacroma bibullatum* and *P. nudum* are both practically smooth and isopygous when 1.5 mm. long. *P. bibullatum* shows no axial lobe at this stage, but a wide glabella and median tubercle develop later, and when the glabella first appears, it extends to the anterior margin. In *Peronopsis integer* and *Condylopyge rex,* the axial lobe is outlined on each of the equal shields in specimens about 1 mm. long, but is without furrows and reaches neither anterior nor posterior margin.

From the foregoing brief description it appears that the pygidium of the protaspis varies in different groups from as little as 15 per cent of the total length in the Mesonacidæ to as much as 50 per cent in the Agnostidæ; that the axial lobe varies from as little as 14 per cent of the total width in one *Ptychoparia* to as much as 50 per cent in *Phalacroma nudum;* that the glabella reaches the anterior margin in the Olenidæ, Solenopleuridæ, and *Phalacroma bibullatum,* while there is a brim in front of it in the Olenellidæ, Paradoxidæ, and three of the species of the Agnostidæ. The decision as to which of these conditions are primitive may be settled quite satisfactorily by study of the ontogeny of the various species.

ORIGIN OF THE PYGIDIUM.

Taking first the pygidium, it has already been pointed out that in each case the pygidium of the adult is proportionally considerably smaller than the pygidium of the protaspis. The stages in the growth of the pygidium are better known in *Sao hirsuta* than in any other trilobite, and a review of Barrande's description will be advantageous.

Barrande recognized twenty stages in the development of this species, but there was evidently a still simpler protaspis in his hands than the smallest he figured, for he says, after describing the specimen in the first stage: "We possess one specimen on which the head extends from one border to the other of the disk, but as this individual is unique we have not thought it sufficient to establish a separate stage." This specimen is important as indicating a stage in which there was not even a suggestion of division between cephalon and pygidium.

In the first stage described by Barrande, the form is circular, the length is about 0.66 mm., and the glabella is narrow with parallel sides and no indications of lateral furrows. The neck segment is indicated by a slight prominence on the axial lobe, and back of it a constriction divides the axial lobe of the pygidium into two nodes, but does not cross the pleural lobes. The position of the nuchal segment permits a measurement of the part which is to form the pygidium, and shows that that shield made up 30 per cent of the entire length.

In the second stage, when the test is 0.75 mm. long, the cephalon and pygidium become distinctly separated, and the latter shield shows three annulations on the axial and two pairs of ribs on the pleural lobes. It now occupies 33⅓ per cent of the total length.

In the third stage, when the total length is about 1 mm., the pygidium has continued to grow. It now shows five annulations on the axial lobe, and is 46 per cent of the total length.

In the fourth stage, two segments of the axial lobe have been set free from the front of the pygidium. The length is now 1.5 mm. and the pygidium makes up 32 per cent of the whole. From this time the pygidium continues to decrease in size in proportion to the total length, as shown in the following table.

Stage	Length in mm.	Percentage of pygidium	Segments in thorax	Segments in pygidium
1	0.66	30	0	2
2	0.75	33⅓	0	3
3	1.00	46	0	5
4	1.50	32	2	5–6
5	1.50	25	3	4
6	1.75	23	4	4
7	1.80	21	5	3
8	2.00	17	6	3
9	2.50	13	7	3
10	3.00	12	8	3
11	3.50	11	9	3–4
12	4.00	11	10	3–4
13	5.00	10	11	3
14	5.50	9	12	2–4
15	6.00	8	13	3–4
16	6.50	8	14	3
17	7.00	7	15	3
18	7.50	7	16	3
19	7.50	6	17	2
20	10–25	6	17	2

This table shows the rapid increase in the length of the pygidium till the time when the thorax began to be freed, the very rapid decrease during the earlier part of its formation until six segments had been set free, and then a more gradual decrease until the entire seventeen segments had been acquired, after which time the relative length remained constant. From an initial proportion of 30 per cent, it rose to nearly one half the whole length, and then dwindled to a mere 6 per cent, showing conclusively that the thorax grew at the expense of the pygidium.

If this conclusion can be sustained by other trilobites, it indicates that the large pygidium is a more primitive characteristic of a protaspis than is a small one. I have already shown that the pygidium is proportionately larger in the protaspis in the Mesonacidæ, Solenopleuridæ, and Olenidæ, and a glance at Barrande's figures of *"Hydrocephalus" carens* and *"H." saturnoides,* both young of *Paradoxides,* will show that the same process of development goes on in that genus as in *Sao.* There is first an enlargement of the pygidium to a maximum, a rise from 20 per cent to 33 per cent in the case of *H. carens* and then, with the introduction of thoracic segments, a very rapid falling off. All of these are, however, trilobites with small pygidia, and it has been a sort of axiom among palæontologists that large pygidia were made up of a number of coalesced segments. While not definitely so stated, it has generally been taken to mean the joining together of segments once free. The asaphid, for instance, has been thought of as descended from some trilobite with rich segmentation, and a body-form like that of a *Mesonacis* or *Paradoxides.*

The appeal to the ontogeny does not give as full an answer to this question as could be wished, for the complete life-history of no trilobite with a large pygidium is yet known. While the answer is not complete, enough can be gained from the study of the ontogeny of *Dalmanites* and *Cyclopyge* to show that in these genera also the thorax grows by the breaking down of the pygidium and that no segment is ever added from the thorax to the pygidium. The case of *Dalmanites socialis* as described by Barrande (1852, p. 552, pl. 26) will be taken up first, as the more complete. The youngest specimen of this species yet found is 0.75 mm. long, the pygidium is distinctly separated from the cephalon, and makes up 25 per cent of the length. This is probably not the form of the shell as it leaves the egg. At this stage there are two segments in the pygidium, but they increase to four when the test is 1 mm. long. The cephalon has also increased in length, however, so that the proportional length is the same. The subjoined table, which is that compiled by Barrande with the proportional length of the pygidium added, is not as complete as could be desired, but affords a very interesting history of the growth of the caudal shield. The maximum proportional length is reached before the introduction of thoracic segments, and during the appearance of the first five segments the size of the pygidium drops from 25 to 15 per cent. Several stages are missing at the critical time between stages 8 and 9 when the pygidium had added three segments to itself and has supplied only one to the thorax. This would appear to have been a sort of resting or recuperative stage for the pygidium, for it increased its own length to 20 per cent, but from this stage up to stage 12 it continued to give up segments to the thorax and lose in length itself. After stage 12, when the specimens were 8 mm. long, no more thoracic segments were added, but new ones were introduced into the pygidium, until it reached a size equal to one fifth the entire length, as compared with one fourth in the protaspis.

Stage	Length in mm.	Percentage of pygidium	Segments in thorax	Segments in pygidium
1	0.75	25	0	2
2	0.75	25	0	3
3	1.00	25	0	4
4	1.00	22	1	3
5	1.25	20	2	3
6	1.25	18	3	3
7	1.60	15	4	3
8	1.60	15	5	3
9	3.00	20	6	6
10	3.50	20	7	6
11	8.00	18	9	7
12	8.00	16	11	5
13	12.00	16	11	7
14	19.00	18	11	9
15	95.00	20	11	11

Since the above was written, Troedsson (1918, p. 57) has described the development of *Dalmanites eucentrus,* a species found in the Brachiopod shales (Upper Ordovician) of southern Sweden. This species follows a course similar to that of *D. socialis,* so that the full series of stages need not be described. The pygidium is, however, of especial interest, for there is a stage in which it shows two more segments than in the adult. Troedsson figures a pygidium 1.28 mm. long which has eight pairs of pleural ribs, while the adult has only six pairs. The ends of all these ribs are free spines, and were the development not known one would say that this was a case of incipient fusion, while as a matter of fact, it is incipient freedom.

A further interest attaches to this case, because of the close relationship between *D. eucentrus* and *D. mucronatus.* The latter species appears first in the Staurocephalus beds which underlie the Brachiopod shales, so that in its first appearance it is somewhat the older. The pygidium of the adult *D. mucronatus* is larger than that of *D. eucentrus,* having eight pairs of pleural ribs, the same number as in the young of the latter. In short, *D. eucentrus* is probably descended from *D. mucronatus,* and in its youth passes through a stage in which it has a large pygidium like that species. Once more it appears that the small pygidium is more specialized than the large one.

The full ontogeny of *Cyclopyge* is not known, but young specimens show conclusively that segments are not transferred from the thorax to the pygidium, but that the opposite occurs. As shown by Barrande (1852) and corroborated by specimens in the Museum of Comparative Zoology, the process is as follows: The third segment of the adult of this species, that is, the fourth from the pygidium, bears a pair of conspicuous cavities on the axial portion. In a young specimen, 7 mm. long, the second segment bears these cavities, but as the thorax has only four segments, this segment is also the second instead of the fourth ahead of the pygidium. The pygidium itself, instead of being entirely smooth, as in the adult state, is smooth on the posterior half, but on the anterior portion has two well formed but still connected segments, the anterior one being more perfect than the other. These are evidently the two missing segments of the thorax, and instead of being in the process of being incorporated in the pygidium, they are in fact about to be cast off from it to become free thoracic segments. In other words, the thorax grows through the degener-

ation of the pygidium. That the thorax grows at actual expense to the pygidium is shown by the proportions of this specimen. In an adult of this species the pygidium, thorax, and cephalon are to each other as 9 : 11 : 13. In the young specimen they are as 10 : 6 : 12, the pygidium being longer in proportion both to the thorax and to the cephalon than it would be in the adult.

This conception of the breaking down of the pygidium to form the thorax will be very helpful in explaining many things which have hitherto seemed anomalous. For instance, it indicates that the Agnostidæ, whose subequal shields in early stages have been a puzzle, are really primitive forms whose pygidia do not degenerate; likewise the Eodiscidæ, which, however, show within the family a tendency to free some of the segments. The annelidan Mesonacidæ may not be so primitive after all, and their specialized cephala may be more truly indicative of their status than has previously been supposed.

The facts of ontogeny of trilobites with both small and large pygidia do show that there is a reduction of the relative size of the caudal shield during the growth-stages, and therefore that the large pygidium in the protaspis is probably primitive. The same study also shows that the large pygidium is made up of "coalesced segments" only to the extent that they are potentially free, and not in the sense of fused segments.

WIDTH OF THE AXIAL LOBE.

That the narrow type of axial lobe is more primitive than the wide one has already been demonstrated by the ontogeny of various species, and space need not be taken here to discuss the question. Most Cambrian trilobites have narrow axial lobes even in the adult so that their development does not bring this out very strikingly, though it can be seen in *Sao, Ptychoparia,* etc., but in Ordovician trilobites such as *Triarthrus* and especially *Isotelus,* it is a conspicuous feature.

PRESENCE OR ABSENCE OF A "BRIM."

That the extension of the glabella to the front of the cephalon is a primitive feature is well shown by the development of *Sao* (Barrande, 1852, pl. 7), *Ptychoparia* (Beecher, 1895 C, pl. 8), and *Paradoxides* (Raymond, Bull. Mus. Comp. Zool., vol. 57, 1914), although in the last genus the protaspis has a very narrow brim, the larva during the stages of introduction of new segments a fairly wide one, and most adults a narrow one.

The brim of *Sao* seems to be formed partly by new growth and partly at the expense of the frontal lobe, for that lobe is proportionately shorter in the adult than in the protaspis. In *Cryptolithus* and probably in *Harpes, Harpides,* etc., the brim is quite obviously new growth and has nothing to do with the vital organs. Its presence or absence may not have any great significance, but when the glabella extends to the frontal margin, it certainly suggests a more anterior position of certain organs. In *Sao,* the only trilobite in which anything is known of the position of the hypostoma in the young, the posterior end is considerably further forward in a specimen 2.5 mm. long than in one 4 mm. long, thus indicating a backward movement of the mouth during growth, comparable to the backward movement of the eyes.

SEGMENTATION OF THE GLABELLA.

The very smallest specimens of *Sao* show a simple, unsegmented axial lobe, and the same simplicity has been noted in the young of other genera. Beecher considered this as

due to imperfect preservation of the exceedingly small shells, which practically always occur as moulds or casts in soft shale. There is, however, a very general increase in the strength of glabellar segmentation in the early part of the ontogeny of all trilobites whose life history is known, and in some genera, like the Agnostidæ, there is no question of the comparatively late acquisition of glabellar furrows. Even in *Paradoxides,* the furrows appear late in the ontogeny.

Summary.

If absence of eyes on the dorsal surface be primitive, as Beecher has shown, and if the large pygidium, narrow axial lobe, and long unsegmented glabella be primitive, then the known protaspis of the Mesonacidæ and Paradoxidæ is not primitive, that of the Olenidæ is very primitive, and that of the Agnostidæ is primitive except that in one group the axial lobe, when it appears, is rather wide, and in the other a brim is present.

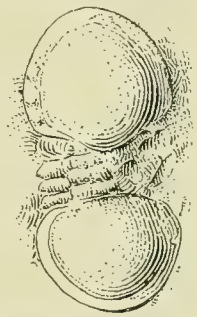


Fig. 35.—A specimen of *Weymouthia nobilis* (Ford), collected by Mr. Thomas H. Clark at North Weymouth, Mass. Note the broad smooth shields of this Lower Cambrian eodiscid. ×6.

Subsequent development from the simple unsegmented protaspis would appear to show, first, an adaptation to swimming by the use of the pygidium; next, the invagination of the appendifers as shown in the segmentation of the axial lobe indicates the functioning of the appendages as swimming legs; then with the introduction of thoracic segments the assumption of a bottom-crawling habit is indicated. Some trilobites were fully adapted for bottom life, and the pygidium became reduced to a mere vestige in the production of a worm-like body. Other trilobites retained their swimming habits, coupled with the crawling mode of life, and kept or even increased (*Isotelus*) the large pygidium.

The Simplest Trilobite.

In the discussion above I have placed great emphasis on the large size of the primitive pygidium, because, although there is nothing new in the idea, its significance seems to have been overlooked.

If the large pygidium is primitive, then multisegmentation in trilobites can not be primitive but is the result of adaptation to a crawling life. It is annelid-like, but is not in itself to be relied upon as showing relationship to the Chætopoda. Simple trilobites with few segments, like the Agnostidæ, Eodiscidæ, etc., were, therefore, properly placed by Beecher at

the base of his classification, and there is now less chance than ever that they can be called degenerate animals.

From the phylogeny of certain groups, such as the Asaphidæ, it is learned that the geologically older members of the family have more strongly segmented anterior and posterior shields than the later ones. That there has been a "smoothing out" is demonstrated by a study of the ontogeny of the later forms. From such examples it has come to be thought that all smooth trilobites are specialized and occupy a terminal position in their genealogical line. This has caused some wonder that smooth agnostids like *Phalacroma bibullatum* and *P. nudum* should be found in strata so old as the Middle Cambrian, and was a source of great perplexity to me in the case of *Weymouthia* (Ottawa Nat., vol. 27, 1913) (fig. 35). This is a smooth member of the Eodiscidæ, and, in fact, one of the simplest trilobites known, for while it has three thoracic segments, it shows almost no trace of dorsal furrows or segmentation on cephalon or pygidium, and, of course, no eyes. Following the general rule, I took this to be a smooth-out eodiscid, and was surprised that it should come from the Lower Cambrian, where it is associated with *Elliptocephala* at Troy, New York, and with *Callavia* at North Weymouth, Massachusetts, and where it has lately been found by Kiær associated with *Holmia* and *Kjerulfia* at Tømten, Norway. It now appears it is really in its proper zone, and instead of being the most specialized, is the simplest of the Eodiscidæ.

What appears to be a still simpler trilobite is the form described by Walcott as *Naraoia*.

Naraoia compacta Walcott.

(Text fig. 36.)

Illustrated: Walcott, Smithson. Misc. Coll., vol. 57, 1912, p. 175, pl. 28, figs. 3, 4.—Cleland, Geology, Physical and Historical, New York, 1916, p. 412, fig. 382 F (somewhat restored).

This very imperfectly known form is referred by Walcott to the Notostraca on what appear to be wholly inadequate grounds, and while I do not insist on my interpretation, I can not refrain from calling attention to the fact that it *can* be explained as the most primitive of all trilobites. It consists of two subequal shields, the anterior of which shows slight, and the posterior considerable evidence of segmentation. It has no eyes, no glabella, and no thorax, and is directly comparable to a very young *Phalacroma bibullatum* (see Barrande 1852, pl. 49, figs. a, b). Walcott states that there is nothing to show how many segments there are in the cephalic shield, but that on one specimen fourteen were faintly indicated on the abdominal covering. The appendages are imperfectly unknown, as no specimen showing the ventral side has yet been described. The possible presence of antennæ and three other appendages belonging to the cephalic shield is mentioned, and there are tips of fourteen legs projecting from beneath the side of one specimen. As figured, some of the appendages have the form of exopodites, others of endopodites, indicating that they were biramous.

Naraoia is, so far as now known, possessed of no characteristics which would prevent its reference to the Trilobita, while the presence of a large abdominal as well as a cephalic shield would make it difficult to place in even so highly variable a group as the Branchiopoda. On the other hand, its only exceptional feature as a trilobite is the lack of thorax, and all study of the ontogeny of the group has led us to expect just that sort of a trilobite to be found some day in the most ancient fossiliferous rocks. *Naraoia* can, I think,

be best explained as a trilobite which grew to the adult state without losing its protaspian form. It was found in the Middle Cambrian of British Columbia.

Even if *Naraoia* should eventually prove to possess characteristics which preclude the possibility of its being a primitive trilobite, it at least represents what I should expect a pre-Cambrian trilobite to look like. What the ancestry of the nektonic primitive trilobite may have been is not yet clear, but all the evidence from the morphology of cephalon, pygidium, and appendages indicates that it was a descendant of a swimming and not a crawling organism.

Since the above was written, the Museum of Comparative Zoology has purchased a specimen of this species obtained from the original locality. The shields are sub-equal, the posterior one slightly the larger, and the axial lobes are definitely outlined on both. The glabella is about one third the total width, nearly parallel-sided, somewhat pointed at the front. There are no traces of glabellar furrows. The axial lobe of the pygidium is also about one third the total width, extends nearly to the posterior margin, and has a rounded posterior end. The measurements are as follows: Length, 33 mm.; length of cephalon, 16 mm., width, 15 mm.; length of glabella, 11.5 mm., width, 5.5 mm.; length of pygidium, 17 mm., width, 15 mm.; length of axial lobe, 14 mm., width, 5.5 mm.

The species is decidedly *Agnostus*-like in both cephalon and pygidium, and were it not so large, might be taken for the young of such a trilobite. The pointed glabella is comparable to the axial lobes of the so called pygidia of the young of *Condylopyge rex* and *Peronopsis integer* (Barrande, Syst. Sil., vol. 1, pl. 49).

The Ancestor of the Trilobites, and the Descent of the Arthropoda.

The "annelid" theory of the origin of the Crustacea and therefore of the trilobites, originating with Hatschek (1877) and so ably championed by Bernard (1892), has now been a fundamental working hypothesis for some years, and has had a profound influence in shaping thought about trilobites. This hypothesis has, however, its weak points, the principal one being its total inhibition of the workings of that great talisman of the palæontologist, the law of recapitulation. Its acceptance has forced the zoologist to look upon the nauplius as a specially adapted larva, and has caused more than one forced explanation of the protaspis of the trilobite. When so keen a student as Calman says that the nauplius must point in some way to the ancestor of the Crustacea (1909, p. 26), it is time to reëxamine some of the fundamentals. This has been done in the preceding pages and evidence adduced to show that the primitive features of a trilobite indicate a swimming animal, and that the adaptations are those which enabled it to assume a crawling mode of existence. It has also been pointed out that in *Naraoia* there is preserved down to Middle Cambrian times an animal like that to which ontogeny points as a possible ancestor of the trilobites. *Naraoia* is not the simplest conceivable animal of its own type, however, for it has built up a pygidium of fourteen or fifteen somites. One would expect to find in Proterozoic sediments remains of similar animals with pygidia composed of only one or two somites, with five pairs of appendages on the cephalon, one or two pairs on the pygidium, a ventral mouth, and a short hypostoma. Anything simpler than this could not, in my opinion, be classed as a trilobite.

What the ancestor of this animal was is mere surmise. It probably had no test, and it may be noted in this connection that *Naraoia* had a very thin shell, as shown by its

state of preservation, and was in that respect intermediate between the trilobite and the theoretical ancestor. Every analysis of the cephalon of the trilobite shows that it is made up of several segments, certainly five, probably six, possibly seven. Every study of the trilobite, whether of adult, young, or protaspis, indicates the primitiveness of the lateral extensions or pleural lobes. The same studies indicate as clearly the location of the vital organs along the median lobe. These suggestions all point to a soft-bodied, depressed animal composed of few segments, probably with simple marginal eyes, a mouth beneath the anterior margin, tactile organs at one or both ends, with an oval shape, and a straight narrow gut running from anterior mouth to terminal anus. The broad flat shape gives great buoyancy and is frequently developed in the plankton. Inherited by the trilobites, it proved of great use to the swimmers among them.

The known animal which most nearly approaches the form which I should expect the remote ancestor of the trilobites to have had is *Amiskwia sagittiformis* Walcott (Smithson. Misc. Coll., vol. 57, 1911, p. 112, pl. 22, figs. 3, 4). This "worm" from the Middle Cambrian is similar in outline to the recent *Spadella,* and is referred by Walcott to the Chætognatha. It has a pair of lateral expansions and a flattened caudal fin, a narrow median alimentary canal, and a pair of rather long simple tentacles. With the exception of a thin septum back of the head, no traces of segmentation are shown.

Some time in the late pre-Cambrian, the pre-trilobite, which probably swam by rhythmic undulations of the body, began to come into occasional contact with a substratum, and two things happened: symmetrically placed, i. e., paired, appendages began to develop on the contact surface, and a test on the dorsal side. The first use of the appendages may have been in pushing food forward to the mouth, and for the greater convenience in catching such material, a fold in front of the mouth may have elongated to form the prototype of the hypostoma. At this time the substratum may not have been the ocean bottom at all, but the animals, still free swimmers, may have alighted at feeding time on floating algæ from the surface of which they collected their food. While the dorsal test was originally jointed at every segment, the undulatory mode of swimming seems to have given way to the method of sculling by means of the posterior end only, or by the use of the appendages, and the anterior segments early became fused together.

The result of the hardening of the dorsal test was of course to reduce to that extent the area available for respiration, and this function was now transferred in part to the limbs, which bifurcated, one branch continuing the food-gathering process and the other becoming a gill. The next step may have been the "discovery" of the ocean bottom and the tapping of an hitherto unexploited supply of food. Upon this, there set in those adaptations to a crawling mode of existence which are so well shown in the trilobite. The crawling legs became lengthened and took on a hardened test, the hypostoma was greatly elongated, pushing the mouth backward, and new segments were added to produce a long worm-like form which could adapt itself to the inequalities of the bottom. That the test of the appendages became hardened later than that of the body is shown by the specimens of *Neolenus,* in which the dorsal shell as preserved in the shale is thick and solid, while the test of the appendages is a mere film.

The late Proterozoic or very earliest Cambrian was probably the time of the great splitting up into groups. The first development seems to have been among the trilobites themselves, the Hypoparia giving rise to two groups with compound eyes, first the Opisthoparia and later the Proparia. About this same time the Copepoda may have split off

from the Hypoparia, continuing in the pelagic habitat. At first, most of the trilobites seem to have led a crawling existence, but about Middle Cambrian time they began to go back partially to the ancestral swimming habits, and retained some of the trunk segments to form a larger pygidium. The functional importance of the pygidium explains why it can not be used successfully in making major divisions in classification. Nearly related trilobites may be adapted to diverse methods of life.

EVOLUTION WITHIN THE CRUSTACEA.

The question naturally arises as to whether the higher Crustacea were derived from some one trilobite, or whether the different groups have been developed independently from different stocks. The opinion that all other crustaceans could have been derived from an *Apus*-like form has been rather generally held in recent years, but Carpenter (1903, p. 334) has shown that the leptostracan, *Nebalia,* is really a more primitive animal than *Apus.* He has pointed out that in Leptostraca the thorax bears eight pairs of simple limbs with lamelliform exopodites and segmented endopodites, while the abdomen of eight segments has six pairs of pleopods and a pair of furcal processes, so that only one segment is limbless. Contrasted with this are the crowded and complicated limbs of the anterior part of the trunk of *Apus,* and the appendage-less condition of the hinder portion. Further, a comparison between the appendages of the head of *Nebalia* and those of *Apus* shows that the former are the more primitive. The antennules of *Nebalia* are elongate, those of *Apus* greatly reduced; the mandible of *Nebalia* has a long endopodite, and Carpenter points out that from it either the malacostracan mandible with a reduced endopodite or the branchiopodan mandible with none could be derived, but that the former could not have arisen from the latter. The maxillæ of *Apus* are also much the more specialized and reduced.

Nebalia being in all else more primitive than *Apus,* it follows that the numerous abdominal segments of the latter may well have arisen by the multiplication of an originally moderate number, and the last trace of primitiveness disappears.

It is now possible to add to the results obtained from comparative morphology the testimony of palæontology, already outlined above, and since the two are in agreement, it must be admitted that the modern Branchiopoda are really highly specialized.

As has already been pointed out, *Hymenocaris,* the leptostracan of the Middle Cambrian, has very much the same sort of appendages as the Branchiopoda of the same age, both being of the trilobite type. Which is the more primitive, and was one derived from the other?

The Branchiopoda were much more abundant and much more highly diversified in Cambrian times than were the Leptostraca, and, therefore, are probably older. Some of the Cambrian branchiopods were without a carapace, and some were sessile-eyed. These were more trilobite-like than *Hymenocaris.* Many of the Cambrian branchiopods had developed a bivalved carapace, though not so large a one as that of the primitive Leptostraca. The present indications are, therefore, that the Branchiopoda are really older than the Leptostraca, and also that the latter were derived from them. It seems very generally agreed that the Malacostraca are descended from the Leptostraca, and the fossils of the Pennsylvanian supply a number of links in the chain of descent. Thus, *Pygocephalus cooperi,* with its brood pouches, is believed by Calman (1909, p. 181) to stand at the base of the Peracaridan series of orders, and *Uronectes, Palæocaris,* and the like are Palæozoic representatives of the Syncarida. Others of the Pennsylvanian species appear to tend in the direction of the Sto-

matopoda, whose true representatives have been found in the Jurassic. The Isopoda seem to be the only group of Malacostraca not readily connected up with the Leptostraca. Their depressed form, their sessile-eyes, and their antiquity all combine to indicate a separate origin for the group, and it has already been pointed out how readily they can be derived directly from the trilobite.

While the Copepoda seem to have been derived directly from the Hypoparia, the remainder of the Crustacea apparently branched off after the compound eyes became fully developed, unless, as seems entirely possible, compound eyes have been developed independently in various groups. Most Crustacea were derived from crawling trilobites (Lower Cambrian or pre-Cambrian Opisthoparia), for they lost the large pygidium, and also the major part of the pleural lobes. In all Crustacea, too, other than the Copepoda and Ostracoda, there is a tendency to lose the exopodites of the antennæ.

These modifications, which produced a considerable difference in the general appearance of the animal, are easily understood. As has been shown in previous pages, the trilobites themselves exhibit the degenerative effect on the anterior appendages of the backward movement of the mouth, and the transformation of a biramous appendage with an endobase into a uniramous antenna is a simple result of such a process. The feeding habits of the trilobites were peculiar and specialized, and it is natural that some members of the group should have broken away from them. In any progressive mode of browsing the hypostoma was a hindrance, so was soon gotten rid of, and the endobases not grouped around the mouth likewise became functionless. The chief factor in the development of the higher Crustacea seems to have been the pinching claw, by means of which food could be conveyed to the mouth. It had the same place in crustacean development that the opposable thumb is believed to have had in that of man.

An intermediate stage between the Trilobita and the higher Crustacea is at last exhibited to us by the wonderful, but unfortunately rather specialized *Marrella,* already described. It retains the hypostoma and the undifferentiated biramous appendages of the trilobite, but has uniramous antennæ, there are no endobases on the coxopodites of the thoracic appendages, the pygidium is reduced to a single segment, and the lateral lobes of the thorax are also much reduced. *Marrella* is far from being the simplest of its group, but is the only example which survived even down to Middle Cambrian times of what was probably once an important series of species transitional between the trilobites and the higher Crustacea.

In this theory of the origin of the Crustacea from the Trilobita, the nauplius becomes explicable and points very definitely to the ancestor. According to Calman (1909, p. 23):

> The typical nauplius has an oval unsegmented body and three pairs of limbs, corresponding to the antennules, antennæ, and mandibles of the adult. The antennules are uniramous, the others biramous, and all three pairs are used in swimming. The antennæ may have a spiniform or hooked masticatory process at the base, and share with the mandibles which have a similar process, the function of seizing and masticating the food. The mouth is overhung by a large labrum or upper lip and the integument of the dorsal surface of the body forms a more or less definite dorsal shield. The paired eyes are as yet wanting, but the median eye is large and conspicuous.

The large labrum or hypostoma, the biramous character of the appendages, especially of the antennæ, the functional gnathobases on the second and third appendages, and the oval unsegmented shield are all characteristics of the trilobites, and it is interesting to note that all nauplii have the free-swimming habit.

The effect of inheritance and modification through millions of generations is also shown in the nauplius, but rather less than would be expected. The most important modifi-

cation is the temporary suppression of the posterior pairs of appendages of the head, so that they are generally developed later than the thoracic limbs. The median or nauplius eye has not yet been found in trilobites, and if it is, as it appears to be, a specialized eye, it has probably arisen since the later Crustacea passed the trilobite stage in their phylogeny.

The oldest Crustacea, other than trilobites, so far known are the Branchiopoda and Phyllocarida described by Walcott and discussed above. It is important to note that while the former have already achieved such modified characteristics that they have been referred to modern orders, they retain the trilobite-like limbs and some of them still have well developed pleural lobes.

Calman (1909, p. 101) says of the Copepoda:

> On the hypothesis that the nauplius represents the ancestral type of the Crustacea, the Eucopepoda would be regarded as the most primitive existing members of the class, retaining as they do, naupliar characters in the form of the first three pairs of appendages and in the absence of paired eyes and of a shell-fold. As already indicated, however, it is much more probable that they are to be regarded as a specialized and in some respects degenerate group which, while retaining, in some cases, a very primitive structure of the cephalic appendages, has diverged from the ancestral stock in the reduction of the number of somites, the loss of the paired eyes and the shell-fold, and the simplified form of the trunk-limbs.

If the Eucopepoda be viewed in the light of the theory of descent here suggested, it is at once seen that while they are modified and specialized, they more nearly approximate the hypothetical ancestor than any other living Crustacea. Compound eyes are absent, and it can not be proved that they were ever present, although Grobben is said to have observed rudiments of them in the development of *Calanus*. The "simplified limbs" are the simple limbs of the trilobite, somewhat modified. The absence of the shell-fold and carapace is certainly a primitive characteristic. Add to this the direct development of the small number of segments, and the infolded pleural lobes, and it must be admitted that the group presents more trilobite-like characteristics than any other. It seems very likely that the primitive features were retained because of the pelagic habitat of a large part of the group.

Ruedemann (Proc. Nat. Acad. Sci., vol. 4, 1918, p. 382, pl.) has recently outlined a possible method of derivation of the acorn barnacles from the phyllocarids. Starting from a recent *Balanus* with rostrum and carina separated by two pairs of lateralia, he traces back through *Calophragmus* with three pairs of lateralia to *Protobalanus* of the Devonian with five pairs. Still older is the newly discovered *Eobalanus* of the upper Ordovician, which also has five pairs of lateralia but the middle pair is reversed, so that when the lateralia of each side are fitted together, they form a pair of shields like those of *Rhinocaris,* separated by the rostrum and carina, which are supposed to be homologous with the rostrum and dorsal plate of the Phyllocarida. Ruedemann suggests that the ancestral phyllocarid attached itself by the head, dorsal side downward, and the lateralia were developed from the two valves of the carapace during its upward migration, to protect the ventral side exposed in the new position.

This theory is very ingenious, but has not been fully published at the time of writing, and it seems very doubtful if it can be sustained.

Summary.

The salient points in the preceding discussion should be disentangled from their setting and put forward in a brief summary.

It is argued that the ancestral arthropod was a short and wide pelagic animal of few segments, which so far changed its habits as to settle upon a sub-stratum. As a result of

change in feeding habits, appendages were developed, and, due perhaps to physiological change induced by changed food, a shell was secreted on the dorsal surface, covering the whole body. Such a shell need not have been segmented, and, in fact, the stiffer the shell, the more reason for development of the appendages. Activity as a swimming and crawling animal tended to break up the dorsal test into segments corresponding to those of the soft parts, and, by adaptation, a floating animal became a crawling one, with consequent change

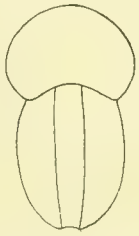


Fig. 36.—*Naraoia compacta* Walcott. An outline of the test, after Walcott. Natural size.

Fig. 37.—*Pagetia clytia* Walcott. An eodiscid with compound eyes. After Walcott. × 5.

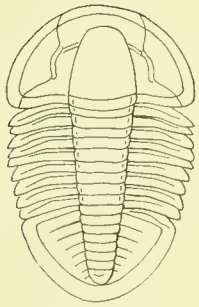


Fig. 38.—*Asaphiscus wheeleri* Meek. A representative trilobite of the Middle Cambrian of the Pacific province. After Meek. × ½.

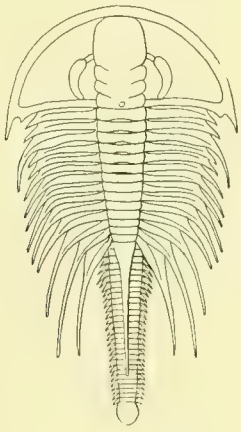


Fig. 39.—*Pœdeumias robsonensis* Burling. Restored from a photograph published by Burling. × ¼.

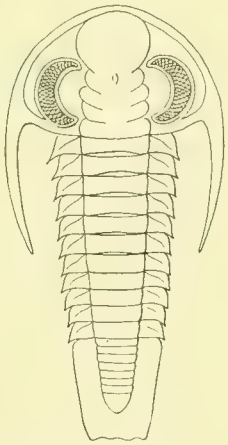


Fig. 40.—*Robergia* sp. Restored from fragments found in the Athens shale (Lower Middle Ordovician), at Saltville, Va. Natural size.

from a form like that of *Naraoia* to one like *Pœdeumias*. (See figs. 36-40.) A continuation of this line of development by breaking up and loss of the dorsal test led through forms similar to *Marrella* to the Branchiopoda of the Cambrian, in which not only is there great reduction in the test, but also loss of appendages. The origin of the carapace is still obscure, but Bernard (1892, p. 214, fig. 48) has already pointed out that some trilobites, Acidaspidæ particularly, have backward projecting spines on the posterior margin of the cephalon, which suggest the possibility of the production of such a shield, and in *Marrella* such spines are so extravagantly developed as almost to confirm the probability of such

origin. In this line of development two pairs of tactile antennæ were produced, while the anomomeristic character of the trilobite was retained. From similar opisthoparian ancestors there were, however, derived primitive Malacostraca retaining biramous antennæ, but with a carapace and reduced pleural lobes and pygidium. From this offshoot were probably derived the Ostracoda, the Cirripedia, and the various orders of the Malacostraca, with the possible exception of the Isopoda. I have suggested independent origins of the Copepoda and Isopoda, but realize the weighty arguments which can be adduced against such an interpretation.

It is customary to speak of the Crustacea and Trilobita as having had a common ancestry, rather than the former being in direct line of descent from the latter, but when it can be shown that the higher Crustacea are all derivable from the Trilobita, and that they possess no characteristics which need have been inherited from any other source than that group, it seems needless to postulate the evolution of the same organs along two lines of development.

I can not go into the question of which are more primitive, sessile or stalked eyes, but considering the various types found among the trilobites, one can but feel that the stalked eyes are not the most simple. While no trilobite had movable stalked eyes, it is possible to homologize free cheeks with such structures. They always bear the visual surface, and, in certain trilobites (*Cyclopyge*), the entire cheek is broken up into lenses. Since a free cheek is a separate entity, it is conceivable that it might be modified into a movable organ.

EVOLUTION OF THE MEROSTOMATA.

It has been pointed out above that the Limulava (*Sidneyia, Amiella, Emeraldella*) have certain characteristics in common with the trilobites on the one hand and the Eurypterida on the other. These relationships have been emphasized by Walcott, who derives the Eurypterida through the Limulava and the Aglaspina from the Trilobita. The Limulava may be derived from the Trilobita, but indicate a line somewhat different from that of the remainder of the Crustacea. In this line the second cephalic appendages do not become antennæ, and the axial lobe seems to broaden out, so that the pleural lobes become an integral part of the body. As in the modern Crustacea, the pygidium is reduced to the anal plate, and this grows out into a spine-like telson.

From the Limulava to the Eurypterida is a long leap, and before it can be made without danger, many intermediate steps must be placed in position. The direct ancestor of the Eurypterida is certainly not to be seen in the highly specialized *Sidneyia,* and probably not in *Emeraldella,* but it might be sought in a related form with a few more segments. The few species now known do suggest the beginning of a grouping of appendages about the mouth, a suppression of appendages on the abdomen, and a development of gills on the thorax only. Further than that the route is uncertain.

Clarke and Ruedemann, whose recent extensive studies give their opinion much weight, seem fully convinced that the Merostomata could not have been derived from the Trilobita, but are rather inclined to agree with Bernard that the arachnids and the crustaceans were derived independently from similar chætopod annelids (1912, p. 148).

The greater part of their work was, however, finished before 1910, and although they refer to Walcott's description of the Limulava (1911), they did not have the advantage of studying the wonderful series of Crustacea described by him in 1912. While the evi-

dence is far from clear, it would appear that the discovery of animals with the form of *Limulus* and the eurypterids and the appendages of trilobites means something more than descent from similar ancestors. Biramous limbs of the type found in the trilobites would probably not be evolved independently on two lines, even if the ancestral stocks were of the same blood.

The Aglaspidæ, as represented by *Molaria* and *Habelia* in the Middle Cambrian, are quite obvious closely related to the trilobites, easily derived from them, and retain numerous of their characteristics. That they are not trilobites is, however, shown by the presence of two pairs of antennæ, the absence of facial sutures, and the possession of a spine-like telson.

The Aglaspidæ have always been placed in the Merostomata, and nearer the Limulidæ than the Eurypterida. The discovery of appendages does not at all tend to strengthen that view, but indicates rather that they are true Crustacea which have not given rise to any group now known. The exterior form is, however, *Limulus*-like, and since it is known from ontogeny that the ancestor of that genus was an animal with free body segments, there is still a temptation to try to see in the Aglaspidæ the progenitors of the limulids.

The oldest known *Limulus*-like animal other than the Aglaspidæ is *Neolimulus falcatus* Woodward (Geol. Mag., dec. 1, vol. 5, 1868, p. 1, pl. 1, fig. 1). The structure of the head of this animal is typically limuloid, with simple and compound eyes and even the ophthalmic ridges. Yet, curiously enough, it shows what in a trilobite would be considered the posterior half of the facial suture, running from the eye to the genal angle. The body is composed of eight free segments with the posterior end missing. *Belinurus,* from the Mississippian and Pennsylvanian, has a sort of pygidium, the posterior three segments being fused together, and *Prestwichia* of the Pennsylvanian has all the segments of the abdomen fused together. So far as form goes, a very good series of stages can be selected, from the Aglaspidæ of the Cambrian through *Neolimulus* to the Belinuridæ of the late Palæozoic and the Limulidæ of the Mesozoic to recent. Without much more knowledge of the appendages than is now available, it would be quite impossible to defend such a line. It is, however, suggestive.

EVOLUTION OF THE "TRACHEATA."

The trilobites were such abundant and highly variable animals, adapting themselves to various methods of life in the sea, that it appears highly probably that some of them may have become adapted to life on the land. The ancestors of the Chilopoda, Diplopoda, and Insecta appear to have been air-breathing animals as early as the Cambrian, or at latest, the Ordovician. Since absolutely nothing is yet known of the land or even of the fresh-water life of those periods, nothing can now be proved.

In discussing the relationship of the trilobites to the various tracheate animals, I have pointed out such palæontologic evidence as I have been able to gather. Studies in the field of comparative morphology do not fall within my province. I only hope to have made the structure of the trilobite a little more accessible to the student of phylogenies.

SUMMARY ON LINES OF DESCENT.

In order to put into graphic and concise form the suggestions made above, it is necessary to define and give names to some of the groups outlined. The hypothetical ancestor

need not be included in the classification and for reasons of convenience may be referred to merely as the Protostracean.

The group of free-swimming trilobites without thoracic segments was probably a large one, and within it there were doubtless considerable variations and numerous adaptations. While the only known animal which could possibly be referred to this group, *Naraoia,* is blind, it is entirely possible that other species had eyes, and that the cephala and pygidia were variously modified. For this reason and because of the lack of all thoracic segments, it seems better to erect a new order rather than merely a family for the group, and *Nektaspia* (swimming shields) may be suggested. The only known family is Naraoidæ Walcott, which must be redefined.

Marrella and *Habelia* are types of Crustacea which can neither be placed in the Trilobita nor in any of the established subclasses of the Eucrustacea. They represent a transitional group, the members of which are, so far as known, adapted to the crawling mode of life, though it may prove that there are also swimmers which can be classified with them. To this subclass the name *Haplopoda* may be applied, the feet being simple.

The two known families, Marrellidæ Walcott and Aglaspidæ Clarke, belong to different orders, the second having already the name Aglaspina Walcott. The name *Marrellina* may therefore be used for the other.

For *Sidneyia,* Walcott proposed the new subordinal name Limulava, placing it under the Eurypterida. While *Sidneyia, Emeraldella,* and *Amiella* may belong to the group that gave rise to the Eurypterida, they are themselves Crustacea, and a place must be found for them in that group. The possession of only one pair of antennæ prevents their reception by the Haplopoda, and allies them to the Trilobita, but the modifications of the trunk and its appendages keep them out of that subclass, and a new one has to be erected for them. This may be known as the *Xenopoda,* in allusion to the strange appendages of *Sidneyia.*

Synopsis.

Class Crustacea.

Subclass Trilobita Walch.

Crustacea with one pair of uniramous antennæ, and possessing facial sutures.

Order Nektaspia nov.

Trilobita without thoracic segments. Cephala and pygidia simple.

Family Naraoidæ Walcott.

Cephalon and pygidium large, both shields nearly smooth. Eyes absent. A single species: *Naraoia compacta* Walcott, Middle Cambrian, British Columbia.

Subclass Haplopoda nov.

Crustacea with trilobate form, two pairs of uniramous antennæ, no facial sutures, sessile compound eyes present or absent, pygidium and pleural lobes generally reduced, large labrum present, appendages of the trunk biramous.

Order Marrellina nov.

Form trilobite-like, pleural lobes reduced, endobases absent from coxopodites of body, pygidium a small plate.

Family Marrellidæ Walcott.

Cephalon with long genal and nuchal spines. Eyes marginal. A single species: *Marrella splendens* Walcott, Middle Cambrian, British Columbia.

Order Aglaspina Walcott.

Body trilobite-like, with few thoracic segments, and a spine-like telson. Appendages biramous.

Family Aglaspidæ Clarke.

Cephalon trilobate, with or without compound eyes, seven or eight segments in the thorax.

Genus *Aglaspis* Hall.

Compound eyes present, seven segments in thorax. Upper Cambrian, Wisconsin.

Genus *Molaria* Walcott.

Compound eyes absent, eight segments in thorax. Middle Cambrian, British Columbia.

Genus *Habelia* Walcott.

Compound eyes absent. Not yet fully described. Middle Cambrian, British Columbia.

Subclass Xenopoda nov.

Crustacea with more or less eurypterid-like form, one pair of uniramous antennæ, biramous appendages on anterior part of trunk, modified endopodites on cephalon.

Order Limulava Walcott.

Cephalon with lateral or marginal eyes and large epistoma. Body with eleven free segments and a telson. Cephalic appendages grouped about the mouth.

Family Sidneyidæ Walcott.

Trunk probably with exopodites only, and without appendages on the last two segments. Telson with a pair of lateral swimmerets.

Genus *Sidneyia* Walcott.

Third cephalic appendage a large compound claw. Gnathobases forming strong jaws. Middle Cambrian, British Columbia.

Genus *Amiella* Walcott.

Middle Cambrian, British Columbia.

Family Emeraldellidæ nov.

Trunk with biramous appendages in anterior part, and appendages on all segments except possibly the spine-like telson.

Genus *Emeraldella* Walcott.

Cephalic appendages simple spiniferous endopodites. Eyes unknown. Middle Cambrian, British Columbia.

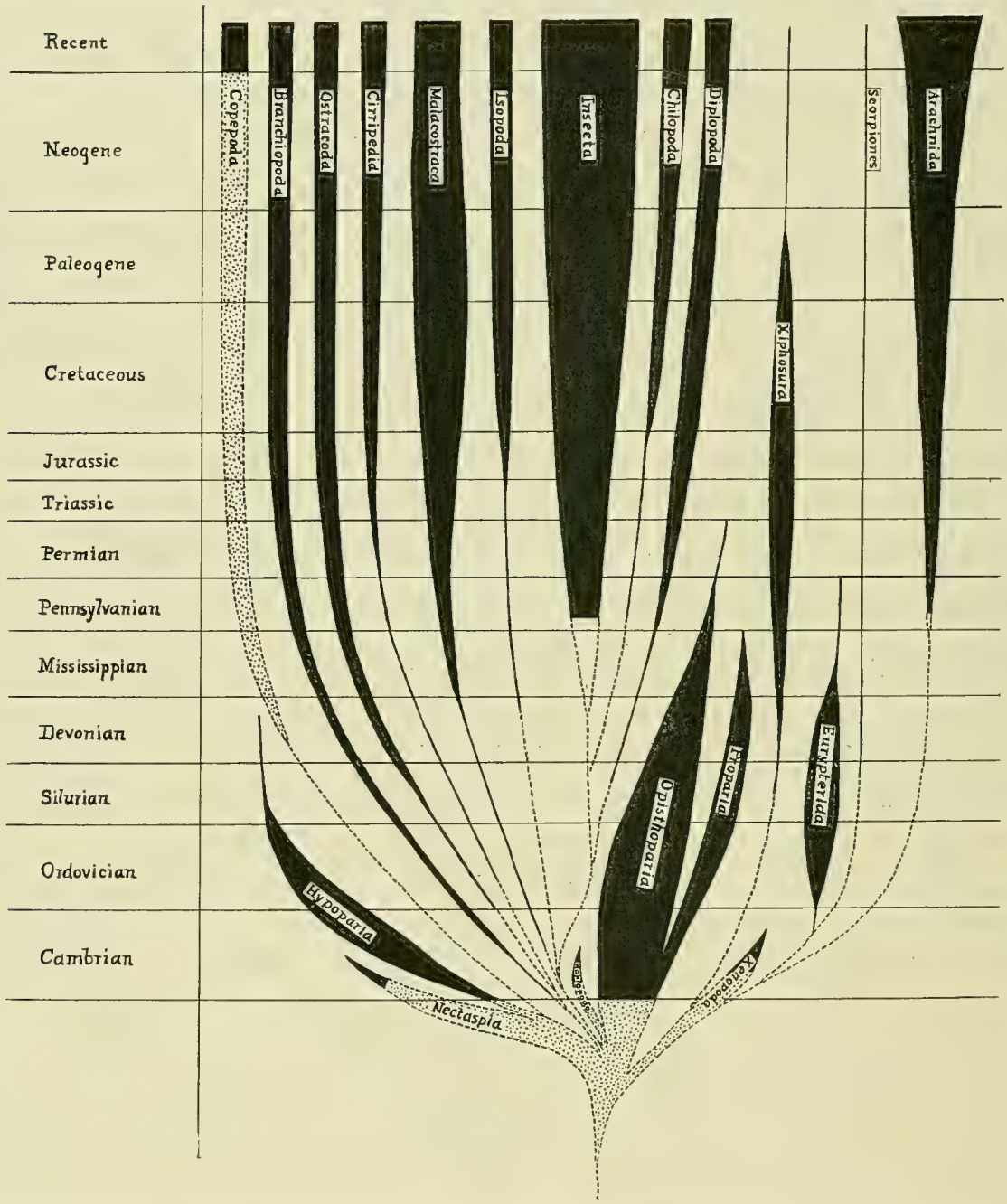


Fig. 41.—A diagram showing possible lines of descent of the other Arthropoda from the Trilobita. The three recognized orders of the latter are shown separately. The known geological range is indicated in solid black, the hypothetical range and connections stippled. The short branch beside the Opisthoparia represents the range of the Haplopoda. The term Arachnida is used for all arachnids other than Merostomata, merely as a convenient inclusive name for the groups not especially studied.

Final Summary.

It is generally believed that the Arthropoda constitute a natural, monophyletic group.

The data assembled in the preceding pages indicate that the other Arthropoda were derived directly or indirectly from the Trilobita because:

(1) the trilobites are the oldest known arthropods;

(2) the trilobites of all formations show great variation in the number of trunk segments, but with a tendency for the number to become fixed in each genus;

(3) the trilobites have a constant number of segments in the head;

(4) the position of the mouth is variable, so that either the Crustacea or the Arachnida could be derived from the trilobites;

(5) the trilobite type of appendage is found, in vestigial form at least, throughout the Arthropoda;

(6) the appendages of all other Arthropoda are of forms which could have been derived from those of trilobites;

(7) the appendages of trilobites are the simplest known among the Arthropoda;

(8) the trilobites show practically all known kinds of sessile arthropodan eyes, simple, compound, and aggregate;

(9) the apparent specializations of trilobites, large pleural lobes and pygidia, are primitive, and both suffer reduction within the group.

The ancestor of the trilobite is believed to have been a soft-bodied, free-swimming, flat, blind or nearly blind animal of few segments, because:

(a) the form of both adult and embryo is of a type more adapted for floating than crawling;

(b) the large pygidium is shown by ontogeny to be primitive, and the elongate worm-like form secondary;

(c) the history of the trilobites shows a considerable increase in the average number of segments in successive periods from the Cambrian to the Permian;

(d) the simplest trilobites are nearly or quite blind.

PART IV.

DESCRIPTION OF THE APPENDAGES OF INDIVIDUAL SPECIMENS.

Triarthrus becki Green.

In order to make easily available the evidence on which the present knowledge of the appendages of *Triarthrus* and *Cryptolithus* rests, it has seemed wise to publish brief descriptions and photographic figures of some of the better specimens preserved in the Yale University Museum. These specimens are pyritic replacements, and while they do not as yet show any signs of decomposition, it should be realized that it is only a matter of time when either they will be self-destroyed through oxidation, or else embedded for safe keeping in such a fashion that they will not be readily available for study. It is therefore essential to keep a photographic record of the more important individuals.

Specimen No. 220 (pl. 3, fig. 2).

Illustrated: Amer. Geol., vol. 15, 1895, pl. 4 (drawing); Amer. Jour. Sci., vol. 13, 1902, pl. 3 (photograph).

This is one of the largest specimens showing appendages, and is developed from the ventral side. It shows some appendages on all parts of the body, but its special features are the exhibition of the shafts on the proximal ends of the antennules, the rather well preserved appendages of the cephalon and anterior part of the thorax, and the preservation of the anal opening. In the drawing in the American Geologist, the right and left sides are reversed as in a mirror, a point which should be borne in mind when comparing that figure with a photograph or description.

The shaft of the left antennule is best preserved and is short, cylindrical, somewhat enlarged and ball-shaped at the proximal end. It is 1.5 mm. long. The posterior part of the hypostoma is present, but crushed, and the metastoma is not visible, the pieces so indicated in Beecher's figure being the rim of the hypostoma. Back of the hypostoma may be seen four (not three as in Beecher's figure) pairs of gnathites, the first three pairs broad and greatly overlapping, the fourth pair more slender, but poorly preserved. The inner edges of the gnathites on the right side are distinctly nodulose, and roughened for mastication.

The outer ends of one endopodite and three exopodites project beyond the margin on the right side. The dactylopodite of the endopodite is especially well preserved. It is cylindrical, the end rounded but not enlarged or pointed, and bears three small sharp spines, all in a horizontal plane, one anterior, one central, and one posterior. The outer ends of the exopodites show about ten segments each (in 2.5 mm.) beyond the margin of the test, and from three to five setæ attached to the posterior side of each segment. These hairs are attached in a groove, well shown in this specimen. On the anterior margin of the exopodite there is a minute spine at each joint.

Measurements: Length, 38 mm.; width at back of cephalon, 19 mm.

Specimen No. 210 (pl. 2, fig. 3).

Illustrated: Amer. Jour. Sci., vol. 46, 1893, p. 469, fig. 1 (head and right side); Amer. Geol., vol. 13, 1894, pl. 3, fig. 7 (same figure as the last); Amer. Jour. Sci., vol. 13, 1902, pl. 2, fig. 1 (photograph).

This individual supplied the main basis for Professor Beecher's first figure showing the appendages of the thorax, the head and appendages of the right side having been taken

from it, and the appendages of the left side from No. 206. Such of the endopodites as are well preserved show from three to four segments projecting beyond the test, and the dactylopodites have one or two terminal spines. The antennules are unusually well preserved and have about forty segments each in front of the cephalon, or an average of five to one millimeter.

Specimens 209 and 210 are on a slab about 7×5.5 inches, and with them are twelve other more or less well preserved individuals, all but one of which are smaller than these. Two of the fourteen are ventral side up on the slab, which means dorsal side up in the rock. Nine are oriented in one direction, two at exactly right angles to this, and three at an angle of 45° with the others. If the majority of the specimens are considered to be headed northward, then seven are so oriented, two northeast, one east, two south, one southwest, and one west.

Nine of the specimens show antennules. Five of these are specimens headed north, and in all of them the antennules are in or very near the normal position. The antennules of two, one headed east and the other west, are imperfectly preserved, but the parts remaining diverge much more than do the antennules of those in the normal position. The individual headed southwest has one antennule broken off, while the other is curved back so that its tip is directed northward. Another one, headed south, has the antennules in the normal position. These observations indicate that the specimens were oriented by currents of water, rather than in life attitudes, and that the distal portions of the antennules were relatively flexible.

Measurements: The specimen (No. 210) is 20 mm. long, 9.5 mm. wide at the back of the cephalon, and the antennules project 8 mm. in front of the head. The smallest specimen on the slab is 6.5 mm. long. A specimen 7.5 mm. long has antennules which project 2.5 mm. in front of the cephalon.

Specimen No. 201 (pl. 2, fig. 1; pl. 3, fig. 4).

Illustrated: Amer. Jour. Sci., vol. 46, 1893, p. 469, figs. 2, 3; Amer. Geol., vol. 13, 1894, pl. 3, figs. 8, 9.

An entire specimen 17 mm. long, exposed from the dorsal side. It shows only traces of the appendages of the head, but displays well those of the anterior part of the thorax, and a number of appendages emerge from under the abdominal shield. This specimen is of particular interest as it is the subject of the first of Professor Beecher's papers on appendages of trilobites. On the right side the pleura have been removed, so as to expose the appendages of the second, third, and fourth segments from above. The first two of the appendages on the right are best preserved, and these are the ones figured. They belong to the second and third segments. The endopodites of each are ahead of the exopodites, and the proximal portion of each exopodite overlies portions of the first two segments (second and third) of the corresponding endopodite. The coxopodites are not visible, but very nearly the full length of the first segment of the endopodite (the basipodite) is exposed. The first two visible segments (the first and second) extend just to the margin of the pleural lobe, while the other four extend beyond the dorsal cover. The segments decrease in length outward, but not regularly, the meropodite being generally longer than the ischiopodite or the carpopodite. The terminal segment (dactylopodite) is short and bears short sharp hair-like spines which articulate in sockets at the distal end. On this specimen the anterior limb on the right side shows one terminal spine, the second endopodite on that side has two, and two of the endopodites on the left-hand side preserve two each. The segments of the limbs

are nearly cylindrical, but the ischiopodites and meropodites of several of the endopodites show rather deep longitudinal grooves which appear to be rather the result of the shrinkage of the thin test than natural conformations.

The endopodites on the left-hand side have a number of short, sharp, movable, hair-like spines, and cup-shaped depressions which are the points of insertion of others. On the distal end of the carpopodite of the first thoracic segment there seems to have been a spine, whose place is now shown by a pit. This same endopodite shows, rather indistinctly, three pits in the groove of the carpopodite, and the propodite has two. On the endopodite of the second appendage on this side, both the carpopodite and propodite possess a fine hair-like articulated spine at the distal end, that of the propodite arising on the dorsal and that of the carpopodite on the posterior side. On the dorsal side of the carpopodite there are three pits for the articulation of spines, and on the propodite, one.

The exopodites belonging to the thoracic segments are of equal length with the endopodites, and while the proximal portion of each is stouter than that of the corresponding endopodite, the exopodites taper to a hair-like termination, while the endopodites remain fairly stout to the distal segment. Most of the setæ of the exopodites have been removed, so that each remains as a curving, many-segmented organ, transversely striated, with a continuous groove along the posterior side. The setæ appear to be set in this groove, one for each of the transverse ridges on the shaft.

A good deal of the test has been cut away on the left-hand side from the thorax and pygidium, and the appendages exposed from above. Enough of the dorsal shell has been cut away so that the anal opening is exposed, and directly behind the pygidium, on the median line, is a bilaterally symmetrical plate with serrated edges which appears to be the appendage of the anal segment. (See pl. 3, fig. 4.)

Measurements: The specimen is 17 mm. long, and 8 mm. in greatest width (at the back of the cephalon). From the median tubercle to the outer edge of the pleuron of the second thoracic segment the distance is 3.7 mm. From the point of articulation to the distal end of the spines on the dactylopodite of the second endopodite on the right-hand side is 4.3 mm. The basipodite of this appendage is 1.5 mm. long, the ischiopodite 1 mm. long, the meropodite 1.2 mm. long, the carpopodite 0.5 mm. long, the propodite 0.35 long, and the dactylopodite 0.15 mm. long. On the left-hand side the endopodite of the first segment projects 3 mm. beyond the pleuron, the second, 3.2 mm. At the back the appendages extend a maximum distance of 2.5 mm. behind the pygidium. The median spinose process of the anal segment extends 0.75 mm. behind the pygidium, and is 1.6 mm. in greatest width.

Specimen No. 204 (pl. 3, fig. 1; pl. 4, fig. 6; text fig. 42).

Illustrated: Amer. Jour. Sci., vol. 13, 1902, pl. 2, figs. 4, 5 (reproduced from photographs).

This specimen, which is developed from the dorsal surface, shows especially well nine appendages of the left side. The first represent the last segment of the cephalon; the remainder belong to the thorax. As is usual, the exopodites of these appendages overlie and curve behind the endopodites. All the exopodites have lost their setæ and the segments of the endopodites are flattened by crushing. The endopodites, while retaining only one or two of the movable spines, have the cup-like bases of from two to four on each of the visible segments, namely, the meropodite, carpopodite, propodite, and, in one case, the dactylopodite. These appendages, although really marvellous in preservation, are of such small size and react so badly to light that their study is very difficult, and Professor Beecher, who had

observed hundreds of specimens through all stages of the laborious process of cleaning the matrix from them, undoubtedly was much better equipped to interpret them than any other person.

The drawing is made on the assumption that the appendages are displaced and all moved uniformly outward so that the distal ends of the coxopodites emerge from under the pleural lobe, whereas these ends would normally be under the dorsal furrow, and the distal end of the ischiopodite should reach the margin of the pleural lobe. While it seems very remarkable that it should happen, that all the appendages should be so moved that they would lie symmetrically a few millimeters from their normal position, nevertheless it is found on measuring that they bear the same proportion to the length and width that the

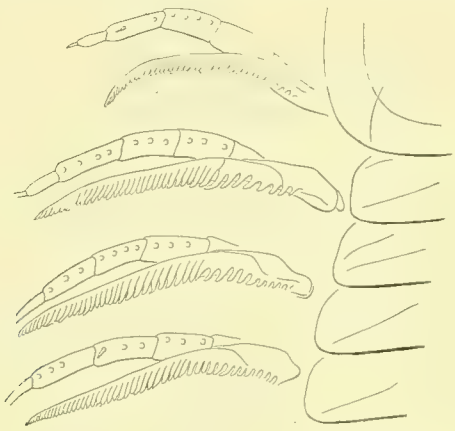


Fig. 42.—*Triarthrus becki* Green. Appendages of specimen 204. Inked in by Miss Wood from the original tracing. × 10.

appendages of other specimens do, thus indicating that Professor Beecher's interpretation of them was correct. I am unable, however, to see the coxopodites which he has drawn as articulating with the two branches of the limb.

This individual shows, better than any other, the connection of the exopodite with the endopodite. Even though the coxopodites are gone, the two branches of each appendage remain together, showing that the basipodite as well as the coxopodite is involved in the articulation with the exopodite. Just what the connection is can not be observed, but there seems to be a firm union between the upper surface of the basipodite and the lower side of the proximal end of the exopodite, as indicated diagrammatically in text figure 33.

Measurements: The specimen is 20 mm. long and 9 mm. wide at the back of the cephalon. From the tubercle on the middle of the first segment of the thorax to the tip of the corresponding appendage the distance is 8 mm. The entire length of the exopodite of the first thoracic segment is 4.6 mm. The exopodite of the appendage belonging to the seventh segment is only 3.5 mm. long. The pleural lobe is 2.5 mm. wide at the front of the thorax.

Specimen No. 205 (pl. 2, fig. 4).

Illustrated: Amer. Jour. Sci., vol. 13, 1902, pl. 5, figs. 2, 3 (photographs).

This is a small imperfect specimen, developed from the ventral side. It retains the best preserved metastoma in the collection, but was used by Professor Beecher especially to illus-

trate the convergent ridges on the inside of the ventral membrane in the axial region of the thorax. These ridges are very low, and on each segment of the thorax there is a central one, outside of which is a pair which are convergent forward, making angles of 35° to 45° with the axis.

The metastoma is shaped much like the hypostoma of an *Illænus*. It is convex, nearly semicircular, with the straight side forward, and there is a continuous raised border around the curved sides and back. This border is separated from the central convex body by a deep linear depression.

The hypostoma is also rather well preserved and has a narrow, slightly elevated border at the sides and back.

Measurements: The incomplete specimen, from which only a very small portion of the length is missing, is 9 mm. long. The metastoma is 0.45 mm. long and 0.58 mm. wide.

Specimen No. 214 (pl. 1, fig. 2; pl. 3, fig. 6).

This is a large specimen, developed from the ventral side. It shows the antennules and some other appendages of the head, but derives its special interest from the excellent preservation of a few of the exopodites, which are turned back parallel to the axis of the body and lie within the axial lobe.

The shaft of the exopodite is made up of numerous short segments which at their anterior outer angles are produced into spines, and which also bear movable spines along the anterior border. As shown in several other specimens, the exopodite ends in a more or less long spoon-shaped segment bearing on its lower surface a broad groove. No setæ appear to be attached to this, but both anterior and posterior margins bear numerous small, apparently movable spines. From the groove along the ventral side of the remainder of the exopodite arise numerous long slender filaments which become progressively shorter toward the tip. This specimen shows that they are not cylindrical, but are flattened along opposite faces, at least at their distal ends. While no connection can be seen between adjacent setæ, they seem to stay together like the barbs on a feather.

Measurements: Length, 33 mm., width at back of cephalon, 16 mm.; from front of cephalon to back of hypostoma, 6 mm.

Specimen No. 219 (pl. 2, fig. 6; pl. 4, fig. 4).

Illustrated: Amer. Jour. Sci., vol. 13, 1902, pl. 4, fig. 1, pl. 5, fig. 4 (photograph and drawing).

The endopodites of most of the appendages of the thorax are well shown, and occasional portions of exopodites. The coxopodites are long, flattened, and do not taper much. The anterior and posterior edges of the basipodites of the endopodites of the first two segments are approximately parallel, but on the succeeding endopodites the basipodites and ischiopodites are triangular in form, with the apex backward. In successive endopodites toward the posterior end, the angle made by the backward-directed sides of the basipodites becomes increasingly acute, so that in some of the posterior appendages this segment is wider than long. The ischiopodite shows a similar increase of width and angularity on successive segments, and the meropodites and carpopodites also become wider on the posterior segments, and even triangular in outline toward the back of the thorax and on the pygidium.

Along the median portion of the axial lobe the specimen has been cleaned until the inner side of the ventral membrane was reached. Here the test shows on the inner surface at each segment of the thorax a series of low ridges which are roughly parallel to the axial line, but

which really converge in an anterior direction. Between the ridges are shallow canoe-shaped depressions, which have the appearance of areas for the insertion of muscles.

Measurements: Length, 31 mm.; width at back of head, 15 mm.; distance, in a straight line, from point of insertion of the right antennule to its tip, 14.25 mm.; it projects 12 mm. beyond the cephalon.

Specimen No. 218 (pl. 6, fig. 3; text fig. 43).

This specimen is a large one, developed from the lower side, but retains only the endopodites of a few appendages. The cephalon and anterior portion of the thorax are missing.

Professor Beecher had a drawing made to show the appendages on the right-hand side of the last two segments of the thorax, seen of course from the ventral side. This drawing shows well the broadening of the basipodite, ischiopodite, and meropodite, while the coxopodite is thick and heavy, and the inner end of the gnathobase somewhat rugose. Almost

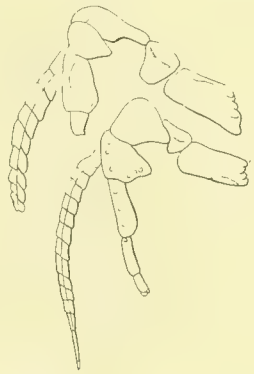


Fig. 43.—*Triarthrus becki* Green. Drawing to represent the writer's interpretation of the appendages of specimen 218. Drawn by Miss Wood. × 10.

every segment of the endopodites has one or more pits for insertion of spines, these being along the anterior or posterior margins. The exopodites lack the setæ, but show no unusual features.

Specimen No. 222 (pl. 4, fig. 5).

Illustrated: Amer. Jour. Sci., vol. 47, 1894, pl. 7, fig. 3 (drawing).

A small specimen, developed from the lower side, and used by Professor Beecher to illustrate the form of the segments of the endopodites of the pygidium. In addition to this, it shows very well the form of the endopodites of the thorax. All of the appendages on the specimen are shifted to the left of their normal position. This specimen differs from most of the others in that the segments of the endopodites do not lie with their greatest width in the horizontal plane, but were embedded vertically, with the posterior edge downward. From this circumstance they retain their natural shape, and it is seen that they are naturally flattened, with about the same thickness in proportion to length and width as in some of the modern isopods (*Serolis,* for instance). In even the most anterior of these endopodites (that of the second segment) the ischiopodite, meropodite, and carpopodite are

triangular in shape, with the point backward, but in all the endopodites at the anterior end of the thorax, the triangle has a very obtuse angle at the apex, and the base is much longer than the perpendicular. On the other hand, those of the pygidium, which were figured by Beecher, have a number of short wide segments, all wider than long, and, excepting the dactylopodites, triangular in form.

Measurements: Length, 8.75 mm.; width at back of cephalon, about 4 mm.

Specimen No. 230 (pl. 5, fig. 3; text fig. 44).

Illustrated: Amer. Jour. Sci., vol. 47, 1894, pl. 7, fig. 2 (drawing); Ibid., vol. 13, 1902, pl. 2, fig. 2.

An entire specimen of medium size, developed from the ventral side. It seems to have been the first one to yield to Professor Beecher any satisfactory knowledge of the appendages of the pygidium. There are five endopodites, all on one side, which appear to belong here. The segments in this region are characterized by their short, wide, triangular form. At the apex of each is a small tuft of spines or short hairs, and the ventral surfaces of some of the endopodites show pits for the insertion of spines.

Fig. 44.—*Triarthrus becki* Green. Appendages of the posterior part of the thorax and pygidium of specimen 230. Inked by Miss Wood from a tracing made under the direction of Professor Beecher.

Measurements: Length, 21 mm.; width at back of cephalon, 10 mm.

Cryptolithus tessellatus Green.

Specimen No. 233 (pl. 7, fig. 1; text fig. 45).

This is the best preserved entire specimen. It is developed from the lower side, and shows the hypostoma, antennules, and a few fragmentary appendages of the cephalon, the outer portions of the exopodites of thorax and pygidium on both sides, and the endopodites on the left side.

The hypostoma is imperfectly preserved and is turned completely around, so that the anterior margin is directed backward, and the posterior one is so much in the shadow that it does not show well in any of the photographs. The form is, however, essentially like

that of *Trinucleoides reussi* (Barrande), the only other trinucleid of which the hypostoma is known, except that the border does not extend so far forward along the sides, and it is much smaller.

The antennules are not inserted close to the hypostoma, as in *Triarthrus,* but at some distance from it, and, as nearly as can be determined, directly beneath the antennal pits which are seen near the front of the glabella in many species of trinucleids.

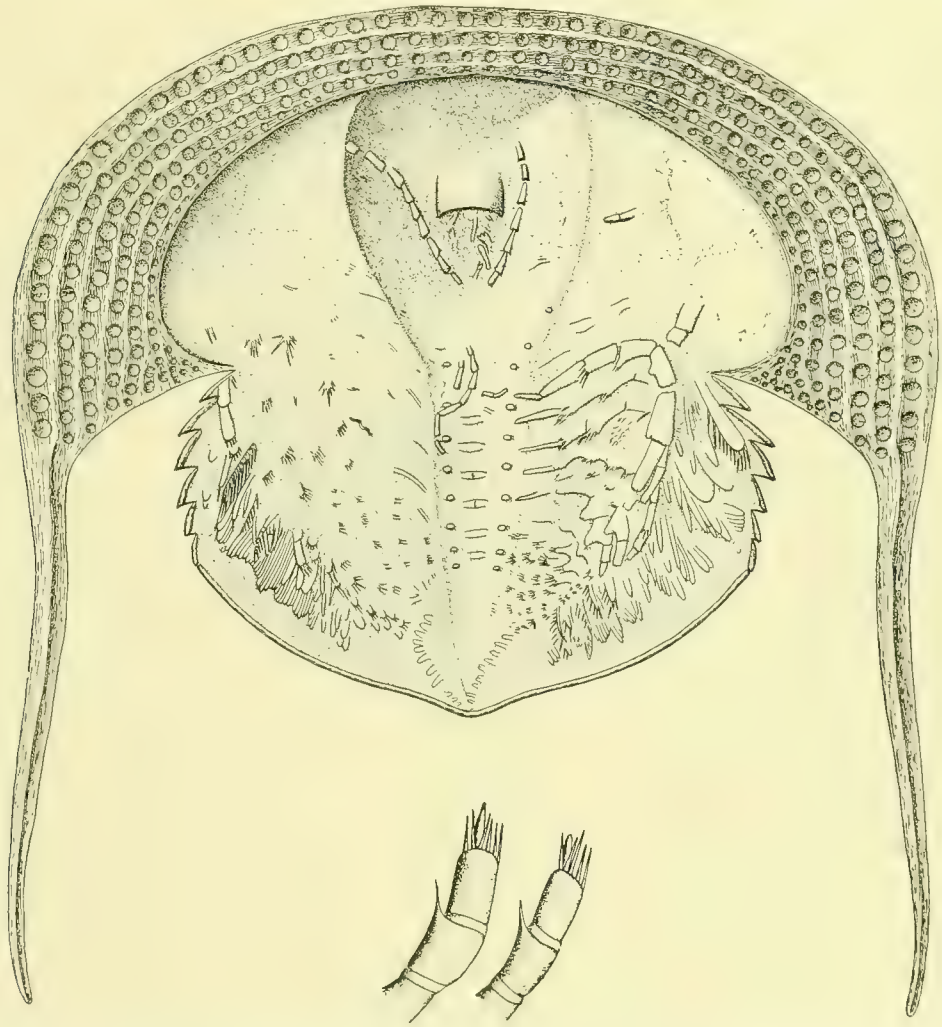


Fig. 45.—*Cryptolithus tessellatus* Green. Drawing of specimen 233, made by Professor Beecher. ×9. Below are parts of two of the endopodites of specimen 236, showing the interarticular membranes. ×41.

The antennules are long, and are composed of far fewer and longer segments than those of *Triarthrus.* In this specimen they converge backward, cross each other and at the distal end are more or less intertwined.

As is shown in the drawing and photograph, very little can be learned from this individual about the other appendages of the cephalon. A few fragments of exopodites on either side suggest that these members pointed forward and were much like those in *Triarthrus,* but nothing conclusive is shown.

The exopodites and endopodites of the left side of the thorax are best preserved. The exopodites are above the endopodites, and only that portion exposed from the ventral side which projects beyond the line at which the endopodites bend backward. The endopodite on the left side of the first thoracic segment is the best preserved. It shows seven segments, the outer ones best. The coxopodite is short and narrow, the basipodite somewhat heavier and longer, while the carpopodite and propodite are the widest and strongest segments. The propodite is triangular and flattened, like the segments on the middle and posterior part of the thorax of *Triarthrus.* At the inner end of the ischiopodite and meropodite are tufts of spines pointing inward and backward. These are not shown on any of the photographs, but may be seen with the light striking the specimen at the proper angle.

It is not possible to count the exact number of limbs, but one gets the impression that on the left side of this specimen there are twenty-one sets of appendages, six of which of course belong to the thorax. On the thorax and anterior part of the pygidium, successive endopodites show the propodites and dactylopodites becoming progressively more slender and shorter, while the ischiopodites, meropodites and carpopodites become shorter and more triangular, and with increasingly large numbers of short spines on their posterior borders. Back of the fourth endopodite on the pygidium it is not possible to make out the detail, but the appearance is of an endopodite consisting of short broad segments fringed at the back with short spines, the ones at the very posterior end appearing to be exceedingly short and rudimentary.

The exopodites are not so well shown as in some others but the setæ are flattened and blade-shaped, and often bear numerous small spines.

Measurements: Length (lacking most of the fringe), 10.5 mm. Width of thorax, 10.5 mm. Length of hypostome, 1.41 mm., width at front, 1.46 mm. The distance from back of fringe to end of antennules is 5.4 mm. If straightened out, the left antennule would be about 6.1 mm. long. In the first 3.1 mm., there are only ten segments, so that the average length of a segment is 0.31 mm. The distance from the inner end of the endobase of the first segment of the thorax to the outer end of the meropodite is 2.43 mm., and from that point to the end of the dactylopodite 2.47 mm. making the total length 4.90 mm. These measurements are taken from the photograph. Measurements taken from Professor Beecher's drawing, which was made with the camera lucida, give a total length of 4.57 mm., the distance to the outer end of the meropodite being 2.3 mm. and thence to the tip of the dactylopodite 2.27 mm. Detailed measurements of the segments, on the photograph, are as follows: coxopodite, 0.321 mm.; basipodite, 0.78 mm.; ischiopodite, 0.68 mm.; meropodite, 0.642 mm.; carpopodite, 0.642 mm.; propodite, 1.01 mm., dactylopodite, 0.825 mm.

Specimen No. 235 (pl. 7, fig. 2; pl. 8, fig. 3; pl. 9, figs. 1, 2).

Illustrated: Amer. Jour. Sci., vol. 49, 1895, pl. 3, figs. 5, 6.

Specimens 235 and 236 were originally parts of an entire *Cryptolithus,* but, as Professor Beecher has explained, the specimen was cut in two longitudinally on the median line, and the halves transversely just back of the cephalon, so that each now represents one half of a thorax and pygidium. Both halves have been cleaned from both upper and lower side, a perfectly marvelous piece of work, for the thickness is no greater than that of a thin sheet of paper, and the soft shale of the matrix has a very slight cohesive power.

Both sides of specimen 235 were figured, but the dorsal side was apparently then some-

what less fully developed than at present. On plate 9 are two figures in which specimens 235 and 236 are brought together again, and both dorsal and ventral sides illustrated.

On the dorsal side, specimen 235 shows portions of three exopodites which lie in a direction roughly parallel to the outer portions of the endopodites on the lower side, that is, their direction if projected would reach the axis in an acute angle back of the end of the pygidium. The setæ stand at right angles to the shaft, and on a portion of it 0.5 mm. long there are seven of them. This is a fragment of an exopodite near the front of the thorax, and the setæ, which are flattened, are about 1.63 mm. long.

On the ventral side this same specimen shows incomplete endopodites and exopodites of about seventeen segments, six of which would belong to the thorax and the remainder to the pygidium. The greater part of the appendages belonging to the pygidium are exceedingly small (about 0.15 mm. long) and so incompletely exposed that the structure can not be definitely made out.

The endopodites of the thoracic segments all lack the greater part of their proximal segments and are all of practically the same form. They turn abruptly backward at the outer end of the meropodite, and the carpopodite of each is greatly widened, projects inward and is armed with tufts of spines. The propodite and dactylopodite are wide, flattened, and taper but slightly outward, the dactylopodite bearing on its distal end a tuft of spines. On several of the endopodites, the meropodites are visible and they bear on their inner ends fringes of spines pointing inward. Behind these well preserved appendages the proximal segments of several endopodites are visible, and a regular succession of flattened, oval bodies armed with numerous forward-pointing spines. These latter bodies Professor Beecher took to be leaf-like exopodites, which they certainly resemble, and as they lie beyond the line of endopodites they probably do belong to the outer halves of the appendages.

The exopodites under the thorax are long, the shaft shows numerous short segments, and is in each case bent backward, though not through a right angle. They extend considerably beyond the endopodites. The setæ do not diverge from the shaft at a right angle as on the dorsal side of this same specimen, but at an acute angle, indicating that they were not rigid. The individual hairs are broad and blade-shaped, frequently with a linear depression along the median line, perhaps due to collapse of the internal tube.

Measurements: The greatest length of the fragment in its present state is 5 mm. The dactylopodite of the second endopodite (without terminal spines) is 0.18 mm. long, the propodite 0.23 mm. long and 0.15 mm. wide; the carpopodite is 0.24 mm. long and 0.38 mm. wide. All measurements were made on the photographs.

Specimen No. 236 (pl. 7, figs. 3-5; pl. 9, figs. 1, 2); (text fig. 45).

The right half of the same thorax and pygidium as specimen No. 235.

The specimen is cleaned from both upper and lower sides and, the dorsal test being removed, reveals the long blade-like setæ of the exopodites, each blade being concave along its median line. They are long on the exopodites of the thoracic segments, but become shorter, without, however, any visible change of form on the pygidium. Although the posterior end is not well preserved, one gets no suggestion from a study of this side of the specimens that the exopodites of the posterior end are in any striking way different from those of segments further forward. The tips of some of the setæ show minute spines, one to each blade.

On the ventral side are a number of endopodites, but they are more fragmentary than those of the other half of the specimen. Some of the exopodites are well shown, the blades being in all cases broken from the shaft. Two of the endopodites of this specimen are of especial interest, as they have interarticular membranes between the last three segments. Professor Beecher made a drawing of one of these which he placed under his pen drawing (text fig. 45).

Measurements: The specimen is 5 mm. long from the front of the second thoracic segment to the end of the pygidium. The setæ on the exopodites of the anterior thoracic segments are 1.7 mm. long, as exposed from the dorsal side. Some of those on the posterior part of the pygidium, only incompletely exposed, are 0.31 mm. long.

The dactylopodite of the first endopodite showing the articular membranes is 0.23 mm.

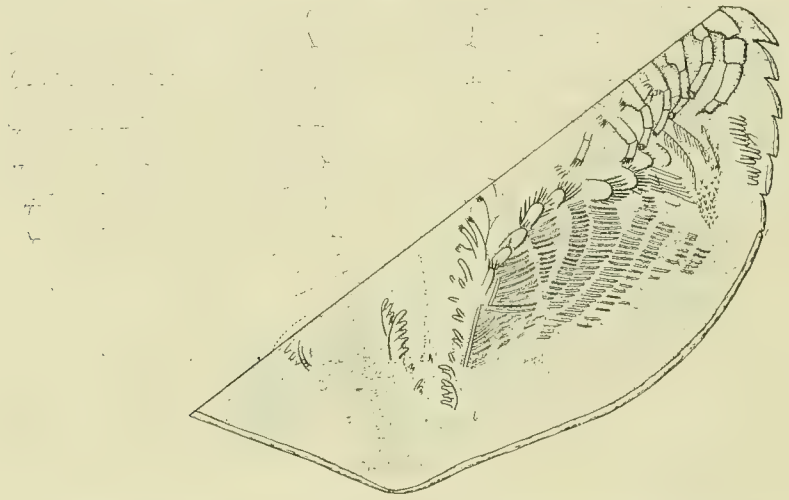


Fig. 46.—*Crypolithus tessellatus* Green. A part of a thorax and pygidium, showing appendages. Drawn by Professor Beecher. Specimen 238. × 10.

long and 0.13 mm. wide. The propodite is of the same length and 0.17 mm. wide. The interarticular membrane between them is 0.066 mm. thick. The spines on the dactylopodite of this appendage are 0.15 mm. long. All measurements were made on photographs.

Specimen No. 238 (pl. 8, fig. 4; text fig. 46).

A triangular specimen consisting of the greater part of a pygidium and parts of all the thoracic segments. Under the thorax the specimen has been so cleaned that the outer portions of the endopodites are well shown, while under the pygidium the greater part of the endopodites seem to have been removed, disclosing the setæ of the exopodites. As in other specimens, the endopodites of the thorax turn backward at the distal end of the carpopodite, which is broad and curved, and bears a tuft of spines on the posterior margin. The dactylopodites seem to preserve their natural shape, and are very nearly cylindrical in form. Under the pygidium are several sets of overlapping fringes of setæ of exopodites, and along the edge of the dorsal furrow, a number of fragments of segments of what may be coxopodites while with them are a number of fragmentary shaft of exopodites.

Measurements: The pygidium is 3.3 mm. long, the thorax 3 mm.

BIBLIOGRAPHY.

AGASSIZ, L.

1873.—Discovery of the basal joint of legs of trilobites. Amer. Nat., vol. 7, pp. 741-742.

ANGELIN, N. P.

1854.—Palæontologia Scandinavica, pars 1, Crustacea formationis transitionis.

AUDOUIN, J. V.

1821.—Recherches sur les rapports naturels qui existent entre les trilobites et les animaux articulés. Ann. Gén. Sci. Phys. Nat. Bruxelles, vol. 8, p. 233, pl. 26.

1822.—Isis (Encycl. Zeitung), Oken., vol. 10, p. 87, pl. 1, No. 4, figs. 1-5.

BARRANDE, J.

1852.—Systême Silurien du centre de la Bohême, vol. 1, pp. 226-230, and 629, pl. 30, figs. 38, 39.

1872.—Ibid., vol. 1, Suppl., p. 180, pl. 4.

BARTH, HERMANN VON.

1875.—Die Stellung der Trilobiten in zoologischen Systeme. Das Ausland, 26. Jahrg., p. 25.

BEECHER, C. E.

1893.—On the thoracic legs of *Triarthrus*. Amer. Jour. Sci. (3), vol. 46, pp. 367-370, 467-470, text figs. 1-3.

1894 A.—On the mode of occurrence, and the structure and development of *Triarthrus becki*. Amer. Geol., vol. 13, pp. 38-43, pl. 3.

1894 B.—The appendages of the pygidium of *Triarthrus*. Amer. Jour. Sci. (3), vol. 47, pp. 298-300, pl. 7, text fig. 1.

1895 A.—Further observations on the ventral structure of *Triarthrus*. Amer. Geol., vol. 15, pp. 91-100, pls. 4-5.

1895 B.—Structure and appendages of *Trinucleus*. Amer. Jour. Sci. (3), vol. 49, pp. 307-311, pl. 3.

1895 C.—The larval stages of trilobites. Amer. Geol., vol. 16, pp. 166-197, pls. 8-10.

1896 A.—The morphology of *Triarthrus*. Amer. Jour. Sci. (4), vol. 1, pp. 251-256, pl. 8; Geol. Mag., dec. 4, vol. 3, pp. 193-197, pl. 9.

1896 B.—On a supposed discovery of the antennæ of trilobites by Linnæus in 1759. Amer. Geol., vol. 17, pp. 303-306, text figs. 1-3.

1897 A.—Outline of a natural classification of trilobites. Amer. Jour. Sci. (4), vol. 3, pp. 89-106, 181-207, pl. 3.

1897 B.—Remarks on Kingsley's "Systematic position of the trilobites." Amer. Geol., vol. 20, pp. 38-40.

1900.—Trilobita. Eastman-Zittel Text-book of Paleontology, vol. 1, pp. 607-638, text figs. 1261-1331; ed. 2, 1913, p. 700. London.

1901.—Structure and development of trilobites. In "Studies in Evolution," pp. 109-225. New York and London.

1902.—The ventral integument of trilobites. Amer. Jour. Sci. (4), vol. 13, pp. 165-174, pls. 2-5, text fig. 1; Geol. Mag., dec. 4, vol. 9, pp. 152-162, pls. 9-11, text figs. 1-8.

BERNARD, H. M.
1892.—The Apodidæ.
1893.—Trilobites with antennæ at last! Nature, vol. 48, p. 582.
1894.—The systematic position of the trilobites. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 50, pp. 411-434, text figs. 1-17.
1895 A.—The zoological position of the trilobites. Science Prog., vol. 4, pp. 33-49.
1895 B.—Supplementary notes on the systematic position of the trilobites. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 51, pp. 352-360, figs. A-C.

BEYRICH, E.
1846.—Untersuchungen ueber Trilobiten. 2. Stück, p. 30, pl. 4, fig. 1c.

BILLINGS, E.
1870.—Notes on some specimens of Lower Silurian trilobites. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 26, pp. 479-486, pls. 31-32. Abstract in Geol. Mag., vol. 7, p. 291, and Nature, vol. 2, p. 94.

BRONGNIART, A.
1822.—Histoire naturelle des crustacés fossiles. Paris.

BRÜNNICH, F. E.
1781.—Beskrivelse over trilobiten, en dyreslaegt og dens arter, med en ney arts aftegning. Nye Samlig of det Kong. Danske Vidensk. Selskabs. Skriften, Copenhagen.

BURLING, L. D.
1916.—Pædeumias and the Mesonacidæ, with description of a new species, having at least 44 segments, from the Lower Cambrian of British Columbia. Ottawa Nat., vol. 30, pp. 53-58, pl. 1.
1917.—Was the lower Cambrian trilobite supreme? Ibid., vol. 31, pp. 77-79, text figs. 1-2.

BURMEISTER, H.
1843.—Die Organisation der Trilobiten. Berlin.
1846.—The organization of trilobites, deduced from their living affinities. Eng. translation, Ray Society, London.

CALMAN, W. T.
1909.—Crustacea, in "A treatise on zoology," edited by Sir Ray Lankester. London.
1919.—Dr. C. D. Walcott's researches on the appendages of trilobites. Geol. Mag., dec. 6, vol. 6, pp. 359-363, pl. 8, text fig. 1.

CARPENTER, G. H.
1903.—On the relationships between the classes of Arthropoda. Proc. Roy. Irish Acad., vol. 24, pp. 320-360, pl. 6.

CASTELNAU, F. DE.
1843.—Système Silurien de l'Amérique Septentrionale, p. 15, pl. 2, figs. 1, 4.

CLARKE, J. M.
1888.—The structure and development of the visual area in the trilobite, *Phacops rana* Green. Jour. Morph., vol. 2, pp. 253-270, pl. 1.

CRAMPTON, G. C.
1916.—The phylogenetic origin and the nature of the wings of insects, according to the paranotal theory. Jour. New York Entomol. Soc., vol. 24, pp. 1-39, pls. 1, 2.

1919.—The evolution of the arthropods and their relatives, with especial reference to insects. Amer. Nat., vol. 53, pp. 143-179.

DALMAN, J. W.

1826.—Om Palæaderna eller de så kallade Trilobiterna. Stockholm, Acad. Handl., pp. 113-152, 226-294.

1828.—Ueber die Palæaden, oder die sogennanten Trilobiten. Nuremberg.

DANA, J. D.

1871.—On the supposed legs of the trilobite, *Asaphus platycephalus*. Amer. Jour. Sci. (3), vol. 1, pp. 320-321, 386; Ibid. (3), vol. 3, 1872, pp. 221-222. Also printed in Ann. Mag. Nat. Hist., vol. 7, 1871, pp. 366, 451.

DEKAY, J. E.

1824.—Observations on the structure of trilobites, and description of an apparently new genus. Ann. Lyc. Nat. Hist. New York, vol. 1, p. 174, 2 pls.; Isis (Encycl. Zeit.), Oken, 1825 and 1832.

DOLLO, L.

1910.—La paléontologie éthologique. Bull. Soc. Belge de Géol., Pal., et d'Hydrol., vol. 23, pp. 377-421, figs. 1-13, pls. 7-11.

EICHWALD, E. VON.

1825.—Geognostico-zoologicæ per Ingriam Marisque Baltici Provincias nec non de trilobitis observationes. Section 45.

1858.—Beiträge zur geographischen Verbreitung der fossilen Thiere Russlands. Bull. Soc. Imp. des Natural. de Moscou, vol. 30, 1855-1857, p. 204.

1860.—Lethæa Rossica, pl. 21.

1863.—Beiträge zur nähern Kenntniss der in meiner Lethæa Rossica beschriebenen Illænen. Bull. Soc. Imp. des Natural. de Moscou, vol. 36, p. 408.

EMMRICH, H. F.

1839.—De trilobitis dissertatio petrefactologica, etc. Berlin.

EXNER, S.

1891.—Die Physiologie der facettirten Augen von Krebsen und Insecten. Leipzig and Vienna. Pp. 33-35, pl. 2, figs. 18-19.

FINCH, G. E.

1904.—Notes on the position of the individuals in a group of *Nileus vigilans* found at Elgin, Iowa. Proc. Iowa Acad. Sci. for 1903, vol. 11, pp. 179-181, pl. 14.

GEGENBAUR, C.

1878.—Elements of comparative anatomy. Eng. ed. (Bell and Lankester). London.

GOLDFUSS, A.

1828.—Observation sur le place qu'occupent les trilobites dans le règne animal. Ann. Sci. Nat., Zoologie, vol. 15, p. 83, pl. 2, figs. 5, 7, 9, 10.

GREEN, J.

1839 A.—The inferior surface of the trilobite discovered. The Friend, Philadelphia, March 16.

1839 B.—The inferior surface of the trilobite discovered. Illustrated, with colored models. Philadelphia.

1839 C.—Remarks on the trilobites. Amer. Jour. Sci. (1), vol. 37, p. 25 *et seq.*

1840.—An additional fact, illustrating the inferior surface of *Calymene bufo*. Ibid., vol. 38, p. 410.

Handlirsch, A.

1906.—Ueber Phylogenie der Arthropoden. Verhandl. d. k. k. zool.-bot. Gesell., Vienna, Jahrg. 1906, pp. 88-103.

1907.—Functionswechsel einiger Organe bei Arthropoden. Ibid., Jahrg. 1907, pp. 153-158.

1908.—Die fossilen Insekten. Leipzig.

1914.—Eine interessante Crustaceenform aus der Trias der Vogesen. Verhandl. d. k. k. zool.-bot. Gesell., Vienna, Jahrg. 1914, pp. 1-7, pls. 1, 2.

Hawle, I., and Corda, A. J. C.

1847.—Prodrom einer Monographie der boehmischen Trilobiten, pp. 9, 24, 56, pl. 2, fig. 10; pl. 3, fig. 15; pl. 4, fig. 33b-g.

Jaekel, O.

1901.—Beiträge zur Beurtheilung der Trilobiten, Theil I. Zeits. d. deutsch. geol. Gesell., Bd. 53, pp. 133-171, pls. 4-6, text figs. 1-30.

Kingsley, J. S.

1897.—The systematic position of the trilobites. Amer. Geol., vol. 20, pp. 33-38.

Koenen, A. von.

1872.—Ueber die Organisation der Trilobiten. Verhandl. d. naturhist. Ver. d. preuss. Rheinl. u. Westphalen, vol. 29, C, pp. 93-95.

1880.—Ueber die Unterseite der Trilobiten. Neues Jahrb. f. Min.., Geol., u. Pal., Bd. 1, pp. 430-432, pl. 8.

Lang, A.

1891.—Text-book of comparative anatomy, Eng. ed. (Bernard). London.

Lankester, E. R.

1881.—Observations and reflections on the appendages and on the nervous system of *Apus cancriformis*. Quart. Jour. Micros. Soc., vol. 21, pp. 343-376.

Laurie, M.

1911.—A reconstructed trilobite. Nature, vol. 88, p. 26.

Lindstroem, G.

1901.—Researches on the visual organs of the trilobites. K. svenska Vet.-Akad. Handl., new ser., vol. 34, pp. 1-86, pls. 1-6.

Linné, K.

1759.—Petrificatet entomolithus paradoxus sådant, som det finnes uti Hans Excellence Riks. Rådets Högoälborne Herr Grefve C. G. Tessins Samling. K. svenska Vet.-Akad. Handl., vol. 20, pp. 21, 22, pl. 1, fig. 1.

McCoy, F.

1846.—A synopsis of the Silurian fossils of Ireland, p. 42.

Matthew, W. D.

1893.—On antennæ and other appendages of *Triarthrus becki*. Amer. Jour. Sci. (3), vol. 46, pp. 121-125, pl. 1; Trans. New York Acad. Sci., vol. 12, pp. 237-241, pl. 8.

Mickleborough, J.

1883.—Locomotory appendages of trilobites. Jour. Cincinnati Soc. Nat. Hist., vol. 6, pp.

200-204; Geol. Mag., dec. 3, vol. 1, 1884, pp. 80-84; Amer. Jour. Sci. (3), vol. 27, 1884, p. 409. Reviewed by Dames, Neues Jahrb. f. Min., Geol., u. Pal., Bd. 1, 1885, p. 477.

MILLER, S. A.

1880.—Silurian ichnolites, with definitions of new genera and species. Jour. Cincinnati Soc. Nat. Hist., vol. 2, pp. 217-218, fig.

MILNE-EDWARDS, H.

1881.—Compte rendu des nouvelles recherches de M. Walcott relatives à la structure des trilobites, suivi de quelques considérations sur l'interprétation des faits ainsi constatés. Ann. Sci. Nat., Zoologie, ser. 6, vol. 12, pp. 1-33, pls. 10-12. Paris.

MOBERG, J. C.

1902.—Bidrag till Kännedomen om trilobiternas byggnad. Geol. Fören Förhandl., Bd. 24, pp. 295-302, pl. 3, text fig. 1.

1907.—Om ett gätfultt fossil från sveriges olenidskiffer samt en kort ofversigt af viktigase data rorande trilobiternas ventrala skelettdelar. Ibid., Bd. 29, Heft 5, pp. 265-272, pl. 4, fig. 2; pl. 5, fig. 1.

ŒHLERT, D. P.

1896.—Résumé des derniers travaux sur l'organisation et le developpement des trilobites. Bull. Soc. Géol. France, ser. 3, vol. 24, pp. 97-116, text figs. 1-34.

PACKARD, A. H.

1872.—On the development of *Limulus polyphemus*. Mem. Boston Soc. Nat. Hist., vol. 2, pp. 155-202, pls. 3-5.

1880.—The structure of the eye of trilobites. Amer. Nat., vol. 14, pp. 503-508.

1882.—On the homologies of the crustacean limb. Ibid., vol. 16, pp. 785-799, figs. 11, 12.

PANDER, C.

1830.—Beiträge zur Geognosie des russischen Reiches. St. Petersburg.

PEACH, B. N.

1882.—On some fossil myriopods from the Lower Old Red Sandstone of Forfarshire. Proc. Roy. Physical Soc., Edinburgh, vol. 7, pp. 177-187, pl. 2.

1899.—On some new myriopods from the Palæozoic rocks of Scotland. Ibid., vol. 14, pp. 113-126, pl. 4.

QUENSTEDT, A.

1837.—Beitrag zur Kenntniss der Trilobiten, mit besonderer Rücksicht auf ihre bestimmte Gliederzahl. Archiv f. Naturg., Berlin, 3. Jahrg., 1 Bd., pp. 337-352.

RAYMOND, P. E.

1910.—On two new trilobites from the Chazy near Ottawa, Ontario. Ottawa Nat., vol. 24, pp. 129-134, pl. 2.

1917.—Beecher's classification of trilobites, after twenty years. Amer. Jour. Sci. (4), vol. 43, pp. 196-210, text figs. 1-3.

RAYMOND, P. E., and BARTON, D. C.

1913.—A revision of the American species of *Ceraurus*. Bull. Mus. Comp. Zool., vol. 54, pp. 525-543, pls. 1, 2, 3 text figs.

Reed, F. R. C.
1916.—The genus *Trinucleus*. Pt. 4. Geol. Mag., dec. 6, vol. 3, pp. 121, 122.

Richter, R.
1848.—Bitrag zur Palæontologie des Thüringer Waldes. Dresden and Leipzig.

Ringueberg, E. N. S.
1886.—A trilobite track illustrating one mode of progression of the trilobites. Proc. Amer. Assoc. Adv. Sci., vol. 35, p. 228 (abstract only).

Ruedemann, R.
1916.—The presence of a median eye in trilobites. Bull. New York State Mus., No. 189, pp. 127-143, pls. 34-36.

Schlotheim, E. F. von.
1823.—Nachträge zur Petrefactenkunde, II. Gotha.

Six, Achille.
1884.—Les appendices des trilobites d'après M. Ch. D. Walcott. Ann. Soc. Géol. du Nord, vol. 11, pp. 228-236.

Spencer, W. K.
1903.—The hypostomic eyes of trilobites. Geol. Mag., dec. 4, vol. 10, pp. 489-492.

Staff, Hans v., and Reck, Hans.
1911.—Ueber die Lebensweise der Trilobiten. Eine entwicklungsmechanische Studie. Gesell. naturforsch. Freunde, Sitzb., pp. 130-146, figs. 1-20.

Sternberg, K. M.
1830.—Ueber die Gliederung und die Füsse der Trilobiten. Isis (Encycl. Zeitung), Oken, p. 516, pl. 5, figs. 1-3.

Stokes, C.
1823.—On a trilobite from Lake Huron. Trans. Geol. Soc., London, ser. 2, vol. 1, p. 208, pl. 27.

Swinnerton, H. H.
1919.—The facial suture of the trilobite. Geol. Mag., dec. 6, vol. 6, pp. 103-110.

Törnquist, S. L.
1896 A.—On the appendages of trilobites. Ibid., dec. 4, vol. 3, p. 142.
1896 B.—Linnæus on the appendages of trilobites. Ibid., pp. 567-569.

Tothill, J. D.
1916.—The ancestry of insects, with particular reference to chilopods and trilobites. Amer. Jour. Sci. (4), vol. 42, pp. 373-383, text figs. 1-8.

Troedsson, G. T.
1918.—Om skanes Brachiopodskiffer. Lunds Universitets Arsskrift, n. f., Avd. 2, Bd. 15, Nr. 3, pp. 57-67, pl. 1, figs. 19-24.

Valiant, W. S.
1901.—Appendaged trilobites. The Mineral Collector, vol. 8, No. 7, pp. 105-112.

Volborth, A. von.
1858.—Ueber die Bewegungs-Organe der Trilobiten. Verhandl. russ. k. mineral. Gesell. zu St. Petersburg, 1857-1858, p. 168.
1863.—Ueber die mit glatten Rumpfgliedern versehenen russischen Trilobiten, nebst einem

Anhange ueber die Bewegungs-organe und ueber das Herz derselben. Mem. Acad. Imp. Sci. St. Petersburg, ser. 7, vol. 6, No. 2, pp. 44-47, pl. 1, fig. 12.

1866.—Ueber Herrn von Eichwald's Beitrag zu näheren Kenntniss der Illænen. Bull. Soc. Imp. des Natural. de Moscou, vol. 39, p. 40.

WAHLENBERG, G.

1821.—Petrificata telluris Suecana examinata a Georgio Wahlenberg. Nova Acta Reg. Soc. Scient. Upsala, vol. 8.

WALCOTT, C. D.

1875.—Description of the interior surface of the dorsal shell of *Ceraurus pleurexanthemus* Green. Ann. Lyc. Nat. Hist. New York, vol. 11, pp. 159-162, pl. 11.

1876.—Preliminary notice of the discovery of the natatory and branchial appendages of trilobites. 28th Rept. New York State Mus. Nat. Hist., adv. sheets, pp. 89-92; published as full report in 1879.

1877.—Notes on some sections of trilobites. 31st Rept. New York State Mus. Nat. Hist., adv. sheets, pp. 61-63, pl. 1; published as full report in 1879. Reviewed by Dames, Neues Jahrb. f. Min., Geol., u. Pal., Bd. 1, 1880, p. 428.

1879.—Notes upon the legs of trilobites. 31st Rept. New York State Mus. Nat. Hist., adv. sheets, p. 64.

1881.—The trilobite: New and old evidence relating to its organization. Bull. Mus. Comp. Zool., vol. 8, pp. 192-224, pls. 1-6.

1884.—The appendages of the trilobite. Science, vol. 3, pp. 276-279, figs. 1-3. Reviewed by Dames, Neues Jahrb. f. Min., Geol., u. Pal., Bd. 1, 1885, Referate, p. 102.

1894.—Note of some appendages of the trilobites. Proc. Biol. Soc. Washington, vol. 9, pp. 89-97, pl. 1; Geol. Mag., dec. 4, vol. 1, pp. 246-251, pl. 8.

1911.—Middle Cambrian Merostomata. Smithson. Misc. Coll., vol. 57, No. 2, pp. 17-40, pls. 2-7.

1912 A.—Middle Cambrian Branchiopoda, Malacostraca, Trilobita, and Merostomata. Ibid., No. 6, pp. 145-228, pls. 24-34, text figs. 8-10.

1912 B.—New York Potsdam-Hoyt fauna. Ibid., No. 9, pp. 251-304, pls. 37-49.

1913.—Eastman-Zittel Text-book of Paleontology, ed. 2, vol. 1, figs. 1343, 1376, 1377.

1916.—Ann Rept., Secretary Smithsonian Inst., for 1915, pl. 9.

1918.—Appendages of trilobites. Smithsonian Misc. Coll., vol. 67, No. 4, pp. 115-226, pls. 14-42.

WATASE, S.

1890.—On the morphology of the compound eyes of arthropods. Johns Hopkins Univ., Studies from Biol. Lab., vol. 4, no. 6, p. 290 (footnote).

WOODWARD, H.

1870.—Note on the palpus and other appendages of *Asaphus*, from the Trenton limestone, in the British Museum. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 26, pp. 486-488, fig. 1. Abstract in Geol. Mag., dec. 1, vol. 7, p. 292, also in Nature, vol. 2, p. 94.

1871.—On the structure of trilobites. Geol. Mag., dec. 1, vol. 8, pp. 289-294, pl. 8.

1884.—Notes on the appendages of trilobites. Geol. Mag., dec. 3, vol. 1, pp. 162-165, 2 text figs.

1895.—Some points in the life history of the Crustacea in early Palæozoic times. Quart. Jour. Geol. Soc., London, vol. 51, pp. lxx-lxxxviii, 1 pl.

PLATE 1.

Photographs of *Triarthrus becki,* made by C. E. Beecher.

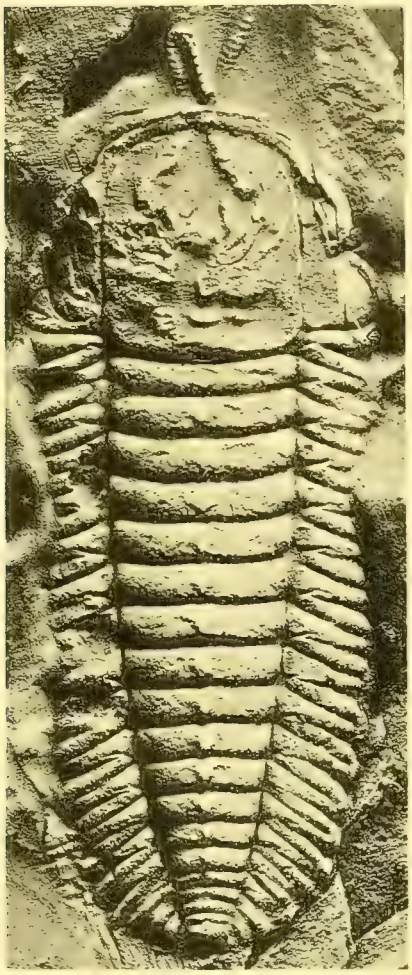
Fig. 1.—Specimen 213. The dorsal test has been removed from the glabella, revealing the outline of the posterior end of the hypostoma, the proximal ends of the antennules, the gnathites, and incomplete endopodites of some appendages. ×5.43.

Fig. 2.—Specimen 214. The head of a complete large specimen. Part of the thorax is shown on pl. 3, fig. 6. Note especially the form of the segments of the endopodites and of the anterior coxopodite on the right side. ×7.33.

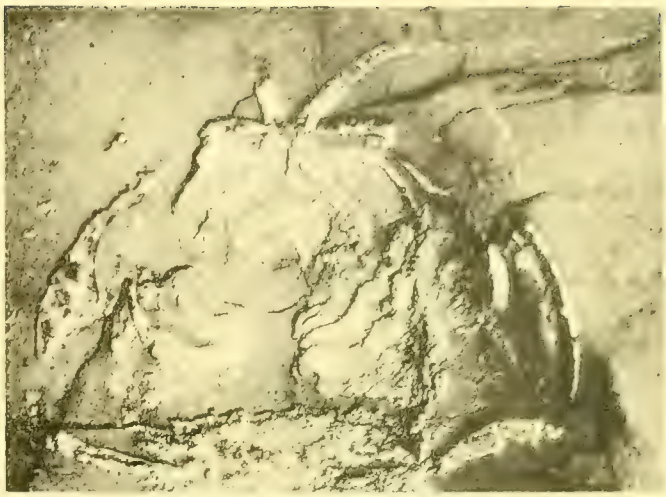
Fig. 3.—Specimen 217. This specimen shows better than any other the form of the gnathites of the cephalon. Note also the setæ of the exopodites under the cheek at the right. The appearance of a hook on the posterior gnathite on the right may be accidental, but it does not show broken edges. ×6.85.

Fig. 4.—Specimen 215. The ventral side of the cephalon of a small entire specimen. Shows well the form of some of the gnathites and a few of the endopodites. Note the unusual position of the antennules. ×7.63.

Fig. 5.—Specimen 226. This specimen did not photograph well, but is important as showing the exopodites and endopodites emerging from under the cephalon. ×about 6.

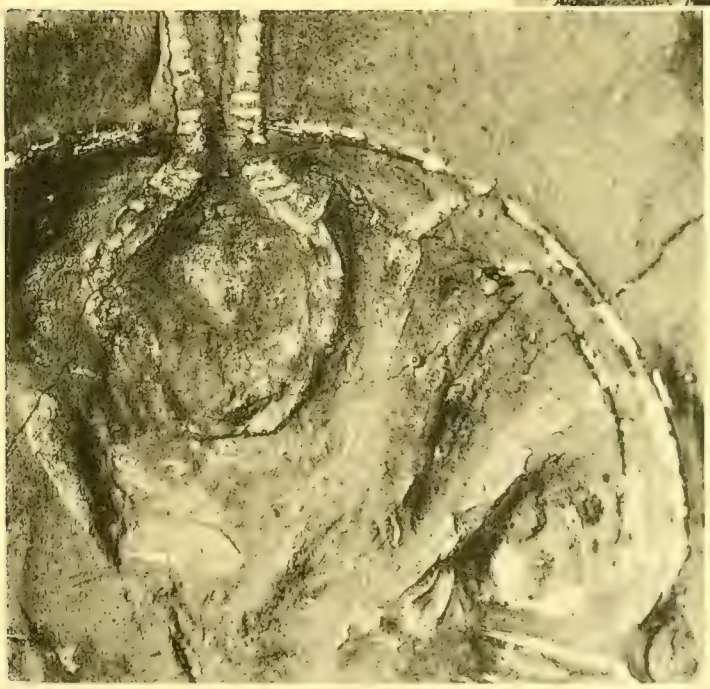


1

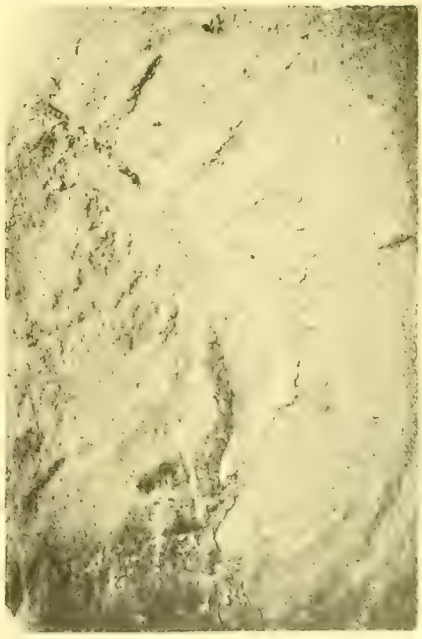


3

4



2



5

PLATE 2.

Photographs of *Triarthrus becki,* made by C. E. Beecher.

Fig. 1.—Specimen 201. The entire specimen, details of which are shown in pl. 3, fig. 4 and pl. 4, figs. 1, 2. The dorsal test has been removed from the anterior segments on the right side. ×4.12.

Fig. 2.—Specimen 206. A small individual with the endopodites, and the exopodites minus their setæ, well preserved on the left side. Note the position of the antennules. The course of the facial suture is unusually well shown. ×10.

Fig. 3.—Specimen 210. The specimen which served as the main basis for Professor Beecher's first figure of the appendages of the thorax, specimen 206 (fig. 2, this plate) having supplemented it. Note the "normal" position of the antennules and the extension of the appendages from beneath the pleural lobe. Specimens with the antennules in this position may possibly be males. ×4.

Fig. 4.—Specimen 205. A small specimen with some of the appendages preserved, especially toward the posterior end, but particularly valuable for the unusually well preserved metastoma. ×11.

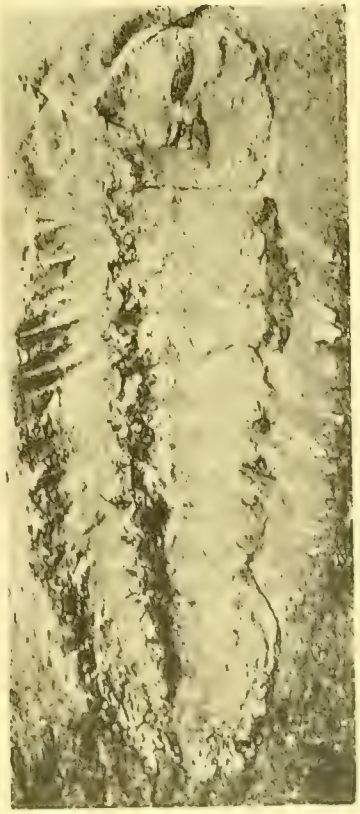
Fig. 5.—Specimen 211. A small cephalon, cleaned from the ventral side, and showing well the gnathites which approach each other unusually closely on the median line. ×10.5.

Fig. 6.—Specimen 219. An entire specimen of medium size, developed from the ventral side. It shows particularly well the "normal" curvature of the antennules, the change in form of the segments of the endopodites from cephalon to pygidium, and, along the axial lobe, the apodemes of the ventral integument. See also pl. 4, fig. 4. ×3.6.

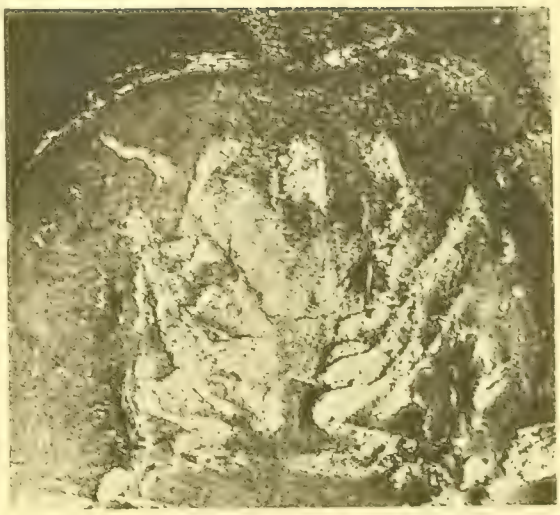
1

2

3



4



5

6

PLATE 3.

Photographs of *Triarthrus becki,* made by C. E. Beecher.

Fig. 1.—Specimen 204. See also text fig. 42 and pl. 4, fig. 6. The exopodites and endopodites of the first few segments of this specimen are better preserved than those of any other revealing them from the dorsal side. ×9.5.

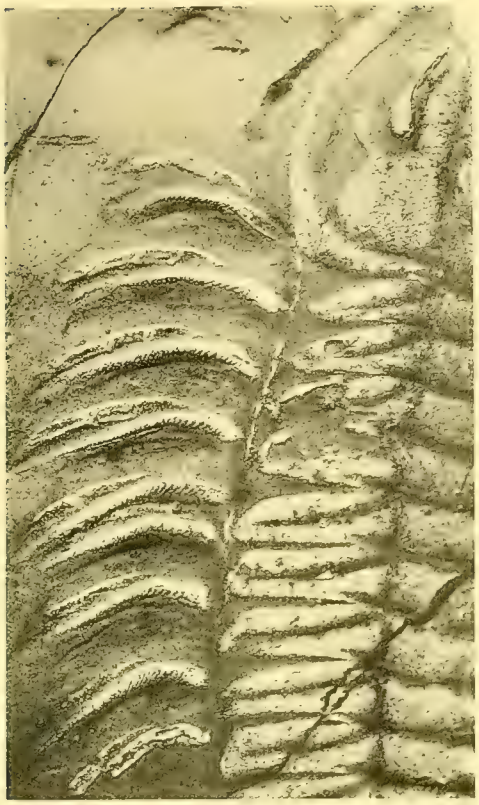
Fig. 2.—Specimen 220. A large individual exposed from the lower side. It shows well the endopodites and part of the exopodites, and, rather better than any other specimen, the endobases of the coxopodites. ×2.4.

Fig. 3.—Specimen 216. A small entire specimen showing considerable of the detail of the appendages of the cephalon, and some of those of the remainder of the body. ×7.4.

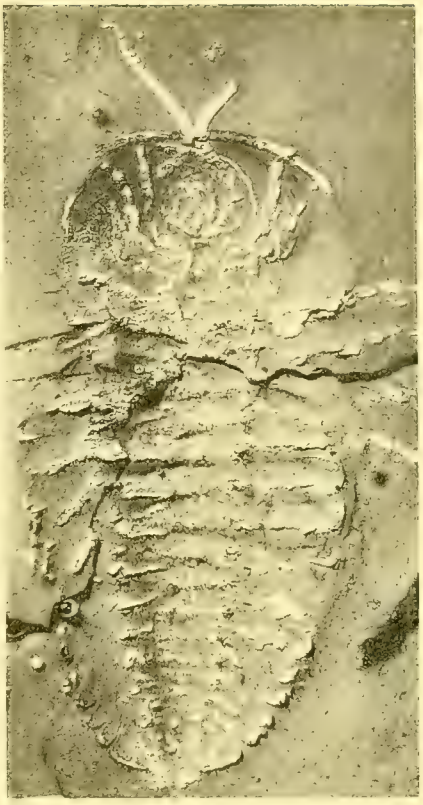
Fig. 4.—Specimen 201. This figure shows the details of the appendages of the left side and of the pygidium. Note the plate on the median line back of the pygidium, the sockets for spines, and the terminal spines on the anterior endopodites. See also pl. 2, fig. 1 and pl. 4, figs. 1, 2. ×7.1.

Fig. 5.—Specimen 207. One half of the posterior part of the thorax and pygidium, showing exopodites and endopodites as seen from the dorsal side. ×7.6.

Fig. 6.—Specimen 214. The exopodites have been turned back nearly parallel to the axis of the shell. Notice particularly the long flattened setæ and the spinose spatula-shaped terminal portion of each shaft. See also pl. 1, fig. 2. ×7.



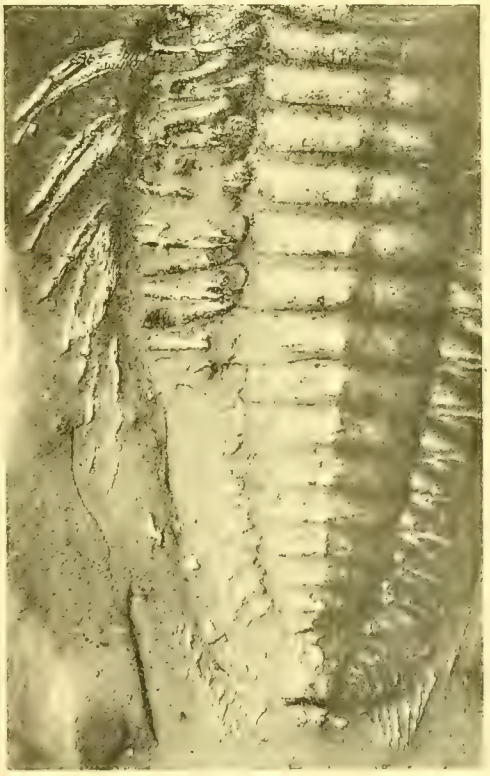
1



3

5

2



4

6

PLATE 4.

Photographs of *Triarthrus becki,* made by C. E. Beecher.

Fig. 1.—Specimen 201. Another photograph, similar to fig. 4, pl. 3, but showing more clearly some details of spines on the endopodites. × 12.66.

Fig. 2.—Specimen 201. Three appendages on the right side of the thorax. See also pl. 2, fig. 1 and pl. 3, fig. 4. × 12.66.

Fig. 3.—Specimen 223. A small crushed specimen which nevertheless shows well the appendages of the right side of the thorax, developed from the ventral side. Note coxopodites, exopodites, and endopodites, and that all appendages are moved equally laterally from their original position. × 11.4.

Fig. 4.—Specimen 219. Another photograph, with different lighting, of the individual shown in pl. 2, fig. 6. This print brings out better the coxopodites and the folds of the ventral membrane. × 3.23.

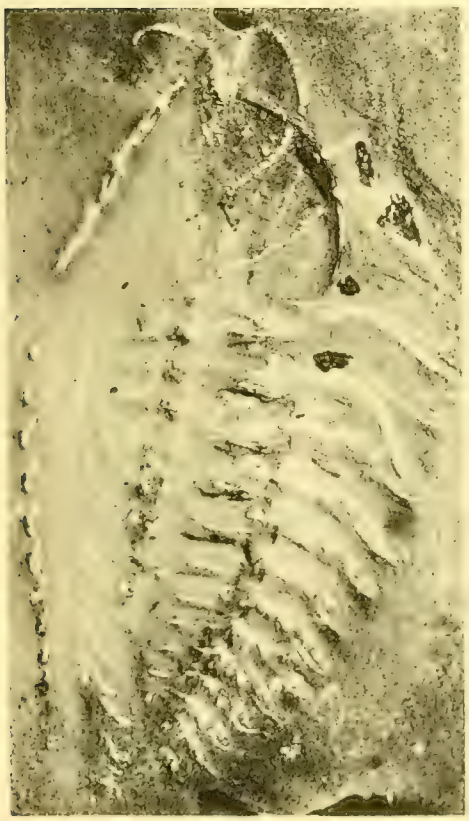
Fig. 5.—Specimen 222. This specimen is interesting, because it shows the endopodites in what is probably their natural position, that is, in a plane nearly vertical to the plane of the body, instead of being flattened down, as is usually the case. The appendages under the pygidium are unusually well preserved. × 12.

Fig. 6.—Specimen 204. Photograph of the entire specimen of which a part is shown in text fig. 42 and pl. 3, fig. 1. × 4.5.

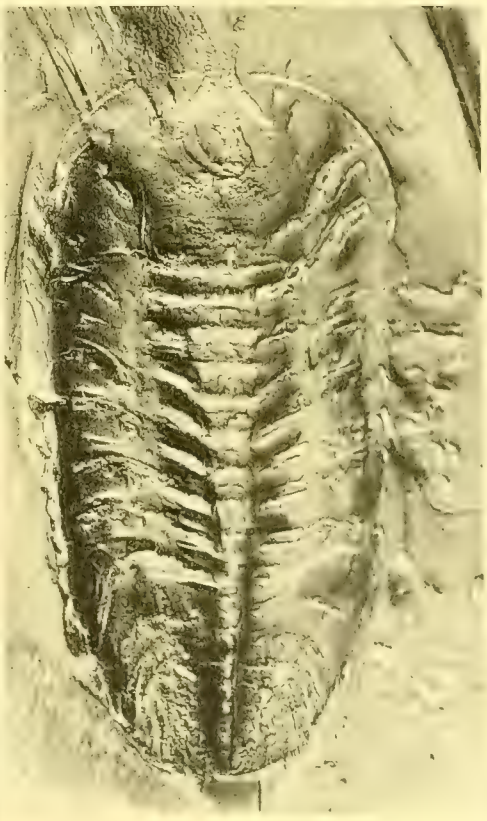
1

2

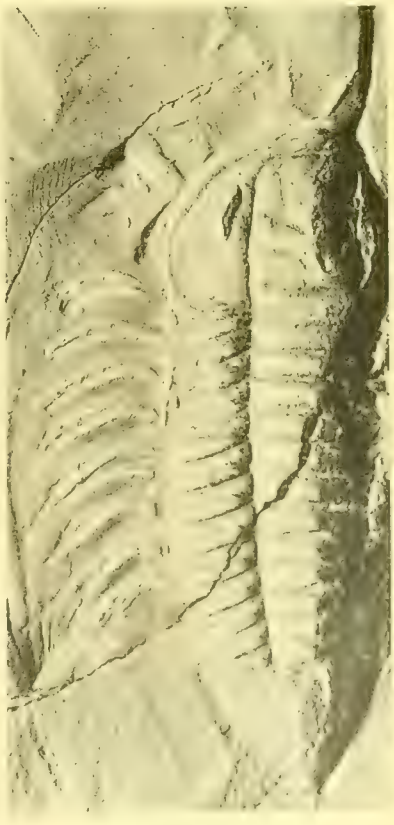
5



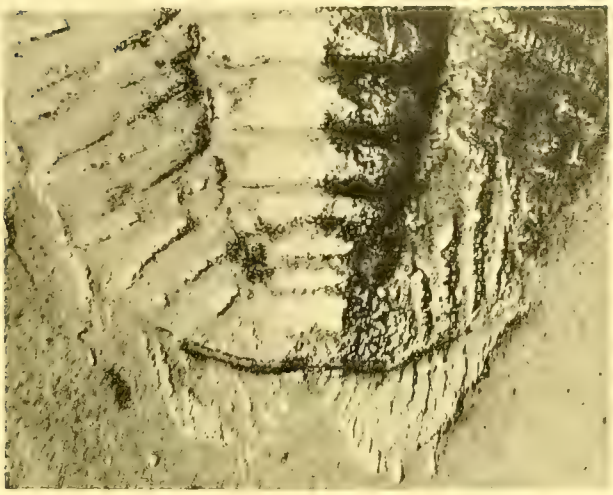
3



4

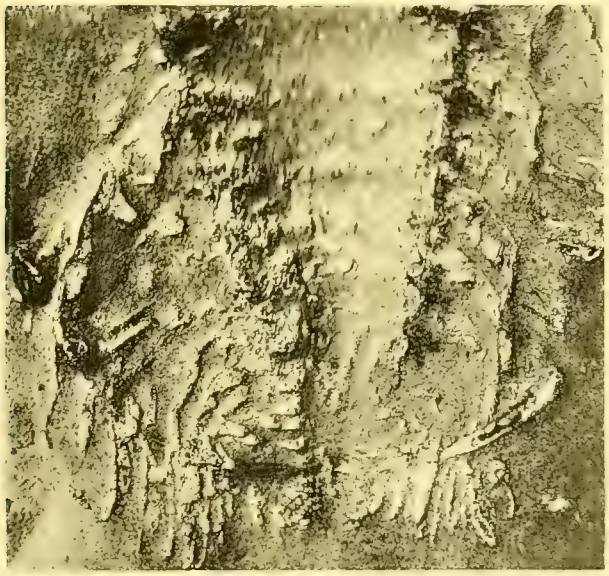


6



1

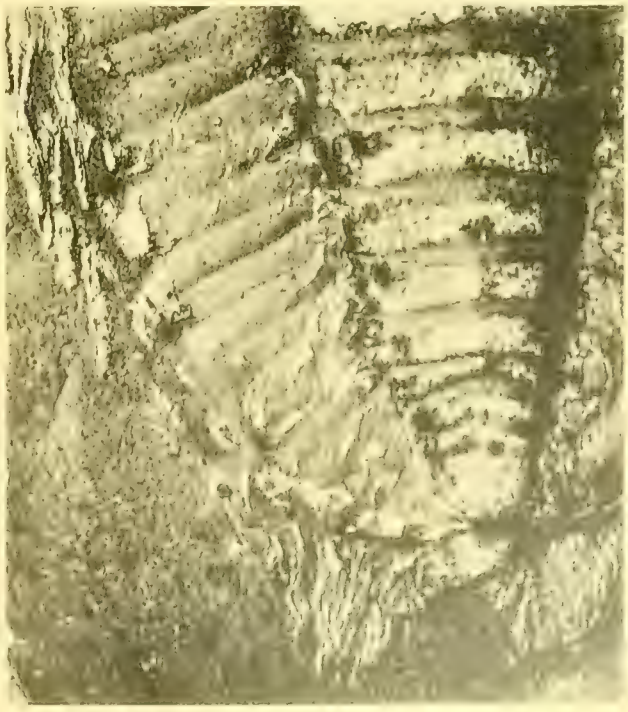
4



2

5

3



6

PLATE 6.

All figures except 4 and 5, from photographs by C. E. Beecher.

Fig. 1.—*Triarthrus becki.* Specimen 203. A well preserved small individual, showing the appendages of the right side of the thorax. ×11.46.

Fig. 2.—*Triarthrus becki.* Specimen 209. A well preserved individual, showing the antennules and some appendages of thorax and pygidium. For detail of the pygidium, see pl. 5, fig. 1. ×4.

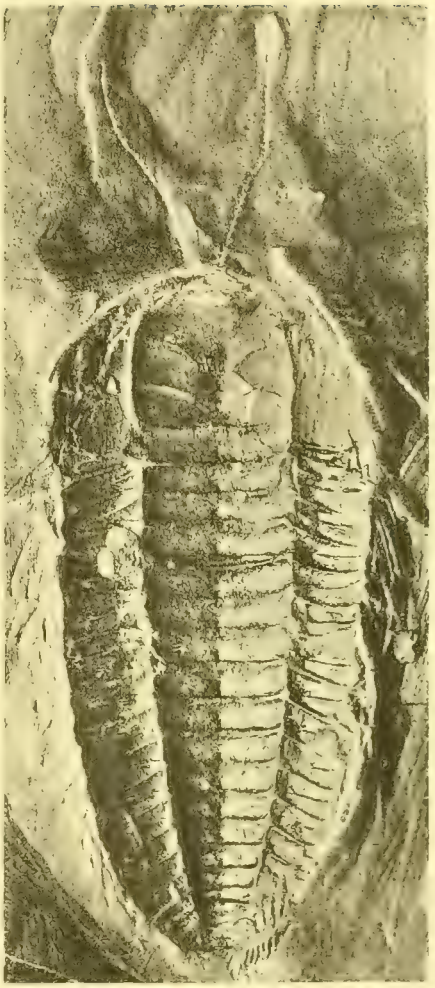
Fig. 3.—*Triarthrus becki.* Specimen 218. Ventral side of the pygidium and greater part of the thorax of an individual of medium size. Note especially the relation of exopodites to endopodites of the last two thoracic segments. A drawing of these appendages is shown on text fig. 43. ×4.3.

Figs. 4 and 5.—Endopodites, probably from a species of *Calymene.* These specimens, with several others, are on a small slab of limestone from the Point Pleasant (Trenton) beds opposite Cincinnati, Ohio. Specimen in the U. S. National Museum. Photographs by R. S. Bassler.

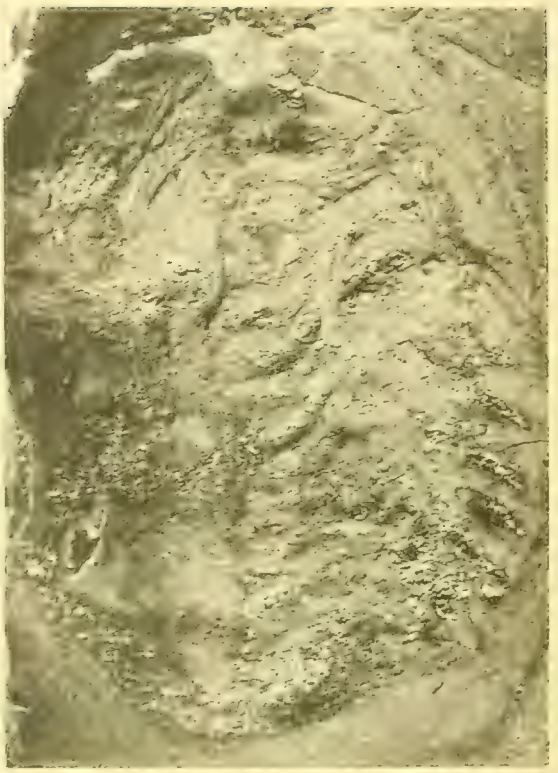
Fig. 6.—*Acidaspis trentonensis* Walcott. Both the specimen, No. 245, and the photograph are poor, but show that in this genus the endopodites are like those of *Triarthrus.* ×8.5.

Fig. 7.—*Cryptolithus tessellatus* Green. Specimen 234. This specimen shows well the backward directed antennules and also the outer segments of some of the cephalic endopodites. ×11.

1



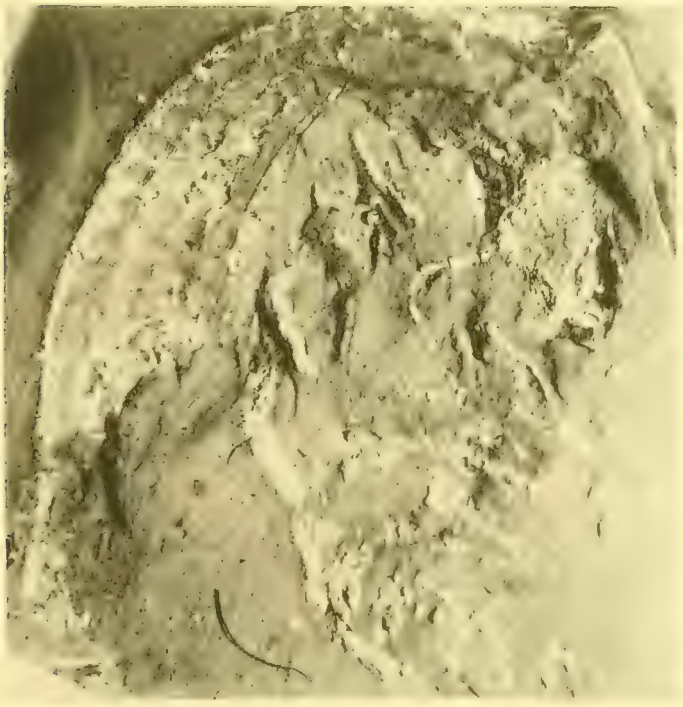
2



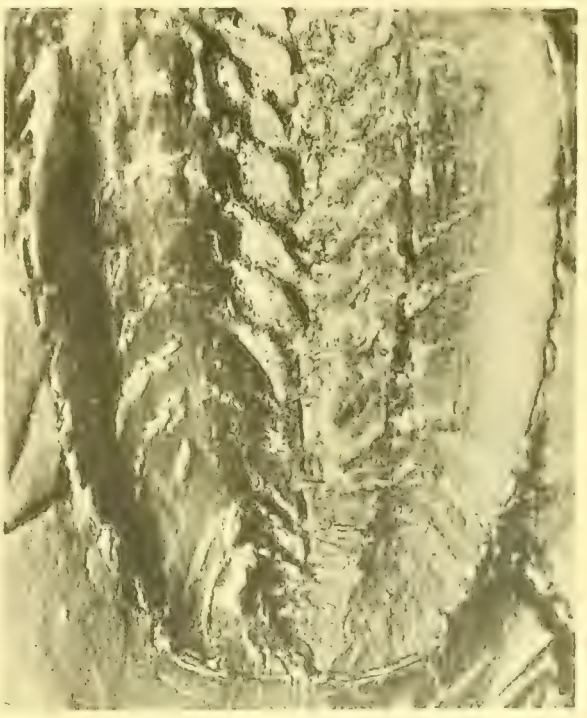
6

4

5



7



8

PLATE 7.

Photographs of *Cryptolithus tessellatus* Green, made by C. E. Beecher.

Fig. 1.—Specimen 233. The best preserved individual, the one from which Professor Beecher's drawing (text fig. 45) was made, and which served as the principal basis for the restoration (text fig. 20). Note the long, backward directed antennules, the abrupt backward turn of the outer portions of the endopodites, the way in which the exopodites extend beyond the endopodites, and the fact that all are beneath the cover of the dorsal shield. The hypostoma is turned entirely around. × 10.9.

Fig. 2.—Specimen 235. Half of the thorax and pygidium, with the appendages revealed from the ventral side. Note the abrupt manner in which the outer portions of the endopodites are turned backward. See also pl. 8, fig. 3, and pl. 9, fig. 1 (right half). × 14.45.

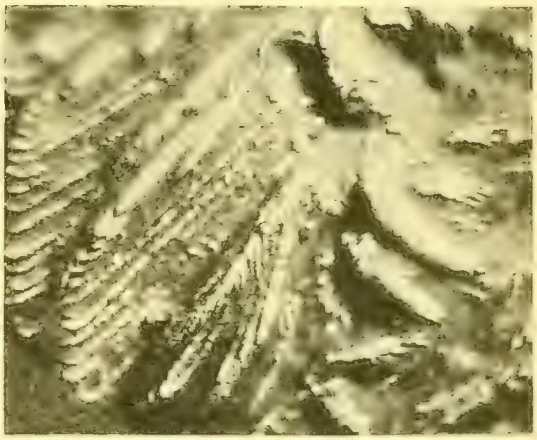
Fig. 3.—Specimen 236. Detail from fig. 4, to show the blade-like setæ of the exopodites and the numerous terminal spines of the endopodites. × 30.

Fig. 4.—Specimen 236. The appendages of the thorax and pygidium, seen from the lower side. Specimen 236 is the right half of the same individual from which specimen 235 was obtained. Note the interarticular membranes between the segments of the endopodites and the blade-like setæ of the exopodites. See also pl. 9, fig. 1 (left side). × 19.

Fig. 5.—Specimen 236. The same specimen, seen from the dorsal side, showing, when the test is removed, the long blade-like setæ of the exopodites. See also pl. 9, fig. 2 (right half). × 19.

1

2



3

4

5

PLATE 8.

Photographs of *Cryptolithus tessellatus* Green, made by C. E. Beecher.

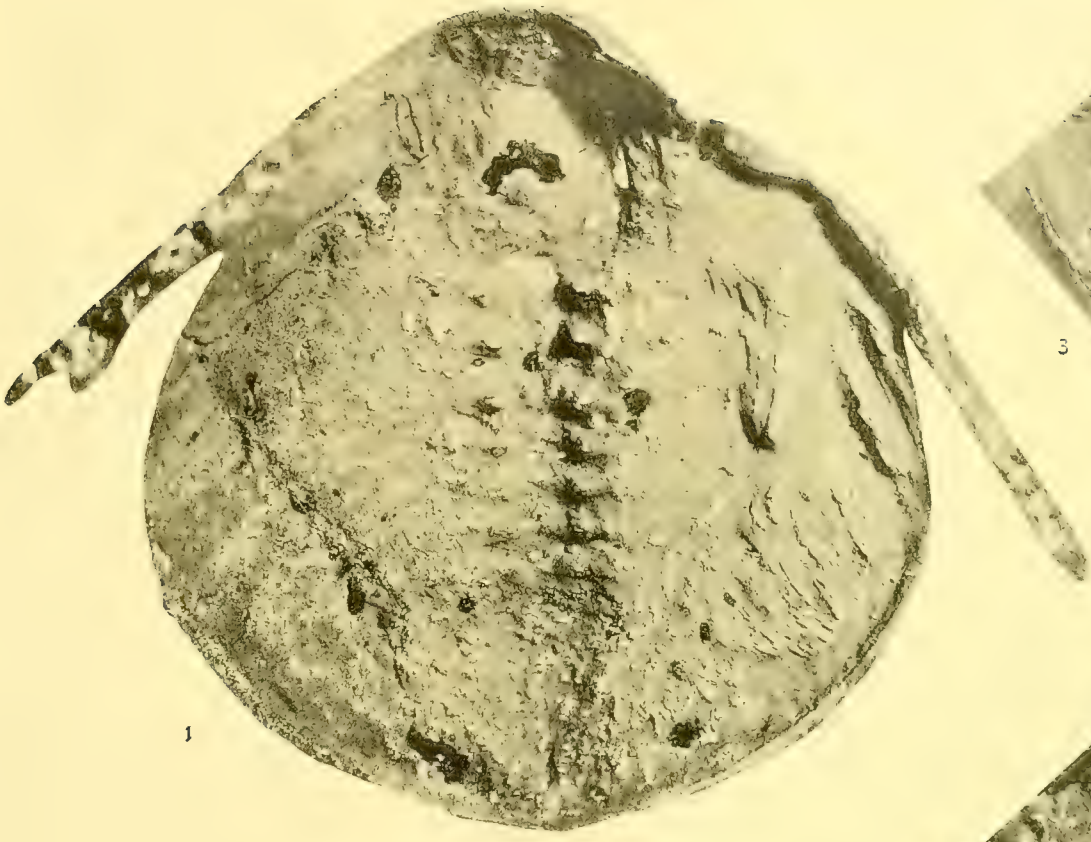
Fig. 1.—Specimen 231. A nearly complete individual, cleaned from the ventral side and showing obscurely the hypostoma and fragments of numerous appendages. Note the lines of appendifers along the sides of the axial lobe. × 11.

Fig. 2.—Specimen 232. Although this is not very well preserved, it shows more of the cephalic appendages than any other. Even so, only just enough is shown to indicate that they were similar to those on the thorax. × 12.

Fig. 3.—Specimen 235. Dorsal side of the appendages of the thorax and pygidium. See pl. 7, fig. 2 for the ventral view. On pl. 9, fig. 2 (left side) is a drawing taken from the same specimen. × 11.

Fig. 4.—Specimen 238. Part of a thorax and pygidium, seen from the ventral side. The series of heavy segments shown in the upper part do not belong to one appendage, but are the distal ends of several endopodites. See also text fig. 46 for a drawing of this specimen. × 18.

Fig. 5.—Specimen 237. Pygidium and part of the thorax, with some of the appendages. × 11.

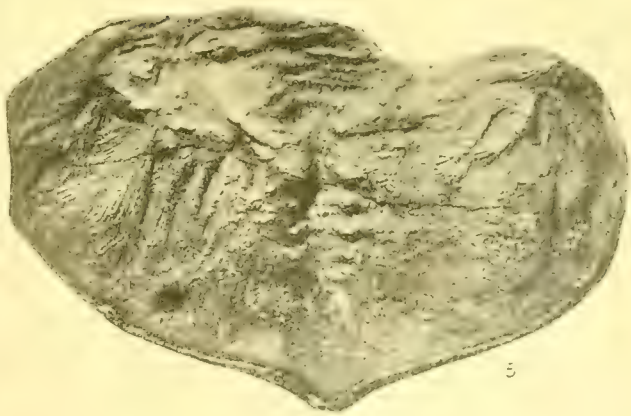


1

3

4

2



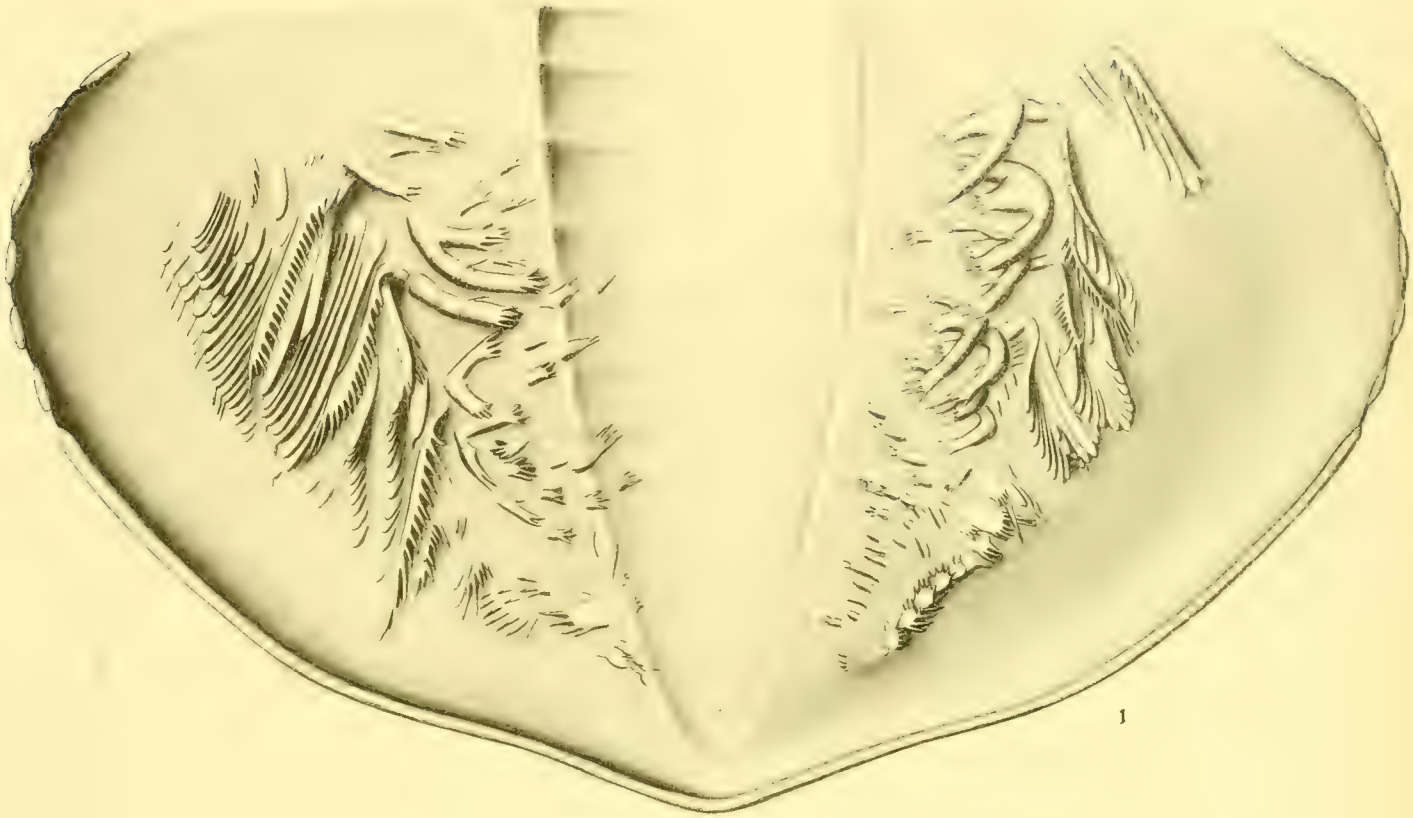
5

PLATE 9.

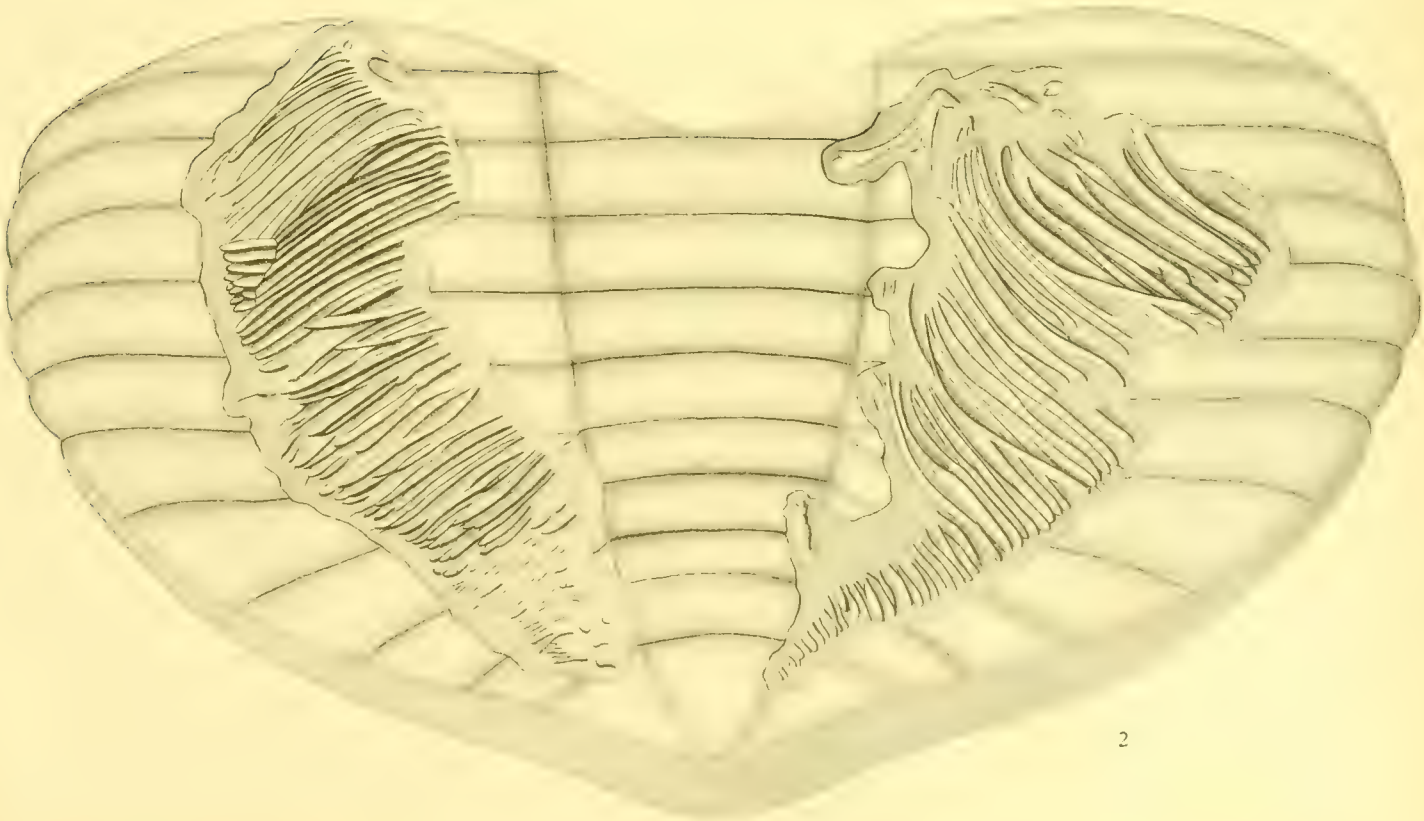
Cryptolithus tessellatus Green. Upper drawing by C. E. Beecher; lower drawing by Miss F. E. Isham, under the direction of C. E. Beecher.

Fig. 1.—Appendages of the thorax and pygidium, seen from the ventral side. These are not restorations, but drawings from the halved individual numbered 236 (right side of drawing) and 235. For photographs of these specimens, see pl. 7, figs. 2, 4. ×20.

Fig. 2.—Appendages of the thorax and pygidium, seen from the dorsal side. Same specimen as in fig. 1. For photographs, see pl. 7, fig. 5, and pl. 8, fig. 3. ×20.



1



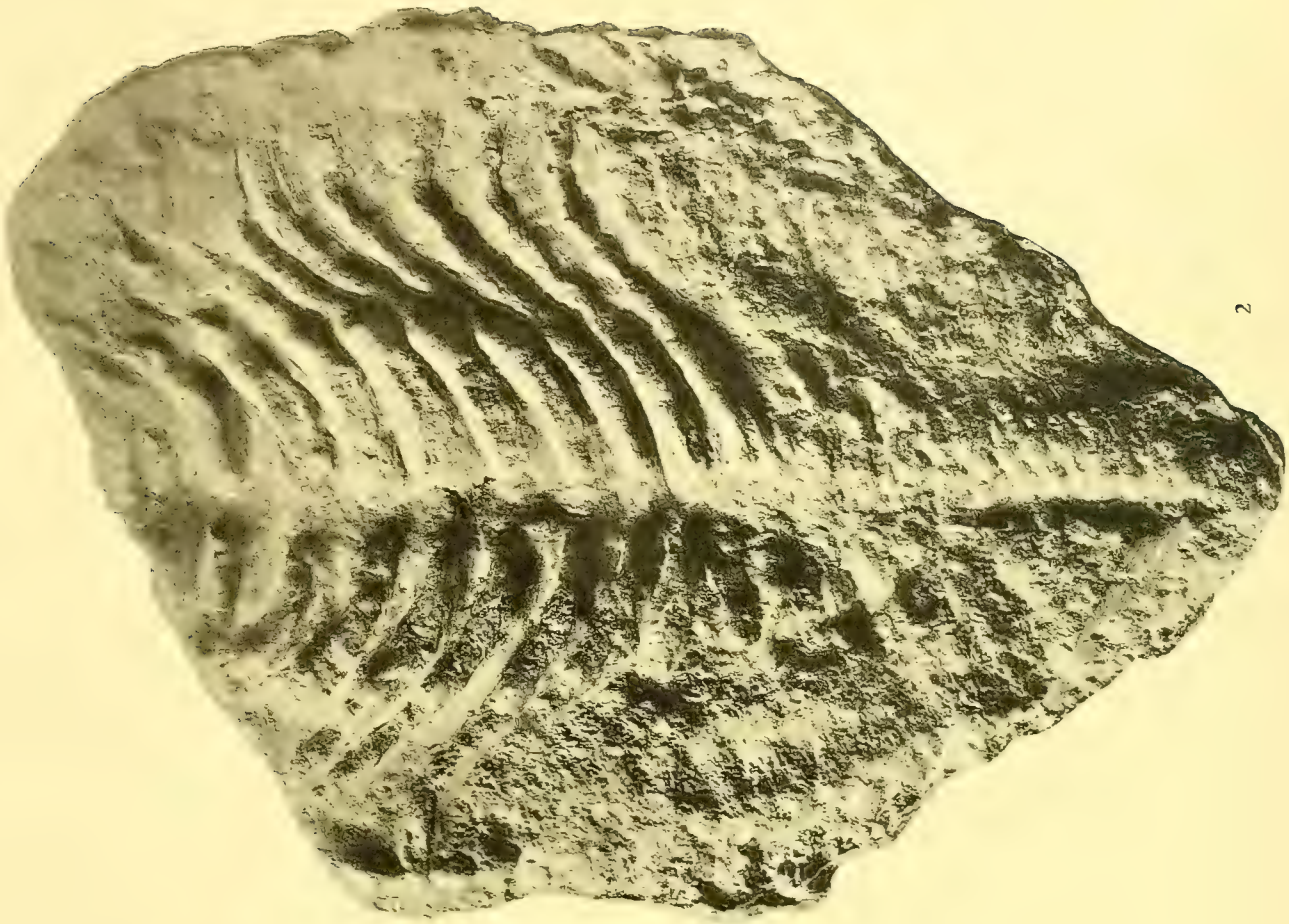
2

PLATE 10.

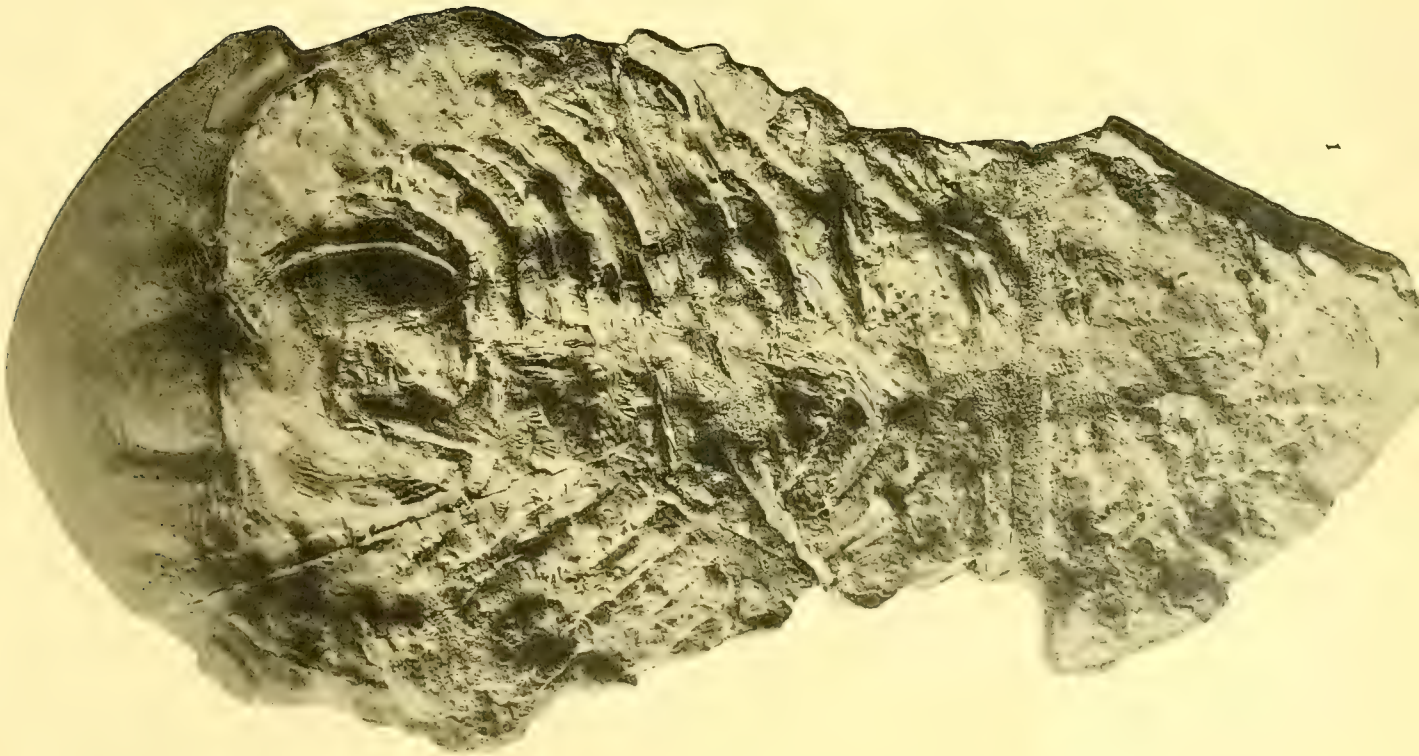
From photographs made by C. E. Beecher.

Fig. 1.—*Isotelus latus* Raymond. Ventral surface of the specimen in the Victoria Memorial Museum at Ottawa, Canada. Note the large, club-shaped coxopodites and the more slender endopodites. The first large coxopodite back of the hypostoma belongs to the last pair of cephalic appendages. The coxopodite of the appendage in front of it is seen turning in beneath the tip of the hypostoma. ×2.

Fig. 2.—*Isotelus maximus* Locke. The ventral side of the specimen described by Mickleborough and now in the U. S. National Museum. The tips of the hypostoma may be seen at the front, and the first two pairs of coxopodites behind them belong to the last two pairs of appendages of the cephalon. Note how much stronger the coxopodites are than the endopodites. The appendages of the pygidium show but poorly. ×1.45.



2



1

PLATE 11.

Ceraurus pleurexanthemus Green. A restoration of the ventral surface and appendages, made by Doctor Elvira Wood, under the supervision of the writer, from data obtained from the translucent slices prepared and described by Doctor Walcott. × 5.

PLATE 5.

Photographs of *Triarthrus becki,* made by C. E. Beecher.

Fig. 1.—Specimen 209. Photograph of the pygidium shown in pl. 6, fig. 2. This specimen shows especially well the way in which the exopodites of the pygidium decrease in length backward. × 11.5.

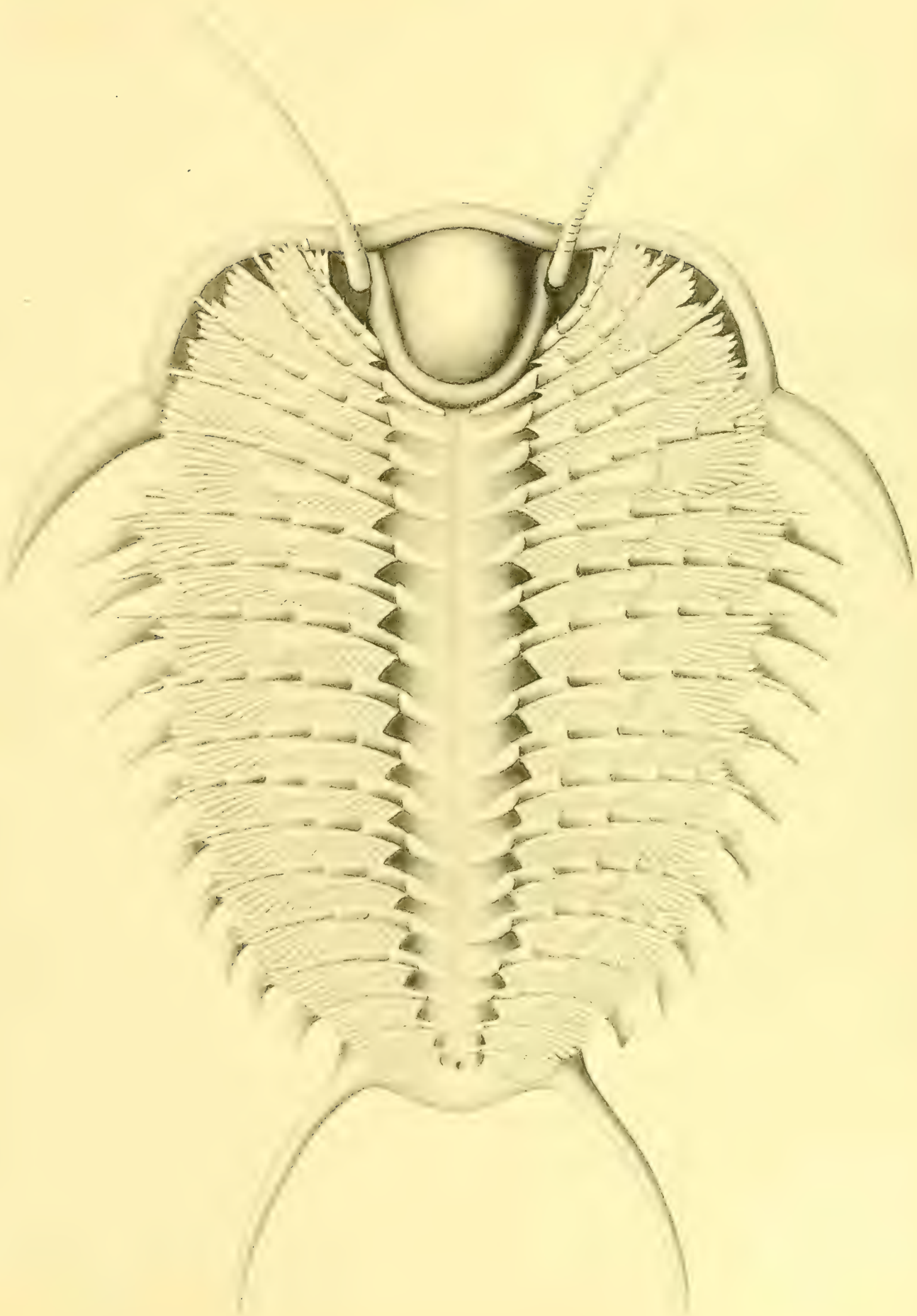
Fig. 2.—Specimen 229. The under side of the posterior end of a medium-sized specimen, showing the appendages, especially the endopodites. On and among the limbs are scattered numerous minute spheres of pyrite, of the kind usually known as "trilobite eggs." They do not show very well in the photograph, but can be made out much more clearly with a hand lens. × 12.

Fig. 3.—Specimen 230. A specimen showing the appendages of the posterior part of the thorax and the pygidium. The same individual is also shown in text fig. 44. Note particularly the form of the segments of the endopodites, and the spines on them. × 13.

Fig. 4.—Specimen 227. The small doubly curved bodies shown in this figure lie under the axial portion of the cephalon and anterior part of the thorax. The specimen still has a very thin coating of matrix between it and the shell. Whether the curved bodies have anything to do with the trilobite is not known. × about 12.

Fig. 5.—Specimen 221. A small individual which shows well the exopodites of the posterior part of the thorax. Note the spatulate terminations and the spines of the shaft. × 11.

Fig. 6.—Specimen 202. Posterior part of the thorax and pygidium, showing endopodites and exopodites projecting under the dorsal test. Note the spiniferous plate on the median line, and the large opening in the anterior portion of it. × 9.75.



MEMOIRS OF THE CONNECTICUT ACADEMY OF ARTS AND SCIENCES

I, 1810-15, Out of print.

II, 1910, Osteology of Pteranodon, by G. F. Eaton, ... $3.50

III, 1911, Chiriquian Antiquities, by G. G. MacCurdy, ... 7.50

IV, 1915, Craniometry of the Indians of Southern New England, by M. V. Knight, .. 2.00

V, 1916, The Collection of Osteological Material from Machu Picchu, by G. F. Eaton, 5.00

VI, 1919, The Sauropod Dinosaur Barosaurus Marsh, by R. S. Lull, ... 2.50

VII, 1920, The Appendages, Anatomy, and Relationships of Trilobites, by P. E. Raymond, 6.00

SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION LIBRARIES
3 9088 01351 6802